MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 88

The Chronicle of Saint Gall

Ekkehard IV

Casus sancti Galli

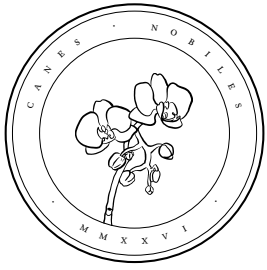
The Chronicle of Saint Gall

Ekkehard IV's History of the Monastery from Bishop Salomon to Otto the Great

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

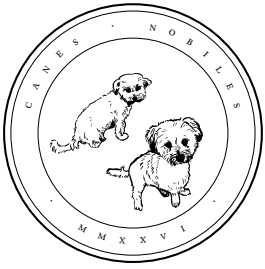


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 88 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows
Gerold Meyer von Knonau's text (St. Gallen, 1877)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

The Preface 7
Salomon at Saint Gall 9
Salomon's Habit and Peter's Gold 19
Salomon Takes the Cowl 26
The King's Christmas at Saint Gall 34
Salomon Seized 43
Salomon's Penance and Hatto's Treasure 50
Hatto's Return and Palm Sunday 59
The Death of Salomon 67
Iso the Master 75
Notker, Tuotilo, and Ratpert 83
Notker's Prophecy and Tuotilo's Travels 92
Notker and the Devil 102
The Deaths of Ratpert and Tuotilo 110
Hartmann and the Roman Chant 117
The Hungarians and Heribald 124
The Hungarians at Saint Gall and Ulrich's Youth 133

Ulrich's Miracles 142
After the Storm 149
The Saracens and the Fire 157
Craloh, Victor, and Enzelin 164
The Loss of Pfäfers and the Bishop at the Door 172
The Reconciliation and Victor Blinded 180
Ekkehard the Dean and Craloh's Death 188
Wendilgard and Ulrich 195
Burchard Made Abbot 202
Ekkehard and Duchess Hadwig 209
Ruodmann Caught, and Hadwig's Greek 218
Ruodmann's Fine and the Kings' Envoys 227
The Inspectors Arrive 234
The Session 242
The Brothers Consent 249
The Envoys Depart and Ruodmann Rebuked 256
The Report at Mainz and Worms 264
Gebo's Visit and Burchard's Death 272
Notker the Physician and Gerald 279
Walto, Chunibert, and Notker's Election 286
Notker Before the Emperor 295
Notker Made Abbot 301
Sandrat Arrives 310
Sandrat's Regime 317
Sandrat Undone and the Emperor's Visit 326

Præloquium

THE PREFACE

Urged by his brothers, the writer undertakes to set down the fortunes and misfortunes of the monastery of Saints Gall and Othmar, sparing nothing of the truth, though he expects to be called a slanderer for it. Ratpert's book ran from Gall and Othmar to his own day; this one begins with Bishop Salomon and follows the abbots after him, from Hartmann to Norbert, under whom the writer lives. Three Salomons held Constance, and this is the third.

Moniti a loci nostri fratribus id opere precium putantibus,
advised by of-place our the-brothers that of-the-work worth thinking
quædam cenobii sanctorum Galli et Othmari cum
certain-things of-the-monastery of-the-saints Gall and Othmar with
infortuniis tradere fortunia, rem arduam aggressi sumus.
misfortunes to-hand-down the-fortunes a-thing arduous undertaken we-have
Enimvero obloquiis patere non dubitamus, quoniam, ut nunc
indeed to-slanders to-lie-open not we-doubt since as now
morum et temporum est, si quicquam asperum et maxime
of-manners and of-times it-is if anything harsh and most
quod disciplinæ sit, tetigeris, si malorum libertates
what of-discipline be you-shall-have-touched if of-the-wicked the-liberties
et impunitates non laudare videberis, velud impostor et
and impunities not to-praise you-will-seem as-if an-impostor and
calumniator apud eos, qui in levitate ambulant, habeberis. At
a-slanderer among those who in levity walk you-will-be-held but
vero quoniam rerum loco nostro gestarum ætiam alii veritati
indeed since of-things in-place our done also others to-truth
nihil parcentes fortunia et infortunia, quomodolibet erant,
nothing sparing the-fortunes and misfortunes in-whatever-way they-were
edixerant, temptantes quidem et nos ea, quæ a patribus
had-declared attempting indeed also we those-things which from the-fathers

audivimus, ea aviditate, qua illi, quam verissime
we-have-heard with-that eagerness with-which they as truly-as-possible
datum est, stilo et atramento veritatem perstringere, fortunia
given it-is with-pen and ink the-truth to-touch-on the-fortunes
et infortunia loci nostri, veritati nihil parcentes, edisserere.
and misfortunes of-place our to-truth nothing sparing to-set-forth
De Salomone enim, abbate nostro, post episcopo, ingressi
from Salomon for abbot our afterward bishop begun
sumus; quem per ordinem secuti rebus nostris potiti sunt
we-have whom in order having-followed things our possessed have
Hartmannus, Engilpertus, Thieto, Cralo, cui interstitium
Hartmann Engilbert Thieto Cralo to-whom an-interval
regiminis frater suus fecerat Anno; sequuntur Purchardus,
of-rule brother his had-made Anno follow Burchard
Notkerus, Ymmo, Uodalricus, Kerhardus, Purchardus alter,
Notker Immo Ulrich Gerhard Burchard the-second
Thiepaldus, Norpertus, cujus hodie sub regimine quidem,
Thietbald Norbert whose today under rule indeed
non prout ipse et nos, ut inquiunt, volumus, sed prout
not as he and we as they-say we-wish but as
possumus, vivimus. Scripserat ante nos Radpertus homo
we-can we-live had-written before us Ratpert a-man
doctissimus et ipse codicellum similis materiæ a sancto
most-learned and himself a-little-book of-like matter from Saint
Gallo et Othmaro usque ad se ipsum, a quo nos
Gall and Othmar all-the-way to him himself from whom we
incœpisse videmur Salomonem episcopum, cujus nominis
to-have-begun seem Salomon the-bishop of-whose name
tamen æquivocatiæ sit, ut bene cerneret, præmonemus.
however of-the-equivocation it-be that well he-might-discern we-forewarn
Nam tres ejus nominis cum Constantiæ præfuerint, secundum
for three of-that name since at-Constance presided the-second

Rathpertus censum a loco nostro exegisse scripsit. De
Ratpert the-tax from place our to-have-exacted wrote of
tercio nos, prout Deo dante potuimus, sic incipiemus.
the-third we as with-God granting we-could thus shall-begin

Capitula 1–5

SALOMON AT SAINT GALL

Salomon, of a noble house, is schooled at Saint Gall under Iso beside Notker, Tuotilo, Ratpert, and Hartmann, who resent the favored canon. He rises at court as chaplain of King Louis and is given Ellwangen, Kempten, and other houses. The Irish bishop Marcus stays at Saint Gall with his nephew Moengal, called Marcellus, who takes the cloister school. Salomon is enrolled as a brother and builds a church of the Holy Cross on his hill; caught entering the cloister by night in a cope, he is rebuked by Ruodker, asks leave to pray in Saint Peter's oratory, and resolves to beg the abbot that he may enter in a monk's habit.

Salomonis tertii parentes cum essent clari et inlustres, ipsum
of-Salomon the-third the-parents since they-were famous and illustrious him
Isoni sancti Galli monacho tunc temporis doctori nominatissimo
to-Iso of-Saint Gall a-monk at-that of-time teacher most-renowned
tradunt erudiendum et clericatui initiandum. Quem adprime,
hand-over to-be-instructed and into-the-clergy to-be-initiated whom especially
ut ajunt, ipse erudierat; sed et Nokeri, Tuotilonis, Ratperti,
as they-say he-himself had-instructed but also of-Notker of-Tuotilo of-Ratpert
Harthmanni conmonachorum statui prætulerat, et delicatius
of-Hartmann of-(his)-fellow-monks to-the-state had-preferred and more-delicately
quasi canonicum educaverat. Creverant tamen inde clandestine
as-if a-canon had-brought-up had-grown however thence secretly
inter summæ indolis condiscipulos invidiæ, et cum conliberales
among of-highest talent the-fellow-pupils envies and since equally-free

genere essent et ingenio, ut ea ætas solet, æquanimiter non
by-birth they-were and in-wit as that age is-wont calmly not
ferebant, alienum sibi, qui fratres essent, præferri, et
they-bore a-stranger to-themselves who brothers were to-be-preferred and
qui natalibus quidem essent pares, doctrinarum provectibus ab
who by-births indeed were equals of-learning in-advances by
illo præiri. Defunguntur Salomonis adhuc pueri parentes,
him to-be-outstripped die of-Salomon still a-boy the-parents
tandem autem et frater, et ipse rerum heres effectus
at-last moreover also brother and he-himself of-the-things heir made
ad maximas res animum intenderat, scolisque ablatus
to greatest things (his)-mind had-turned and-from-the-schools taken
Grimaldo abbate nostro archicapellano ejus juvante capellanus
with-Grimald abbot our archchaplain his helping chaplain
fit Ludowici regis, cujus singulari gratia in brevi potitus
becomes of-Louis the-king by-whose singular favor in brief possessed
Elewangis adhuc canonicus primo præficitur; post ætiam
at-Ellwangen still a-canon first is-set-over afterward also
Campidonensibus variis suimet et loci dampnis
to-those-of-Kempten with-various of-himself and of-the-place losses
illum detrectantibus præponitur. In processu autem Hattone,
him refusing he-is-set-over in the-course moreover with-Hatto
archiepiscopo Magontino, sibi propter animi acutissimam
the-archbishop of-Mainz to-him on-account-of of-mind the-sharpest
sollertiam amicissimo opitulante plurimis locis præficitur,
skill most-friendly helping over-very-many places he-is-set
tandem et nobis. Postremo vero et Constantiæ pastor
at-last also over-us finally indeed also of-Constance pastor
et episcopus efficitur. His partim per transgressum
and bishop he-is-made with-these-things partly by digression
prælibatis ad ordinem incœpti operis revertamur.
foretasted to the-order of-the-begun work let-us-return

Grimaldi temporibus canonici abbatis, Hartmuoto ejus quasi
of-Grimald in-the-times of-the-canon abbot with-Hartmut his as-if
proábbate, Marcus quidam Scotigena episcopus Gallum tamquam
pro-abbot Marcus a-certain Irish-born bishop Gall as
conpatriotam suum Roma rediens visitat. Comitatur eum
countryman his-own from-Rome returning visits accompanies him
sororis filius Moengal, postea a nostris Marcellus diminutive
of-(his)-sister the-son Moengal afterward by our-people Marcellus diminutively
a Marco avunculo sic nominatus. Hic erat in divinis
from Marcus (his)-uncle thus named this-one was in divine
et humanis eruditissimus. Rogatur episcopus loco nostro
and human-things most-learned is-asked the-bishop in-place our
aliquandiu stare, allecto nepote. Diu secum deliberantes
for-some-time to-stay with-enticed nephew long with-themselves deliberating
vix tandem consenserant, dieque condicto partitur
scarcely at-last they-had-agreed and-on-the-day appointed distributes
Marcellus nummos avunculi sui multos per fenestram, timens
Marcellus the-coins of-uncle his many through a-window fearing
ne discerperetur ab eis; fremebant enim in illum, quasi
lest he-be-torn-apart by them they-were-raging for against him as-if
ipsius suasu episcopus restaret. Equos et mulos, quibus
by-his-own persuasion the-bishop remained the-horses and mules to-whom
ipse voluit, nominatim episcopus tradidit; libros vero, aurum
he-himself wished by-name the-bishop handed-over the-books but the-gold
et pallia sibi et sancto Gallo retinuit. Stola tandem
and the-palls for-himself and for-Saint Gall he-kept with-the-stole at-last
indutus abeuntes benedixit; multis autem lacrimis utrimque
clothed the-departing-ones he-blessed many moreover with-tears on-both-sides
discessum est. Remanserat episcopus cum nepote et paucis
departure was-made had-remained the-bishop with (his)-nephew and a-few
suæ linguæ apparitoribus. Traduntur post tempus Marcello
of-his tongue attendants are-handed-over after a-time to-Marcellus

scolæ claustri cum Nokero postea cognomine Balbulo
the-schools of-the-cloister with Notker afterward by-surname the-Stammerer
et cæteris monachici habitus pueris, exteriores autem, id est
and the-other of-monastic habit boys the-outer moreover that is
canonicæ, Ysoni cum Salomone et ejus conparibus. Jocundum
the-canonical to-Iso with Salomon and his peers pleasant
est memorari, quantum cella sancti Galli his auspitiis
it-is to-be-recalled how-much the-cell of-Saint Gall under-these auspices
crescere cœperit tandemque floruerit, Hartmuoto eam Crimaldi
to-grow began and-at-last flourished with-Hartmut it of-Grimald
quidem vicario tandemque abbate omnimodis augmentante.
indeed vicar and-at-last abbot in-every-way increasing
Petiit tandem Salomon jam adolescens bene educatus, ut
asked at-last Salomon now a-youth well brought-up that
frater conscriptus nobis fieri mereretur, quod Crimaldo
as-a-brother enrolled of-us to-become he-might-deserve which with-Grimald
jubente et Hartmoto juvante a patribus est consecutus.
bidding and with-Hartmut helping from the-fathers has obtained
Tradidit autem de prædiis, quibus abundaverat, sancto Gallo
handed-over moreover from the-estates in-which he-had-abounded to-Saint Gall
locum, qui Colda dicitur, concambium sibi faciens, ut
the-place which Colda is-called an-exchange for-himself making that
annonam monachi et locum hospitis in refectorio haberet,
the-allowance of-a-monk and the-place of-a-guest in the-refectory he-might-have
dum viveret, et collem quendam, qui ultra Iram amœnior
while he-lived and a-hill certain which beyond the-Ira more-pleasant
sibi videbatur, cum pratis sibi et agellis adjacentibus
to-himself seemed with meadows to-it and little-fields adjacent
possideret, ut mansione ibi parata crebro velud frater
he-might-possess that with-a-dwelling there prepared often as-if a-brother
adveniens abbati non esset onerosus neque familiæ
arriving to-the-abbot not he-might-be burdensome nor to-the-household

incommodus. Talibus homini velud jam tum cum fortuna
inconvenient with-such-things to-the-man as-if already then with fortune
ludenti ad votum cedentibus, aulam regis Luodowici, ut
playing to wish yielding the-hall of-the-king Louis as
diximus, adiit. Capellanus factus, ejus fit intimus
we-said he-approached chaplain made his he-becomes intimate
et prælibatis abbatiis proclive est prælatus. Locum autem
and over-the-aforesaid abbeys readily is set-over place moreover
nostrum sibi præ omnibus habitum subinde adiit,
our to-himself before all held repeatedly he-approached
claustrumque ille, quia potens erat, absque duce et, quod
and-the-cloister he because powerful he-was without a-leader and which
magnæ confusionis tunc erat et est, lineus diatim introiit.
of-great confusion then was and is in-linen daily entered
Surgunt inde ab emulis illius murmura ipso ignaro;
rise thence from the-rivals of-him murmurs with-him-himself unaware
comitantur, ut assolent, in absentem obloquia. Plurima
accompany as they-are-wont against an-absent-one slanders very-many-things
fratribus velud dives opum commoda fecit; quorum cum
to-the-brothers as-if rich in-wealth benefits he-did of-whom when
uni reverendo quidem, ut erant tunc plurimi, pelliceum
to-one reverend indeed as they-were then very-many a-fur-cloak
traderet et sui eum apud Deum memorem fore
he-was-handing-over and of-himself him before God mindful to-be
rogaret: Pellitium, ait ille, tuum, si volueris, tibi optime
he-was-asking the-fur-cloak says he your if you-shall-wish to-you best
repretiabor. Nam duas cucullas ab abbate habeo, quarum
I-shall-repay for two cowls from the-abbot I-have of-which
unam tibi, ut claustrum decentius nobiscum in ea introeas,
one to-you that the-cloister more-becomingly with-us in it you-may-enter
induendam contrado. Et ille: Eia, inquit, hæc utique
to-be-put-on I-hand-over and he come-now he-says these-things surely

Tuotilo et Ratpertus vel alii invidi mei in ore tuo posuerant.
Tuotilo and Ratpert or others envious of-me in mouth your had-put
Nonne, queso, et abbas vester lineus claustrum tot annis
surely I-ask also abbot your in-linen the-cloister for-so-many years
ingreditur? — Claustra, ait ille, tuorum, qui te ejus habitus
enters the-cloisters says he of-yours who you of-its habit
abbatem susceperant aut pro peccatis, aut aliquo Dei nutu,
as-abbot had-received either for sins or by-some of-God nod
et tu quidem, etsi non licenter, intras tamen potenter. Sed
and you indeed even-if not licitly you-enter yet powerfully but
nos in fraternitatem interdum et laicos recipimus, quibus
we into fraternity sometimes also laymen receive whom
tamen in laico habitu nequaquam, inquit, in claustro abutimur.
however in lay habit by-no-means he-says in the-cloister we-misuse
Recessit homo artificiosus ratione simplicis quasi
withdrew the-man artful by-the-reasoning of-the-simple-one as-if
devictus. Ibat autem secum reputans, hominem tanti
conquered he-went moreover with-himself reckoning a-man of-so-great
meriti non nisi in spiritu Dei sibi talia prolocutum.
merit not except in the-spirit of-God to-him such-things to-have-spoken
Abstinuit tandem absque aliquo patrum, ut moris est,
he-refrained at-last without some of-the-fathers as of-custom it-is
præduce claustrum introire. Sepius tamen, ut diximus,
as-leader the-cloister to-enter more-often however as we-said
loco sancti Galli, quantum a regibus et cœnobiis suis
in-the-place of-Saint Gall as-much-as by the-kings and monasteries his
licuit, immoratus, fratribus, quæ potuit, hilariter
it-was-allowed having-lingered to-the-brothers what-things he-could cheerfully
dedit, maxime Ysoni magistro. Caute ætiam Crimaldus
he-gave most to-Iso the-master cautiously also Grimald
jam senescens et Hartmotus cum illo egerant, ne animum
now growing-old and Hartmut with him had-dealt lest the-mind

et per se divitis, et in regno potentis in aliquo
both in himself of-one-rich and in the-kingdom of-one-powerful in anything
lederent. Incipit igitur tandem in colle concambii sui
they-should-hurt begins therefore at-last on the-hill of-exchange his
ædificare, ecclesiam in honorem et modum sanctæ crucis
a-church in honor and manner of-the-holy cross to-build
in quam ad unguem perductam sancti Magni brachium,
into which to the-nail brought of-Saint Magnus the-arm
Adalberone episcopo dante et prosequente, de Faucibus
with-Adalbero the-bishop giving and escorting from Füssen
sumptum magnis hinc inde velud triumphi tripudiis
taken with-great on-this-side and-that as-if of-a-triumph dances
intulit, et in honore eam sanctæ crucis et ejusdem
he-brought and in honor it of-the-holy cross and of-the-same
privati patroni nostri dedicavit et prædiis suis, id est
particular patron our he-dedicated and with-estates his that is
Tegerinouva, Bernhardicella, Sitiruntorf, Coldahan ætiam,
Tegernau Bernhardzell Sitterdorf Coldahan also
quam, ut diximus, concambians jam loco tradiderat,
which as we-said exchanging already to-the-place he-had-handed-over
et aliis quibusdam eam dotaverat. Hartmuoti tunc
and with-others certain it he-had-endowed of-Hartmut then
quidem abbatis concessione, ut in die sancti ipsius
indeed abbot by-the-grant that on the-day of-the-saint himself
fratres convivarent, constituerat; se ætiam, si Deo
the-brothers should-feast he-had-established himself also if to-God
placeret, ibi sepeliri velle ajebat.
it-should-please there to-be-buried to-wish he-said
Accidit autem post aliquantum temporis, ut a palatio
it-happened moreover after some-amount of-time that from the-palace
veniens quadragesimam loco nostro ei tempori aptissimo
coming Lent in-place our for-that time most-fitting

viso agere eligeret, ingrediturque clam penetralia claustri
seen to-keep he-chose and-enters secretly the-inner-parts of-the-cloister
bonus fur noctibus, nudipes, cappa quidem, uti fratrum
a-good thief by-nights barefoot in-a-cope indeed that of-the-brothers
unus putaretur, indutus. Senserat illum Notker, Ratpreth,
one he-might-be-thought clothed had-perceived him Notker Ratpert
Tuotilo, et aliquandiu sanctam fraudem texerant. Nimis
Tuotilo and for-some-time the-holy fraud had-covered too-much
tamen, ut jam diximus, insolens semper erat et est,
however as already we-said unaccustomed always was and is
præter monachici nostri habitus quemquam introire intima
except of-monastic our habit anyone to-enter inmost-parts
nostra, maxime noctibus. Initur consilium, ut, quoniam
our most by-nights is-entered-into counsel that since
moris est, duos nobis fratres claustri vigilias agere,
of-custom it-is two for-us brothers of-the-cloister the-vigils to-keep
intranti illi ipsi vigiles cum lumine, quia solis
to-him-entering those very watchmen with a-light because to-them-alone
loqui licuit, occurrerent et, quis esset, silentio quererent.
to-speak it-was-allowed should-meet and who he-was in-silence should-ask
Verebantur enim hominem palatinum, qui jam quasdam
they-feared for the-man of-the-palace who already certain
abbatias canonicus habebat, ne aliquid irregulare, ut forte
abbeys as-a-canon held lest something irregular as perhaps
fit, videns sibi viam apud regem occasione hac ætiam
happens seeing for-himself a-way with the-king by-occasion this also
ad nostram aperire temptaret, quibus nunc post canonicos
to ours to-open he-might-try over-which now after canon
abbates monachus pater domesticus præerat Hartmuotus
abbots a-monk father of-the-house presided Hartmut
homo amantissimus. Ingreditur iterum, ut heri et nudius
a-man most-loving enters again as yesterday and the-day

tercius, fur ille vitabundus; Ratpertus et Tuotilo sunt
before-yesterday thief that avoiding Ratpert and Tuotilo are
vigiles. Unus illorum circuibat, alter ad introitum
the-watchmen one of-them was-going-round the-other at the-entrance
clandestini illius servabat. Progreditur interea præventor
of-the-secret-one that was-watching goes-forward meanwhile a-forestaller
maturitatis ad sepulchra cimiterii oraturus pater, ejus
of-the-early-hour to the-graves of-the-cemetery about-to-pray a-father of-that
temporis nostrorum apud Deum potentissimus, Ruodkerus;
time of-ours before God most-powerful Ruodker
cujus gravitatem reveriti vigiles loco paulisper
whose gravity having-revered the-watchmen from-the-place for-a-little
cedunt. Senserat ille pater post modicum pedetemptivum
yield had-perceived that father after a-little the-one-stepping-carefully
nesciens quem; signo vocis et strepitu pedum notat
not-knowing whom by-a-sign of-voice and by-the-noise of-feet he-marks
quasi furem; vigiles cum lumine confestim approperant.
as-if a-thief the-watchmen with a-light at-once hasten-up
Agnitus est, atque ilico pater ille: Per sancti Galli,
recognized he-was and on-the-spot the-father that by of-Saint Gall
inquid, meritum — sic enim patres jurabant—, hunc in
he-said the-merit so for the-fathers swore this in
claustro ejus his horis non patimur habitum. Vigiles
the-cloister his at-these hours not we-suffer habit the-watchmen
illi pro tempore siluerunt, qui tantum interpretem rupto
those for the-time were-silent who so-great an-interpreter with-broken
habuere silentio. Tremefactus autem ille ab non ignari
had silence made-to-tremble moreover he by not of-ignorant
hominis verbis tali tempore sibi inusitatis: Patere me,
of-a-man the-words at-such a-time to-him unusual allow me
ait, pater reverende, vel oratorium sancti Petri, quod
he-says father reverend at-least the-oratory of-Saint Peter which

proximum est, ingredi. Ibi postquam oravero, nunquam
nearest is to-enter there after I-shall-have-prayed never
isto habitu, nisi ductu alicujus primorum, ut lex
in-this habit except by-the-leading of-some of-the-first as the-law
loci habet, claustrum intrabo. Te autem juvante
of-the-place has the-cloister I-shall-enter with-you moreover helping
et fratribus ad hoc idoneis, cras abbatem precari est
and the-brothers for this suitable tomorrow the-abbot to-beseech is
animo, ut monachico habitu mihi liceat claustrum
in-mind that in-monastic habit for-me it-be-allowed the-cloister
ingredi, vobiscum in eo versari ut monachum et egredi,
to-enter with-you in it to-dwell as a-monk and to-go-out
deforis autem coram militibus meis et cæteris canonico,
outside moreover before soldiers my and the-rest in-canonical
ut soleo, vestimento versari. — Immo, ait ille, sanctus
as I-am-wont garment to-dwell nay says he Saint
Gallus tibi in cor mittat, ut si semel eo induaris,
Gall to-you into the-heart may-send that if once in-it you-be-clothed
nunquam, quoad vixeris, nisi solito monachis
never as-long-as you-shall-have-lived except at-the-wonted for-monks
tempore exuaris.
time you-be-stripped

Capitula 6–8

SALOMON'S HABIT AND PETER'S GOLD

The fathers fear that Salomon, asking to wear the habit, means to take the abbey, but Hartmut judges it safer to make him a monk of the house. Salomon gives a cross and feasts; King Charles serves the brothers at table, and Bishop Adalbero of Augsburg is enrolled among them. Peter of Verona, slighted by a cheap gospel book and chalice, sends back gold bound to the legs of six travelers, from which a case, a chalice, and a reliquary are made.

Panditur abbati animus hominis et peticio, Ruodkero
is-disclosed to-the-abbot the-mind of-the-man and the-petition with-Ruodker
astipulante et cæteris aliquibus, enimvero non omnibus.
supporting and the-rest some indeed not all
Erat senatus reipublicæ nostræ tunc quidem sanctissimus.
there-was a-senate of-commonwealth our then indeed most-holy
Consuluntur Hartmannus consilio magnus, ille quidem, qui
are-consulted Hartmann in-counsel great he indeed who
Humili prece melodiam fecerat, Notkerus, qui sequentias,
Humili prece the-melody had-made Notker who the-sequences
Ratpertus, qui Ardua spes mundi, Tuotilo, qui Hodie
Ratpert who Ardua spes mundi Tuotilo who Hodie
cantandus est, et pleraque alia dictaverant, qui denique, ut
cantandus est and very-many other-things had-composed who finally as
diximus, in condiscipulatu animum ejus didicerant et in rebus,
we-said in fellow-studentship the-mind his had-learned and in things
quas vellet, patrandis artificia, loquique jussi sunt.
which he-might-wish to-be-accomplished the-artifices and-to-speak bidden they-were
Regula nostra, Hartmannus ait, non similitudinem monachi,
rule our Hartmann says not the-likeness of-a-monk
sed monachum ipsum querit. Notker: Mihi prætexta hæc,
but the-monk himself seeks Notker to-me pretext this

qua superindui, inquit, desiderat, si togam prætenderet,
with-which to-be-clothed-over he-says he-desires if a-gown he-held-forth
non utique displiceret. Ratpertus: Aut hæc in nostros
not surely it-would-displease Ratpert either this against our
fabricata est machina muros, aut aliquis latet hic error, ait.
built has-been machine walls or some lies-hid here error says
Tuotilo: Fraternitatem illi, inquit, integre ante concessimus.
Tuotilo fraternity to-him he-says wholly before we-granted
Hanc ei, quantum in me est, abba mi, ego non denego.
this to-him as-much-as in me is abbot my I not deny
Si autem lupum ovino vellere querit induere, per alius
if moreover a-wolf with-ovine fleece he-seeks to-clothe through another
quam mei consensum perficiat. Audiens abbas, quid
than my consent let-him-accomplish-it hearing the-abbot what
suspicarentur in homine, videlicet ne hoc scemate indutus
they-suspected in the-man namely lest in-this guise clothed
proximior esset dominatui abbatiæ, cujus per ipsum tunc
nearer he-might-be to-the-lordship of-the-abbey whose through him then
tercio quidem recepimus privilegium. Scio, inquit, fratres
for-the-third-time indeed we-received the-privilege I-know he-says brothers
et filii, quid ab illo vereamini; sed et mihi quoque quiddam
and sons what from him you-fear but also to-me too something
subolet. Existimo tamen melius nobiscum actum fore, si
smells I-think however better with-us done it-will-be if
sic apud nos initiatus monachum se aliquando nostrum
thus among us initiated a-monk himself sometime ours
faciat, ne iterum canonico subdamur, ut antea. Placet igitur,
he-may-make lest again to-a-canon we-be-subjected as before it-pleases therefore
ut agamus cum illo, quo revera habitum sumat a sancto
that we-deal with him that truly the-habit he-may-take from Saint
Gallo, ut, si arte sua acciderit, quod veremur, noster tamen
Gall that if by-art his should-happen what we-fear ours yet

sit frater et monachus. Mittitur ad illum Ruotkerus cum
he-may-be brother and monk is-sent to him Ruotker with
aliis quibusdam rem suasurus. In processu temporis Deo
others certain the-thing about-to-urge in the-course of-time with-God
dante pollicetur facere, quod petitur; tantum interim propter
granting he-promises to-do what is-asked only meanwhile on-account-of
claustri reverentiam talis habitus sibimet, rogat, sit licitus.
of-the-cloister reverence such a-habit for-himself he-asks may-be lawful
Variis fratrum hinc inde tractatibus vix tandem
with-various of-the-brothers on-this-side and-that discussions scarcely at-last
conceditur, designaturque ei locus, quem hodie quadris
it-is-granted and-is-marked-out for-him a-place which today with-square
lapidibus notatum videmus, quibus intrans habitum indueret,
stones marked we-see at-which entering the-habit he-might-put-on
exiens exueret, ingrediturque claustrum noster præmonachus
going-out he-might-put-off and-enters the-cloister our pre-monk
nocte et die, de talis consortii permisso lætissimus. Parat
by-night and by-day at of-such fellowship the-permission most-glad prepares
autem pro hoc beneficio insignem crucem sancto Gallo,
moreover for this benefit a-notable cross for-Saint Gall
quam argento partim deaurato vestitam analogio nocturnali
which with-silver partly gilded clothed on-the-lectern nocturnal
superposuit. Hanc nostris temporibus Norpertus noster
he-set this in-our times Norbert our
columnæ deargentatæ infixam confessionis superposuit altario.
on-a-column silvered fixed of-the-confession set-upon the-altar
Convivia fratribus duodecim diebus in anno, id est in
feasts for-the-brothers on-twelve days in the-year that is on
Kalendis, prætextatus noster, quamdiu seculariter vixit,
the-Kalends pre-gowned our as-long-as in-secular-fashion he-lived
hilariter facere suevit, in quibus et ipse, si aderat,
cheerfully to-make was-accustomed at which also he-himself if he-was-present

minister procedebat. Solebant id ipsum autem ætiam
as-servant came-forward were-accustomed that very moreover also
quidam alii fratres conscripti nostratibus caritatis signum
certain other brothers enrolled to-our-people of-charity a-sign
exhibere. Præ omnibus quidem Karolus rex ipse, qui sancti
to-show before all indeed Charles the-king himself who of-Saint
Otmari epdomada ipse propositor et pincerna per triduum de
Othmar in-the-week himself steward and cupbearer for three-days from
vico Stamhem servivit volatiliaque nos edere fecit. Sed et
the-village Stammheim served and-fowl us to-eat made but also
Adalbero, qui supra, Augustensis multo tempore antistes, qui
Adalbero who above of-Augsburg for-much time prelate who
signa et virtutes sancti Galli a plurimis audiens locum in
the-signs and miracles of-Saint Gall from very-many hearing the-place on
die sancti Galli orandi gratia adiit et præsens plura
the-day of-Saint Gall of-praying for-the-sake approached and present more-things
conspiciens: Major est, inquit, gratia loci hujus, quam
beholding greater is he-says the-grace of-place this than
rumor, quem audivi. Devovit autem benedictione fratribus
the-rumor which I-heard he-vowed moreover with-blessing to-the-brothers
data, anno altero vita comite se rediturum et uti
given in-the-year next with-life as-companion himself to-return and as
tunc quidem nequaquam venire nudimanum. Domum rediit
then indeed by-no-means to-come empty-handed home he-returned
interrogatusque inter cætera aliquando a suis, essetne
and-asked among other-things sometime by his-people whether-there-were
nobiscum, ut fama vulgavit, religio cum doctrina, severitas cum
with-us as fame spread religion with learning severity with
disciplina? — Quid cæteri — inquit — sentiant, nescio; quod
discipline what the-rest he-says may-think I-know-not what
mihi animo est, pronuntio. Unum egomet sanctum et hunc
to-me in-mind is I-pronounce one I-myself saint and him

defunctum quæsivi; vivos autem sanctissimos, ut vere fatear,
dead I-sought living moreover most-holy that truly I-may-confess
fratres inveni. Doctrinam autem illorum et disciplinam in
brothers I-found the-learning moreover of-them and discipline in
virtutum eorum operibus videre est. Delectat enim me talium
of-the-virtues their the-works to-see it-is it-delights for me such
memorari, quos quidem, ut iterum videam, vix exspecto.
to-be-mindful-of whom indeed that again I-may-see scarcely I-await
Oportet autem, ut omnibus meis me juvantibus me
it-behooves moreover that with-all my me helping myself
præparem, quatinus, uti me et meos decet, ad proximum
I-prepare so-that as me and my-people befits for the-next
sancti Galli diem viros Dei visitem, frater illorum conscriptus
of-Saint Gall day the-men of-God I-may-visit brother of-them enrolled
fiam, et quantum mihi copiæ est, caritatem illorum
I-may-become and as-much-as to-me of-plenty is the-charity of-them
regratier. Venerat Dei electus die dicto, ut spoponderat.
I-may-repay had-come of-God the-elect on-the-day named as he-had-promised
Quantus autem venerit et qualis in donis sancto Gallo
how-great moreover he-came and of-what-kind in gifts to-Saint Gall
fratribus et familiæ fuerit, capitulum, quod in memoriam
to-the-brothers and to-the-household he-was the-chapter which in memory
ejus regulæ nostræ codici ascriptum est, plenius pandit.
his of-the-rule our to-the-book ascribed is more-fully discloses
Post non multum quoque temporis forte accidit, Petrum
after not much also of-time by-chance it-happened Peter
ætiam Veronensem episcopum a palatio redeuntem simili
also of-Verona the-bishop from the-palace returning with-like
loci gratia inopinatum venire; fratres autem suscipientes
of-the-place for-the-sake unexpected to-come the-brothers moreover receiving
illum, quod melius quidem habebant, ewangelium ei
him which better indeed they-had the-gospel-book to-him

offerebant. Ille autem arbitratus se despici, quoniam
offered he moreover having-judged himself to-be-despised since
famam loci magnam audiverat, de vilitate libri
the-fame of-the-place great he-had-heard about the-cheapness of-the-book
secum fluctuabat. Ad missas argenti calix ætiam, qui
with-himself wavered at the-masses of-silver a-chalice also which
melior habetur, proponitur; quibus peractis ætiam de calice
better is-held is-set-out with-which completed also about the-chalice
sinistrum quiddam secum trutinat. Prandium ei exhibetur
ill something with-himself he-weighs a-luncheon to-him is-shown
sumptuosum; surgens a mensa fratrum postulat alloquium.
sumptuous rising from the-table of-the-brothers he-demands a-talk
Quibus collectis — nam abbas loco deerat: Bene, ait,
with-whom gathered for the-abbot from-the-place was-absent well he-says
mecum, domini mei, abbate vestro absente egistis; sed pro
with-me lords my with-abbot your absent you-have-dealt but for
ewangelio et calice vilioribus mihi propositis aliquid subolet.
the-gospel-book and chalice cheaper to-me set-out something smells
Quamvis enim ipse sim vilis et indignus, non tamen vilis
although for myself I-be cheap and unworthy not yet of-a-cheap
loci nominor episcopus. Quibus constanter meliora non
place I-am-named bishop with-whom firmly better-ones not
esse sancto Gallo protestantibus, spiritus hominis paulisper
to-be for-Saint Gall protesting the-spirit of-the-man for-a-little
quieverat, sumensque tandem quosdam fratrum in partem
had-rested and-taking at-last certain of-the-brothers into a-part
secreto eis locutus: Mittite, inquit, post me Veronam sex
secretly to-them having-spoken send he-says after me to-Verona six
quos habetis fidissimos viatores, quique bini et bini per tres
whom you-have most-faithful travelers and-who two and two by three
vias, quæ hinc illo ducunt, mihi adveniant et peregrinos
roads which from-here thither lead to-me may-come and pilgrims

se habitu et verbis simulent; singillatim tamen se
themselves in-dress and in-words may-feign singly however themselves
mihi bini et bini ostendant et pollice sic in manum
to-me two and two may-show and with-the-thumb thus into the-hand
recurvo elemosinam petant. Quos ego, ut alios soleo, in
bent-back alms may-ask whom I as others I-am-wont into
penetral meum quoddam solus solos coram meis inducam
inner-room my a-certain alone them-alone before my-people shall-lead
et vestiam. Aurum autem, cujus equipondium nunc vobis do,
and shall-clothe the-gold moreover whose equal-weight now to-you I-give
cruribus eorum fasciolis circumligabo et dimittam eos, ut
on-the-legs their with-bands I-shall-bind-around and shall-send-away them that
ad vos eodem, quo venerant, fortuna comite artificio
to you by-the-same by-which they-had-come with-fortune as-companion by-artifice
redeant. Factum est, ut largitor acutus docuit. Allatum est
they-may-return done it-was as the-giver sharp taught brought was
sancto Gallo grave pondus auri Veronensis; concordat pondus
to-Saint Gall a-heavy weight of-gold of-Verona agrees the-weight
equipondio; fit de auro Petri cavea ewangelii, fit
with-the-equal-weight is-made from the-gold of-Peter a-case of-the-gospel-book is-made
calix, fit capsa. — Quæ omnia Salomon, primo frater
a-chalice is-made a-reliquary which all-things Salomon first brother
conscriptus noster, ut præmisimus, deinde et monachus,
enrolled our as we-said-before then also monk
tandem abbas, gemmis et arte Gallo paravit.
at-last abbot with-gems and art for-Gall prepared

Capitula 9–12

SALOMON TAKES THE COWL

Hartmut, growing old, hands the abbey to Bernhard and keeps three estates for himself. Bishop Landaloh of Treviso, a Swabian schooled at Saint Gall, falls ill returning from Rome and is buried in Saint Peter's chapel in Saint Gall's cemetery. Urged by Ruodker to give himself and not gold alone, Salomon comes to Gall's altar with King Arnulf's golden reliquary at his neck, becomes a monk, and returns to court, abbot at last of twelve houses, of Saint Gall, and bishop of Constance. The envoys Berthold and Erchanger turn against him, are condemned at Mainz, and are freed at his plea, swearing never to harm him.

Hartmotus autem pro Crimaldo, ut et Rapertus scribit,
Hartmut moreover for Grimald as also Ratpert writes
rempublicam nostram strenue gubernans, per semet ipsum
commonwealth our vigorously governing through him himself
quoque non mediocriter amplificans jamque senescens
also not moderately enlarging and-now growing-old
Berinhardo monacho nostro abbatiam suam fratrum
to-Bernhard monk our abbey his of-the-brothers
conmuni electione per regem Karolum tradit. Ipse
by-common election through the-king Charles hands-over he-himself
autem Herginisouvam cum Waltchincha et Puera Minore
moreover Herisau with Waldkirch and Buren Lesser
sibi et posteris abbatibus a potestate forte cedentibus
for-himself and for-later abbots from the-power perhaps yielding
imperiali auctoritate ipsius Karoli retinuit. Obiens autem
by-imperial authority of-the-same Charles retained dying moreover
post multas, quas per se statuit et per Berinhardum
after many which by himself he-established and through Bernhard
obtinuit fratribus et familiæ, benivolentiæ constitutiones,
obtained for-the-brothers and for-the-household of-benevolence ordinances

circa Landaloum episcopum in titulo apostolorum conditum,
near Landaloh the-bishop in the-church of-the-apostles buried
cognatum et amicum suum, extra parietem tamen, sepeliri
kinsman and friend his outside the-wall however to-be-buried
se petiit. — De quo ipso Landaloho, sancto Darviensi
himself he-asked about whom very Landaloh holy of-Treviso
quidem archiepiscopo, pauca scribere necessarium puto.
indeed archbishop a-few-things to-write necessary I-think
Suevus hic et nobilis erat, apud sanctum Gallum quidem
a-Swabian this-one and noble was at Saint Gall indeed
educatus et doctus, cujus Vindinissa cum multis aliis
brought-up and taught whose Windisch with many others
hereditas erat. Igitur episcopus factus Romam pergere
the-inheritance was therefore bishop made to-Rome to-proceed
solebat: per Jovis itaque Montem transiens ibat; per
he-was-wont by of-Jove and-so the-Mount crossing he-went by
Septimum autem rediens Gallum et Hartmotum suum
the-Septimer moreover returning Gall and Hartmut his
salutabat. Devoverat ætiam sancto Gallo Lolingam villam dare;
he-greeted he-had-vowed also to-Saint Gall Lollingen the-estate to-give
sed cognatis renitentibus conquisitionis suæ loca quedam
but with-the-kinsmen resisting of-acquisition his places certain
cuidam Uodalrico comiti, ut Gallo Ahadorf cum eisdem
to-a-certain Ulrich count that to-Gall Ahadorf with the-same
locis disponeret, concanbiens tradidit. Rediit autem tandem
places he-might-assign exchanging he-handed-over returned moreover at-last
aliquando Roma, et ad Gallum suum tendens, Italici
sometime from-Rome and to Gall his making-his-way of-the-Italian
aëris vitio febre correptus, vix ad Rorscanchin pervenire
air by-the-fault by-fever seized scarcely to Rorschach to-arrive
prævalens Hartmuoto cum fratribus ad se advocato nobiliter
prevailing with-Hartmut with the-brothers to himself summoned nobly

diem obiit. Disposuit igitur adhuc vivens ad titulum sancti
the-day met he-arranged therefore still living for the-church of-Saint
Petri, cui jam ibat, qui est in cimiterio sancti Galli,
Peter to-which already he-was-going which is in the-cemetery of-Saint Gall
capellam, qua itinerans utebatur, cum reliquiis et libris et
the-chapel which traveling he-used with relics and books and
omnibus utensilibus sacris, in quo et corpus illius cum
all utensils sacred in which also the-body of-him with
omni honore humatum est. Freneticus, ut ajunt, in septimo
all honor buried was a-madman as they-say on the-seventh
ejus super illius corruens tumbam sanus surrexit; tradunt,
his upon of-him falling the-tomb sound rose they-relate
et alias infirmitates sepe illic meritis ejus curatas.
also other infirmities often there by-the-merits his cured
Sed ut ad ea, unde digressi sumus, redeamus, Salamon
but that to those-things from-which digressed we-have we-may-return Salomon
præmonachus noster idem semper loco nostro et fratribus
pre-monk our the-same always to-place our and to-the-brothers
apud Deum et homines permanebat. Ruodkerum autem semper
before God and men remained Ruodker moreover always
præ oculis habebat, quem sibi in his, quæ ad Deum
before (his)-eyes he-had whom for-himself in those-things which to God
fuerant, ducem et custodem elegerat. A quo dum quadam die
had-been as-leader and guardian he-had-chosen by whom while on-a-certain day
ab aula veniens psalmo benedictionis susciperetur, surgens
from the-court coming with-the-psalm of-blessing he-was-received rising
ad osculum patris gloriabatur inter cætera de muneribus
to the-kiss of-the-father he-was-boasting among other-things about the-gifts
regis Arnoldi, quæ se sancto Gallo daturum ait. Nam
of-the-king Arnulf which himself to-Saint Gall about-to-give he-said for
ut id genus hominum est, laudis avidissimus per quedam
as that kind of-men is of-praise most-greedy through certain-things

erat; de quo in periculum, uti post liquebit, aliquando venit.
he-was by which into danger as afterward will-be-clear sometime he-came
Erat munus illud capsa solide aurea, gemmis regaliter inclita,
was gift that a-reliquary solidly golden with-gems royally renowned
reliquiis summis referta, in formam capellæ creata, cui
with-relics highest crammed into the-form of-a-chapel made to-which
simile quidem nihil unquam vidimus. Superscriptio ejus est:
like indeed nothing ever we-have-seen the-superscription its is

En crucis atque piæ cum sanctis capsa Mariæ:
Lo of-the-cross and of-holy with the-saints the-reliquary of-Mary
hanc Karolus summam delegit habere capellam.
this Charles highest chose to-have chapel

Suadet Ruodkerus homini, non aurum, sed se ipsum, ut
urges Ruodker the-man not gold but him himself as
sepe pollicitus est, Gallo suo offerre et monachum se
often promised he-had to-Gall his to-offer and a-monk himself
ejus verum jam tandem perficere. Factum est, ut magni
his true now at-last to-complete done it-was as of-great
consilii angelus hortatus est. Regi tandem datori suo
counsel the-angel urged has to-the-king at-last giver his
postquam votum suum aperuit, capsam ille ipsam quadam
after the-vow his he-disclosed the-reliquary be that-very on-a-certain
die suspendens collo, tunica monachi et cuculla indutus
day hanging on-(his)-neck in-the-tunic of-a-monk and cowl clothed
aram sancti Galli Berhardo annuente nudipes adiit, peccata
the-altar of-Saint Gall with-Bernhard assenting barefoot approached (his)-sins
deflevit seculoque abrenuntians sancti Galli fit monachus.
wept and-the-world renouncing of-Saint Gall becomes a-monk
Abbas illum tanquam de palatio monachum delicatius
the-abbot him as-if from the-palace a-monk more-delicately

tractavit et omnibus, qui sub se militabant, præhabuit.
treated and over-all who under him soldiered preferred
Post non multum vero temporis, consiliis hominis carere
after not much but of-time the-counsels of-the-man to-lack
non posse republica tota personante, abbatis sui
not to-be-able with-the-commonwealth whole resounding of-abbot his
permisso rex eum iterum in aulam assumsit et priorum
by-permission the-king him again into the-court took and of-former
honorum statibus restituit; tandem quoque et adauxit.
of-honors to-the-states restored at-last also and increased
Nam Augense ei tunc cœnobium tradidit. Ajunt autem,
for of-Reichenau to-him then the-monastery he-handed-over they-say moreover
hominem fortunatum tandem duodecim abbatias rexisse.
the-man fortunate at-last twelve abbeys to-have-ruled
Kerhaldo itaque abbate, ut alias relatum est, deposito, per
with-Gerhard and-so abbot as elsewhere related it-is deposed through
Hattonem archiepiscopum nobis oblatus et nostrum locum
Hatto the-archbishop to-us offered also our place
suscepit regendum. Quem præ omnibus postea quæ gubernavit
took-up to-be-ruled which before all afterward which he-governed
locis apud Deum et homines amplificare curavit. Cum autem
places before God and men to-enlarge he-took-care when moreover
annum et dimidium nobis præesset, Constantiæ tandem
a-year and a-half over-us he-presided over-Constance at-last
prælatus Dei factus est pastor et episcopus. Sic quoque
set of-God made he-was pastor and bishop thus also
ipse et Hatto ille Magontinus archiepiscopus sibi semper
he-himself and Hatto that of-Mainz archbishop to-him always
amicissimus, quem Cor Regis nominabant, cum et ipse,
most-friendly whom Heart of-the-King they-called since also he-himself
ut ajunt, duodecim abbatiis præfuerit, post regem imperium
as they-say over-twelve abbeys presided after the-king the-empire

tenuerant; Fultensis enim et ille erat monachus et abbas. Qui
had-held of-Fulda for also he was monk and abbot who
Magontiam ipsam a loco suo antiquo motam propius Rheno
Mainz itself from place its ancient moved nearer to-the-Rhine
statuerat, et in hoc et in aliis multis animi sui magnitudinem
had-set and in this and in others many of-mind his the-greatness
ostenderat. — Nondum adhuc illo tempore Suevia in
had-shown not-yet still at-that time Swabia into
ducatum erat redacta; sed fisco regio peculiariter parebat,
a-duchy was reduced but to-the-fisc royal particularly was-subject
sicut hodie et Francia. Procurabant ambas cameræ, quos sic
as today also Franconia administered both of-the-chamber who thus
vocabant, nuntii, Franciam Adalpert cum Werinhere, Sueviam
they-called envoys Franconia Adalbert with Werinher Swabia
autem Pertolt et Erchinger fratres. Quorum utrorumque
moreover Berthold and Erchanger brothers of-whom of-both
multa dicioni subtracta sunt per munificentias
many-things from-the-dominion withdrawn were through the-munificences
regias in utrosque episcopos; surgunt inde invidiæ et odia
royal toward both the-bishops rise thence the-envies and hatreds
utrorumque in ambos. Preter scelera, quæ in reges
of-both against both besides the-crimes which against the-kings
ipsos machinati sunt, Hattonem Franci illi sepe perdere
themselves plotted they-have Hatto the-Franks those often to-destroy
moliti sunt. Sed astutia hominis in falsam regis gratiam
striven have but by-the-cunning of-the-man into false of-the-king grace
suasi, qualiter Adalpert, fraude ejus de urbe Pabinberch
persuaded how Adalbert by-the-fraud his from the-city Bamberg
detractus, capite sit plexus — alter enim morbo obierat —
drawn-out in-the-head was punished the-other for by-sickness had-died
quoniam vulgo concinnatur et canitur, scribere supersedeo.
since commonly it-is-composed and is-sung to-write I-refrain

Ad Salamonem redeo. Huic, sicut diximus, cum aliquæ
to Salomon I-return to-him as we-said when certain
Potamum, cameræ nuntiorum juris oppidum, pertinentia
to-Bodman of-the-chamber of-the-envoys of-the-right the-town belonging
a regibus darentur, sicut Werinhere et Ruodhart domnum
by the-kings were-given as Werinher and Ruodhart lord
Otmarum, sic ipsi insequi conati sunt et ipsum. Sed
Othmar so they-themselves to-pursue tried have also him but
episcopio et abbatiis ille multiplex variorumque militum
with-the-bishopric and abbeys he manifold and-of-various soldiers
manu fortior casu aliquando viris occursaverat; pacem
in-band stronger by-chance sometime the-men had-met peace
salutando prior, si forte resalutare velint, incassum
in-greeting first if perhaps to-greet-back they-might-wish in-vain
exspectat; nuntiis post eos missis, qui rem agerent,
he-awaits with-envoys after them sent who the-matter might-handle
pacificari nolebant. Ille autem cum præ omnibus sancti
to-be-pacified they-would-not he moreover since before all of-Saint
Galli claustro semper maneret, quadam nocte præmonitus,
Gall in-the-cloister always he-stayed on-a-certain night forewarned
vim sibi ab illis, nisi fugeret, inferendam, secessit
force on-himself by them unless he-fled to-be-brought withdrew
securus in silvam Vallis Turbatæ, ea tempestate quidem
secure into the-forest of-the-Valley Troubled in-that season indeed
vastissimam. At illi sancto Gallo invaso episcopum capere
most-vast but they with-Saint Gall invaded the-bishop to-seize
volebant, si adesset. Ille vero capellula in ea solitudine
wished if he-were-present he but in-a-little-chapel in that solitude
in nomine sancti Galli fabricata, plurimis suorum, ubi
in the-name of-Saint Gall built with-very-many of-his-people where
esset, ad tempus ignaris, ad aulam nuntiis directis,
he-might-be for a-time unaware to the-court with-envoys sent

latuit. Jubentur a rege, tunc quidem Arnoldo, episcopus et
lay-hid are-bidden by the-king then indeed Arnulf the-bishop and
ipsi sup panno pacis ad aulam Magontiæ venire; ubi
they-themselves under the-cloth of-peace to the-court of-Mainz to-come where
causa publice peracta, rei majestatis lese pronuntiati
with-the-case publicly conducted guilty of-majesty injured pronounced
ipsi illi in Ingilinheim traduntur, usque dum exilio aut
they those at Ingelheim are-handed-over all-the-way until with-exile or
morte punirentur. Egit tandem Salomon cum Hattone
with-death they-should-be-punished dealt at-last Salomon with Hatto
episcopo, anxius, ne cedis illorum ipse quidem causa
the-bishop anxious lest of-the-slaughter of-them he-himself indeed the-cause
foret, ut eos liberaret. Adeunt suplices ambo secreto
might-be that them he-might-free approach as-suppliants both secretly
imperium; cor regis molliunt; hostes illos in gratiam
the-empire the-heart of-the-king they-soften the-enemies those into favor
reducunt; coram omnibus Salomoni suplices facti pacificantur;
they-bring-back before all to-Salomon suppliants made they-are-pacified
potestati pristinæ ipso juvante restituuntur. Redeunt tandem
to-the-power former with-him helping they-are-restored return at-last
domum tanquam amicissimi, juramento coram rege dato,
home as-if most-friendly with-an-oath before the-king given
ne unquam episcopum lederent, nunquam episcopum in
that never the-bishop they-should-hurt never the-bishop in
rebus fiscalibus sibi dono traditis se esse lesuros.
things fiscal to-him by-gift handed-over themselves to-be about-to-hurt

Capitula 13–16

THE KING'S CHRISTMAS AT SAINT GALL

At a banquet in Constance Salomon boasts of Saint Gall's oven, cauldron, and shepherds to whom his guests would bow, and his guests break the glass cups he gives them. King Conrad keeps three days at Saint Gall, tries the boys' discipline with apples, eats with the brothers, and drops gold into the children's mouths. Salomon has two shaggy herdsmen offer game to the envoys, and the envoys, finding they have bowed to the herdsmen as the bishop had boasted, take it as mockery. Conrad reconciles them, is enrolled as a brother, confirms the immunity, gives fiscal land at Stammheim to Saint Othmar, and feasts the brothers.

Invitantur post hæc viri ab episcopo Constantiam
are-invited after these-things the-men by the-bishop to-Constance
ad convivium et munera. Sedetur ad mensam, et, ut
to a-banquet and gifts there-is-sitting at table and as
fit, inter delicias potationum cum mirarentur artificia
happens among the-delights of-the-drinkings when they-were-wondering-at the-artifices
vasorum auri argentique, maxime autem vitreorum, episcopus
of-the-vessels of-gold and-silver most moreover of-the-glass-ones the-bishop
laudis quidem quiddam, ut diximus, avidior, quedam inter
of-praise indeed something as we-said more-greedy certain-things among
ceteras divitias, quas a regibus haberet, extollens, hospitibus
other riches which from the-kings he-had extolling to-the-guests
arte tacitis laudis verba ætiam de sancti Galli rebus
by-art silent of-praise words also about of-Saint Gall the-things
magnis, quibus animos dudum vulneratos offenderat, intulit.
great by-which the-minds long-since wounded he-had-offended brought-in
Que tamen cum essent levia, mala conflabant gravia. Dixerat
which however since they-were light evils were-forging heavy-ones he-had-said
enim illis ipse utique indiscrete ludens, habere se
for to-them he-himself surely indiscreetly jesting to-have himself

apud sanctum Gallum clibanum, qui uno calore ambobus
at Saint Gall an-oven which with-one heating for-both
illis panes coqueret in annum; nam mille coqui posse
those loaves might-bake for a-year for a-thousand to-be-cooked to-be-able
ajunt. Simile ætiam quiddam de lebete eneo grandi
they-say like also something about a-cauldron bronze huge
et de tarra avenis centum maltrarum commoda cum
and about a-kiln for-oats of-a-hundred measures convenient when
projectasset, pastores gregum se habere adjunxit, quibus
he-had-thrown-out shepherds of-flocks himself to-have he-added to-whom
ætiam ipsi, si viros viderent, pilleis capitibus inclinarent
also they-themselves if the-men they-saw with-caps from-heads would-bow
detractis. Patienter tulerunt homines fraudolenti episcopi
drawn-off patiently bore the-men deceitful of-the-bishop
gloriam usque ad capitum pastoribus inclinationes; id enim
the-boast all-the-way to of-heads to-the-shepherds the-bowings that for
nunquam fieri posse refellentes loquuntur. Afferuntur
never to-happen to-be-able refuting they-speak are-brought
tamen viris animosis cara munera tandem recessuris,
however to-the-men spirited dear gifts at-last about-to-withdraw
inter quæ erant vascula duo vitrea nimis insignia, quæ
among which were little-vessels two of-glass very notable which
ipsi pridem in convivio præ cæteris mirabantur. Quæ
they-themselves earlier at the-banquet before the-rest wondered-at which
illi in manus sumentes, consilio latenti uterque suum
they into hands taking by-counsel hidden each his-own
decidere sinens, frustata ridebant. Ceteris omnibus, milia
to-fall allowing broken laughed for-the-rest all thousands
gratiarum episcopo remittentes, callide abstinebant. Missione
of-thanks to-the-bishop returning cunningly they-abstained with-dismissal
tandem data, cum eos præsul osculo peteret: Vestra, inquid,
at-last given when them the-prelate with-a-kiss sought yours he-said

erant; ideo vos tanti precii pocula confringere non
they-were therefore you of-so-great price the-cups to-break not
piguit. Sed multa animabus vestris, si ea pro nummis
it-irked but many-things for-souls your if them for coins
dantes pauperibus dedissetis, remedia facere poteratis. —
giving to-the-poor you-had-given remedies to-make you-could
Vitrei, inquiunt, amici vitro sunt donandi; sed nos, qui
of-glass they-say friends with-glass are to-be-presented but we who
vitrei esse nolumus, vitrum confregimus—; amoreque, ut
of-glass to-be do-not-wish the-glass have-broken and-with-love as
moris est, osculato et epoto, lætabundi discedunt.
of-custom it-is kissed and drunk-out rejoicing they-depart
Non multo post tempore Chuonradus tunc rex natale
not much after in-time Conrad then king the-birthday
Domini Constantiæ egit. Ipsa die post mensam, cum
of-the-Lord at-Constance kept on-that-very day after the-table when
episcopus ei processiones vespertinas tridui illius
the-bishop to-him the-processions of-evening of-the-three-days that
apud sanctum Gallum laudaret, rex inquit: O utinam
at Saint Gall was-praising the-king says O would-that
ibi essemus! Et quare illuc, anime mi, matutini non
there we-were and why thither soul my in-the-morning not
ibimus? Parantur continuo naves; quibus mane conscensis
shall-we-go are-prepared at-once ships with-which in-the-morning boarded
cum episcopis et cætero comitatu rex litus nostrum
with the-bishops and the-other retinue the-king the-shore our
meridianus attigit et sancto Gallo cum tripudiis appropians
at-midday reached and to-Saint Gall with dances approaching
novis laudibus dictatis in loco gloriose susceptus est.
with-new praises composed in the-place gloriously received was
Tribusque noctibus in omni hilaritate loco immoratus
and-for-three nights in all gladness in-the-place having-lingered

quarto die Arbonam tandem nocturnus venit. Longum
on-the-fourth day to-Arbon at-last by-night came long
est dicere, quibus jocunditatibus dies exegerit et noctes,
it-is to-tell with-what delights the-days he-spent and the-nights
maxime in processione infantum; quibus poma in medio
most in the-procession of-the-children for-whom apples in the-middle
æcclesiæ pavimento antesterni jubens, cum nec unum
of-the-church on-the-pavement to-be-strewn-before bidding when not one
parvissimorum moveri nec ad ea adtendere vidisset,
of-the-smallest to-be-moved nor to them to-attend he-had-seen
miratus est disciplinam. Refectorium quoque fratrum
wondered-at he-has the-discipline the-refectory also of-the-brothers
hora mensæ cum duobus episcopis cum intrasset in
at-the-hour of-the-table with two bishops when he-had-entered on
infantum die, plura sibi assurgentibus læta locutus:
of-the-children the-day many-things for-him to-those-rising glad having-spoken
Nobiscum, ait, velitis nolitis, partiri habebitis.
with-us he-said whether-you-wish or-not-wish to-share you-will-have
Decanum autem, qui mensa abbatis sui causa cedere
the-dean moreover who from-the-table of-the-abbot his for-the-sake to-yield
parabat, amplexatum retinens assedit; et ei apposita
was-preparing embraced holding-back he-sat-down and to-him the-things-set-before
ad se sumens omnes circumspectans et arridens: His
to himself taking all looking-around and smiling of-these
interim, inquit, participemur. Misit autem quantocius ad
meanwhile he-says let-us-partake he-sent moreover as-quickly-as-possible to
Salamonem, ne sibi superveniret, sed uterque pro altero
Salomon lest upon-him he-should-come but each for the-other
mensas teneret. Præposito dein cum nihil sibi, nisi quod
the-tables should-keep to-the-provost then when nothing to-himself except what
fratribus paratum esset, juberet apponi, O rex, inquit, nostra
for-the-brothers prepared was he-bade to-be-set O king he-says our

infortunia! quod superventurum diem non exspectabas; cras
misfortunes that about-to-come day not you-awaited tomorrow
enim panem et fabas nudas forsitan habebimus, sed hodie
for bread and beans bare perhaps we-shall-have but today
non sic. Enimvero, ait ille, et cras vobis Deus misereri
not so indeed says he also tomorrow on-you God to-have-mercy
poterit. Infantulis deinde per ordinem lectitantibus et
will-be-able to-the-little-children then in order reading and
analogio descendentibus aureos in ora ad se elevatis
from-the-lectern coming-down gold-pieces into the-mouths to himself raised
misit. Quorum unus pusillior cum clamitans aurum exspueret:
he-sent of-whom one smaller when crying-out the-gold he-spat-out
Iste, inquit, si vixerit, bonus quandoque monachus
this-one he-says if he-shall-have-lived a-good sometime monk
erit. Surgens tandem a mensa hilariter fratribus multa
will-be rising at-last from the-table cheerfully to-the-brothers much
locutus optime spei esse monebat, quoniam, si adviveret,
having-spoken of-best hope to-be he-warned since if he-lived-on
tales convivas lætificaret. Rediit igitur ad suos, Salamoni
such guests he-would-gladden returned therefore to his-people to-Salomon
et omnibus nunquam se lætius convivatum gloriatus.
and to-all never himself more-gladly to-have-feasted boasting
Inter hæc autem Perhtoldum et Erchingerum tristes
among these-things moreover Berthold and Erchanger sad
invenit et exasperatos. Causam quæsivit hilariter; quæ quidem
he-found and exasperated the-cause he-asked cheerfully which indeed
hæc erat. Magistri pastorum duo, homines utique silvestres,
this was masters of-the-shepherds two men surely woodland
hirsuti et prolixis barbis, ut id genus multum videri solet,
shaggy and with-long beards as that kind much to-be-seen is-wont
quasi venerandi, cum tales pridie pro ferina juberentur
as-if venerable when such the-day-before for game were-bidden

die nocteque laborare, ursum de lustro unus, alter cervum
by-day and-by-night to-labor a-bear from the-lair one the-other a-stag
recens occisos attulerat. Quod Salamoni cum ministri super
freshly killed had-brought which to-Salomon when the-servants over
mensam silentio intimarent, jubet homines feras fratribus
the-table in-silence made-known he-bids the-men the-beasts to-the-brothers
illis, qui per se quidem tunc mensa utebantur ut primates,
those who by themselves indeed then the-table used as chief-men
oblatione propria offerre; fingebantur autem vicini esse et
by-offering own to-offer they-were-feigned moreover neighbors to-be and
liberi. Quibus talibus aspectis, assurgunt germani; pilleis
free with-whom such seen rise the-brothers with-caps
detractis regratiant venatores reverenter inclinati. Quod videns
drawn-off thank-in-return the-hunters reverently bowed which seeing
episcopus ante dictorum memor secum gaudebat; at illi
the-bishop before of-the-said-things mindful within-himself rejoiced but they
scioli quidem facti feras coram episcopo poni fecerant, a
knowing indeed made the-beasts before the-bishop to-be-set had-made by
dicentibus: Sint tua tibi; nobis satis est haberi derisui.
those-saying let-be your-things to-you for-us enough it-is to-be-held in-derision
Timore tamen imperii animum præmentes iram fregerant.
by-fear however of-the-empire the-mind pressing the-anger they-had-broken
Quod rex sapiens prudenti leniit consilio: Quoniam ad
which the-king wise with-prudent soothed counsel since to
gaudia quidem convenimus, mei juris est, inquit, omnia
joys indeed we-have-come of-my right it-is he-says all-things
nullius periculi ludicra defendere et, si in rixas venerint,
of-no danger jests to-defend and if into quarrels they-shall-have-come
imperiali decreto adnullare. Quapropter sedato animo,
by-imperial decree to-annul wherefore with-calmed mind

judices mei, ambos vos esse volo, et in gratiam redire cum
judges my both you to-be I-wish and into favor to-return with
episcopo. Reconciliantur enim umbratili pace tunc secundo.
the-bishop they-are-reconciled for with-shadowy peace then a-second-time
At rex vesperum et noctem cum egisset hilariter, diluculo
but the-king the-evening and the-night when he-had-spent cheerfully at-dawn
conventum fratrum petens, omnium votis faventibus fit
the-assembly of-the-brothers seeking with-the-wishes of-all favoring becomes
frater conscriptus. Tribuit cuique fratrum argenti libram,
brother enrolled he-granted to-each of-the-brothers of-silver a-pound
ut habeat ad vestitum. Puerolis edixit tres dies ad
that he-might-have for clothing to-the-little-boys he-proclaimed three days for
ludendum, et tunc quidem et in posterum, ingressusque
playing both then indeed and in the-future and-having-entered
sancti Galli basilicam palliis vestivit altaria. Immunitatem
of-Saint Gall the-basilica with-palls he-clothed the-altars the-immunity
ætiam loci a Crimaldo inceptam, sed adhuc non firmam,
also of-the-place by Grimald begun but still not firm
episcopo admittente ipse manu sua et sigillo solidam
with-the-bishop admitting he-himself with-hand his and seal solid
fecit et perpetuam. Ingreditur tandem oratorium beati
made and perpetual enters at-last the-oratory of-blessed
Otmari auctoritate Romana in sanctum levati — nam
Othmar by-authority Roman into a-saint raised for
parentes ejus erant, qui eum vexaverant — seque reum,
the-parents his were they-who him had-harassed and-himself guilty
quasi ipse interfuerit factis, ad ejus aram reddidit;
as-if he-himself had-been-present at-the-deeds at his altar he-rendered
palliis quoque, auro et argento sanctum placavit. Sed
with-palls also with-gold and silver the-saint he-appeased but
et circa Stamhem villam sancto Otmaro a Karolo datam
also around Stammheim the-estate to-Saint Othmar by Charles given

quædam loca regii juris adhuc erant. Ille vero, quicquid inibi
certain places of-royal right still were he but whatever therein
regii fisci erat, totum in manum advocati super aram
of-the-royal fisc was all into the-hand of-the-advocate on altar
ejus tradiderat et sigillo suo roboraverat. Et conversus ad
his he-had-handed-over and with-seal his had-confirmed and turned to
Salamonem: Eo, inquit, pacto, ut fratres nostri conscripti
Salomon on-that he-said condition that the-brothers our enrolled
pro convivio nostro hesterno habundantius a Karolo statutam
for feast our of-yesterday more-abundantly by Charles appointed
ebdomadam natalis domini mei hujus ætiam in memoriam
the-week of-the-birthday of-lord my this also in memory
mei debeant convivari—, et subridens: Nam et ego hodie
of-me ought to-feast and smiling for also I today
frater conscriptus volo prandere cum fratribus et fabas nostras
brother enrolled I-wish to-lunch with the-brothers and beans our
de meo piperare. Aguntur celeres regi missæ a fratribus
from my-own to-pepper are-done swift for-the-king masses by the-brothers
super id ipsum altare. Præmaturatur prandium; impletur
at that very altar is-hastened the-lunch is-filled
refectorium; vix unum lector recitaverat periodum. Caritas,
the-refectory scarcely one the-reader had-recited period charity
quæ non agit perperam, licenter sprevit disciplinam. Nemo ait,
which not acts wrongly freely scorned discipline no-one says
hoc aut illud esse insolitum, quamvis ante nunquam sit visum
this or that to-be unusual although before never it-be seen
vel auditum, nunquam ea domu saporatum monachum.
or heard never in-that house tasted by-a-monk
Odorem ferinæ hauriunt et carnium. Saltant satirici; psallunt
the-smell of-game they-draw-in and of-meats leap the-satirists sing-to-strings
symphoniaci. Nunquam tale per se tripudium Galli habuit
the-musicians never such by itself a-dance of-Gall had

refectorium. Graviores fratrum rex spectat inter strepitum;
the-refectory the-graver of-the-brothers the-king watches amid the-din
ridet quorumdam vultus contractos propter rerum talium
he-laughs-at of-certain-ones the-faces contracted on-account-of of-things of-such
insolentiam. — Carpuntur iterum cordibus fratres illi sæpe
the-unusualness are-plucked again in-hearts the-brothers those often
dicti pro damno regii fisci. Nam castellum quoddam
mentioned for the-loss of-the-royal fisc for a-castle certain
super Stamhem jam dudum struxerant, quod conquisitionis
above Stammheim already long-since they-had-built which of-acquisition
suæ proprietate coram rege sibi vendicabant. Quibus
their by-ownership before the-king for-themselves they-claimed to-whom
rex: Castellum, inquit, sine oppidanorum dampno habere
the-king the-castle he-says without of-the-townsfolk loss to-have
nequibitis; quibus si injuriosi quidem fueritis, mei
you-will-not-be-able to-whom if injurious indeed you-shall-have-been my
gratia carebitis. Discedit rex vespertinus fratrum suorum
favor you-will-lack departs the-king at-evening of-brothers his
laudibus lacrimosis prosecutus. Quibus, si vivere liceret,
by-praises tearful attended to-whom if to-live it-were-allowed
non semel bene facturum promiserat.
not once well to-do he-had-promised

Capitula 17–19

SALOMON SEIZED

The envoys' men oppress the fiscal land at Stammheim; when Salomon complains, Liutfrid draws his sword on him, and the bishop is taken prisoner to Diepoldsburg, the castle of Erchanger's wife Bertha. She receives him with honor and feeds him, while her husband's men fortify Hohentwiel. Salomon's kinsman Siegfried surprises Berthold, Erchanger, and Liutfrid asleep in a forest and threatens to hang them, and the guards flee. Salomon, freed, comforts Bertha, sends her goods away safely, and returns to Constance in triumph.

Invadit loca lege Almannica cum advocato episcopus tribus
invades the-places by-law Alemannic with the-advocate the-bishop for-three
diebus, uti jus erat, homines fisci juramentis sancto Otmaro
days as right was the-men of-the-fisc by-oaths for-Saint Othmar
vendicantes. Quibus custodes castelli, nisi sibi pareant,
claiming to-whom the-keepers of-the-castle unless to-them they-obey
male habituros minantur minasque factis exequuntur. Nam
badly about-to-fare threaten and-the-threats with-deeds carry-out for
victimas et cætera, quæ libebat, sponte nolentibus dare
victims and other-things which it-pleased freely from-those-unwilling to-give
fiscalibus, vi quidem auferebant. Quod cum advocatus tum
the-fiscal-men by-force indeed they-carried-off which when the-advocate now
per se, tum verbis Salamonis fratribus illis non semel
by himself now by-the-words of-Salomon to-the-brothers those not once
quæreretur, aut ficta verba, aut injuriosa passus recessit.
complained either feigned words or injurious having-suffered he-withdrew
Cumque hoc per annum pene pateretur, quadam die ipse
and-when this for a-year almost he-suffered on-a-certain day he-himself
viris obvius injurias quæritur episcopus. Et cum indigne
the-men meeting the-injuries complains-of the-bishop and when unworthily
quidem ipsius verba tulissent, episcopus subintulit: Enimvero,
indeed his words they-had-borne the-bishop added indeed

ait, cum mei causa in eis aliquando angustiis coram rege
he-says since for-my sake in those sometime straits before the-king
Arnolfo fueritis, unde egerrime ego ipse vos eripui, jam
Arnulf you-were from-which most-hardly I myself you rescued now
ejus articuli semper liceat recordari. Ilico Liutfridus,
of-that point always let-it-be-allowed to-remember on-the-spot Liutfrid
sororis amborum filius, juvenis pertinacissimus: Gloriaturne,
of-the-sister of-both the-son a-young-man most-stubborn does-he-boast
inquit, monachorum sceleratissimus injuriarum pro se vobis
he-says of-monks the-wickedest of-the-injuries for himself on-you
inlatarum, o avunculi! et vivere eum patimini? Extractoque
brought O uncles and to-live him do-you-suffer and-with-drawn
gladio, nisi ab ambobus premeretur, episcopum occidisset.
sword unless by both he-were-restrained the-bishop he-would-have-killed
Ipse autem, ut jugulum declinaret, cum citius equo
he moreover that (his)-throat he-might-turn-aside when quickly with-(his)-horse
diverteret, a fratribus ambobus freno tentus comprehensus
he-turned-away by the-brothers both by-the-bridle held seized
est. Quidam autem suorum cum gladium educentem
he-was a-certain-one moreover of-his-people when the-sword drawing
juvenem illum ipse econtra gladio stricto incurrere
young-man that he-himself in-turn with-sword drawn to-charge
vellet, lanceis circumvallantium transfixus interiit. Ducitur
wished by-the-lances of-those-surrounding pierced perished is-led
episcopus in diverticulum quoddam propinquum, ubi
the-bishop into a-byway certain near where
descendere jussus sedit, usque dum illi in partem cedentes,
to-dismount bidden he-sat all-the-way until they into a-part withdrawing
quid de eo facturi sint, tractent. Ipse autem confisus
what about him about-to-do they-be discuss he moreover trusting
in Domino suum dominum Gallum incessanter inclamitat.
in the-Lord his lord Gall unceasingly calls-upon

Suadet Liufridus, ut ei aut oculos eruant, aut dexteram
urges Liutfrid that of-him either the-eyes they-tear-out or the-right-hand
abscidant. Militum autem pars sanior, ne quid amplius
they-cut-off of-the-soldiers moreover the-part saner lest anything further
in christum Domini insanirent, omnimodis flagitat; sed
against the-anointed of-the-Lord they-should-rage in-every-way demands but
et incolomem relinqui optimum fore ajebant. Stat tandem
also unharmed to-be-left best to-be they-said stands at-last
fratribus consilium, ut in Thietpoldispurch, ubi Perhta,
for-the-brothers the-counsel that to Diepoldsburg where Bertha
uxor Erchingeri, tunc agebat, duceretur. Ipsam enim, cum
the-wife of-Erchanger then was-dwelling he-should-be-led her for since
esset quidem alias strenua, ad dolos acutissimam ajebant,
she-was indeed otherwise vigorous for wiles most-sharp they-said
et quoniam ei amore mariti sepe ante male optabat,
and since to-him out-of-love of-(her)-husband often before ill she-wished
incunctanter eum quoquo modo apud illam periturum.
without-delay him in-some way with her about-to-perish
Sternitur viro Dei vilior interea equus. Porcarii autem
is-saddled for-the-man of-God meaner meanwhile a-horse the-swineherds moreover
cum viderent turbam, ad spectandum accurrunt. Quibus visis
when they-saw the-crowd to watching run-up with-whom seen
Perhtolt: Inclinare coram istis, inquit, Dei maledicte, et ut
Berthold bow before these he-says of-God accursed and that
tibi veniam precentur, pedes eis lambe! Ille vero, quoniam
for-you pardon they-may-pray the-feet for-them lick he but since
vim sciebat, quod jussus est, fecerat. Commissus tandem
the-force he-knew what bidden he-was he-had-done committed at-last
satellitibus, qui eum ducerent, Perhtæ qui factum panderet
to-the-guards who him should-lead to-Bertha one-who the-deed might-disclose
celer præmittitur. At mulier facinore audito percutiens
swift is-sent-ahead but the-woman with-the-crime heard striking

pectus ingemuit et: Hæc, inquit, est dies, quæ honoribus
(her)-breast groaned and this she-says is the-day which to-honors
nostris apud Deum et homines finem datura est. Parat
our before God and men an-end about-to-give is she-prepares
ilico basilicam et aram; parat tapetiis et pallio
on-the-spot the-church and the-altar she-prepares with-tapestries and with-a-pall
dorsili caminatam. Ewangelio episcopum aliquos, qui
for-a-back-hanging the-heated-room with-the-gospel-book the-bishop some who
aderant, presbyteros recipere jubet. Progreditur adventanti
were-present priests to-receive she-bids she-goes-forward to-the-arriving-one
ipsa obviam ad portam; in manum illum sumens, si
herself to-meet at the-gate into hand him taking if
se dignetur osculari, lacrimans rogat. At milites dolo
her he-deign to-kiss weeping she-asks but the-soldiers by-guile
hæc fieri sibimet silenter ajebant. Paratur citissime
these-things to-be-done among-themselves silently said is-prepared most-quickly
lavacrum, ut pulvere et lassitudinis tergeretur sudore.
a-bath that from-the-dust and of-weariness he-might-be-cleansed from-the-sweat
Verebatur et ipse, quamvis fortunatus, infortunia. Clauditur
feared also he-himself although fortunate misfortunes is-shut
caminata super episcopum et duos solos, qui aderant,
the-heated-room over the-bishop and two alone who were-present
presbyteros. Nam, ut ipsum dixisse ajunt, quietam noctem
priests for as himself to-have-said they-say a-quiet night
agere poterat, nisi quod tubarum clangores et vigilum
to-spend he-could except that of-the-trumpets the-blasts and of-the-watchmen
egre passus est clamores. Ingreditur ad hospitem tantum illa
hardly suffered he-has the-shouts enters to the-guest only she
cum una sola pedissequa. Salutem homini et maturum ad
with one sole handmaid safety to-the-man and a-timely to

suos pollicetur reditum. Reficit cum reficiente;
his-people she-promises return she-refreshes-herself with the-one-refreshing-himself
per puellam sibi, per presbyteros apponitur episcopo.
through a-girl to-her through the-priests is-served to-the-bishop
Postquam episcopum viri illi a se, ut dictum est,
after the-bishop the-men those from themselves as said it-is
dimiserant, Duellium montem victualia convehentes nocte
had-dismissed Hohentwiel the-mount provisions bringing-together by-night
die nituntur munire. Ipsi interim cum suis, quos
by-day strive to-fortify they-themselves meanwhile with their-people whom
haberent, fidissimis clandestini agere; in silvis pascuosis
they-had most-faithful secretly to-dwell in forests pastoral
noctibus delitescere. Intimantur tertia tanti facinoris
by-nights to-lie-hid are-made-known on-the-third of-so-great crime
nocte Sigefrido, episcopi patrui filio, qui ilico propinquis
night to-Siegfried of-the-bishop of-the-uncle the-son who on-the-spot with-kinsmen
et episcopi militibus, quantis hora concluso licuit,
and of-the-bishop soldiers as-many-as in-the-hour concluded it-was-allowed
collectis in silva quadam matutinus eos aggreditur dormientes.
gathered in forest a-certain in-the-morning them attacks sleeping
Experrecti vero pauci contra turmas loricis et galeis
awakened but few against troops by-breastplates and helmets
tutas arma rapiunt inutilia. Ipsos tres viros quamvis animose
safe arms seize useless the-very three men although spiritedly
repugnantes armis exuunt, vivos comprehendunt, vinctos
resisting of-arms they-strip alive they-seize bound
abducunt. Currunt ilico celeres, qui Perthæ et urbanis
they-lead-away run on-the-spot swift-ones who to-Bertha and to-townsfolk
suis dicerent, nisi christum Domini citissime solverent,
her should-say unless the-anointed of-the-Lord most-quickly they-released
dominos suos machinis pensilibus impositos tribus partibus
masters their on-engines hanging placed in-three parts

urbis in faciem sibi ad solem torrendos. Quo audito
of-the-city in face to-them to the-sun to-be-scorched with-which heard
custodes, falli se primo æstimantes, certiores facti
the-guards to-be-deceived themselves at-first thinking more-certain made
omnes urbe viris vacuefacta dilapsi sunt. Relinquitur
all with-the-city of-men emptied slipped-away were is-left
episcopus liber cum presbyteris et Pertha flens et ejulans
the-bishop free with the-priests and Bertha weeping and wailing
cum pedissequis. Quam tamen ipse pro tempore consolatus
with (her)-handmaids whom however he-himself for the-time having-consoled
manu tenens urbis portas obviam suis egreditur.
by-the-hand holding of-the-city the-gates to-meet his-people goes-out
Nam nocte proxima cum eo de furtiva dimissione
for on-the-night next with him about a-stealthy release
per quoddam latens ostiolum condixit, quoniam sibi
through a-certain hidden little-door she-had-agreed since to-her
per nuntium viri sui innotuit, nocte alia illum
through a-messenger of-husband her it-was-made-known on-night another him
aut Duellium, aut, quod magis timebat, ad perdendum
either to-Hohentwiel or what more she-feared for destroying
esse transportandum. Fuga urbanorum comperta equis
to-be to-be-carried the-flight of-the-townsfolk discovered with-horses
potentiores prævolant curraces. Episcopo pro portis conspecto,
more-powerful fly-ahead the-runners with-the-bishop before the-gates seen
clamativo illum cantu salutant: Heil herro! Heil liebo! et
with-shouting him song they-greet Heil herro Heil liebo and
cætera. Urbem tamen intrare præter nominatos propter
the-rest the-city however to-enter beyond the-named-ones on-account-of
mulieris res servandas episcopus noluit. Nam in itinere
of-the-woman the-things to-be-kept the-bishop did-not-wish for on the-road
armatorum se suis adjungentium et prosequentium
of-armed-men themselves to-his-people joining and following

turba erat innumerabilis. Tum virum alloqui mulieri
the-crowd was countless then the-husband to-address to-the-woman
desideranti solus ad horam adducitur. Quem complexa, cum
desiring alone for an-hour is-brought whom having-embraced when
præ fletu naribus cruor proflueret, vix ab ipso quoque
before weeping from-the-nostrils blood flowed scarcely from him also
plorante avellitur. Movebat et inimicos tam repentina rerum
weeping she-is-torn moved also the-enemies so sudden of-things
mutatio. Episcopo autem cum vinctus procidens sibi
the-change to-the-bishop moreover when bound falling-forward to-himself
remitti supplicaret: Quantum in me est, inquit, remitto;
to-be-pardoned he-begged as-much-as in me is he-says I-pardon
et a custodibus iratis amotum benedictione prosequitur.
and from the-guards angry removed with-blessing attends
Egit tamen cum nepote et militibus, ut mulier ad
dealt however with (his)-nephew and soldiers that the-woman to
suos cum honore et rebus suis duceretur tutatis. Et
her-people with honor and with-things her should-be-led kept-safe and
cum ibi pernoctassent, ipse ejus omnia bona fidelibus
when there they-had-spent-the-night he-himself her all goods to-faithful
suis commendans ordinavit avehenda. Dimittens autem illam
his commending ordered to-be-carried-off dismissing moreover her
invitavit ad se, rebus in melius vergentibus, Constantiam,
invited to himself with-things into better turning to-Constance
ut, si fidei memor sit, in lætiori experiretur fortunio. Rediit
that if of-faith mindful she-be in happier she-might-experience fortune returned
cum comitatu famoso Petrus alter ereptus ab Herodibus
with a-retinue famous Peter another snatched from the-Herods
Constantiam, tali omnium circumquaque convenientium
to-Constance with-such of-all from-round-about gathering

quidem tripudio, quali nec, si ipse quondam Romæ
indeed dancing as not-even if he-himself once at-Rome
tercius de cælo ceciderit, receptus sit Cato.
for-the-third-time from heaven had-fallen received would-have-been Cato

Capitula 20–22

SALOMON'S PENANCE AND HATTO'S TREASURE

The three prisoners are held at Hohentwiel; King Conrad, told of the outrage, weeps, and a council condemns them, makes Burchard duke of the Alemanni, and, despite Salomon's plea, has them beheaded. The castle is razed, and a kinsman's tax to Saint Othmar's tomb is paid until a son who refused it falls from a rock. Salomon goes to Rome to do penance and brings home Pelagius's body. Hatto, going to Italy, leaves his treasure with his comrade and takes Salomon's golden tankard by a trick; Salomon has merchants returning from Italy report Hatto dead, and spends the treasure on Pelagius's shrine, a cross, an altar and lectern, and the ivory tablets of Charlemagne, which Sintram's gospel book now fills.

Traduntur dampnosi tres illi in Duellium ad cognitionem
are-handed-over the-ruinous three those to Hohentwiel for examination
publicam reservandi, plurimis suorum jam, si forte
public to-be-reserved with-very-many of-their-people now if perhaps
ad ereptionem illorum in via occasio daretur, in arma
for the-rescue of-them on the-way occasion were-given into arms
collectis. Quod milites abbatiarum et episcopii cum cognatis
gathered which the-soldiers of-the-abbeys and of-the-bishopric with the-kinsmen
christi Domini circumvallando providebant. Innotuit
of-the-anointed of-the-Lord by-surrounding provided-against became-known
res Chuonrado in Frantia tunc posito. Nam veredarii, et
the-matter to-Conrad in Franconia then placed for the-couriers both
episcopo capto et recepto, dies et noctes celeres ibant.
with-the-bishop captured and recovered days and nights swift went

Ajebant autem illum mane evigilantem, fama a
they-said moreover him in-the-morning awaking with-the-report from
prioribus audita, lecto exilisse et patientiam regiam nullo
the-first heard from-the-bed to-have-leapt and the-patience royal in-no
modo tenere potuisse; a sequentibus autem corde sibi
way to-keep to-have-been-able from the-following moreover with-heart to-him
reddito parumper quievisse. In se vero reversus de valitudine
restored for-a-little to-have-rested into himself but returned about the-health
capti et recæpti cum quesisset: Constat, inquiunt, o rex,
of-the-one-captured and recovered when he-had-asked it-is-agreed they-say O king
dure tractatum adhuc male valere, et si, quia mox venturus
harshly treated still badly to-fare and if that soon about-to-come
sit, nosset, per nos vobis profecto mandasset. Quo
he-be he-knew through us to-you surely he-would-have-sent with-which
audito seorsum cædens flevit; erumpebant enim lacrimæ et
heard apart withdrawing he-wept burst-out for the-tears and
non poterant se continere. Consilio dehinc habito primo
not they-could themselves to-contain with-counsel thereafter held first
colloquium publicum Magontiæ, postea generale edixit
a-colloquy public at-Mainz afterward a-general he-proclaimed
concilium. Ubi tribus illis lege abjuratis et proscriptis
council where with-three those by-law abjured and proscribed
prædiisque eorum in fiscum redactis, majestatis reis capita
and-with-estates their into the-fisc brought of-majesty as-guilty heads
dampnata sunt, cæteris omnibus, qui tanto facinori
condemned were with-the-other all who in-so-great crime
intererant, tamquam rei publicæ hostibus prosequi jussis.
had-taken-part as-if of-the-common weal enemies to-be-pursued bidden
Sueviæ principum assensu statuitur Alemannis dux primus
of-Swabia of-the-princes with-assent is-established for-the-Alemanni duke first
Purchardus, gentis illius nobilissimus et virtutum dote
Burchard of-race that most-noble and of-virtues in-endowment

probatissimus. Cui et prædia damnatorum confiscata in
most-proven to-whom also the-estates of-the-condemned confiscated in
beneficium sunt tradita, excæptis dotibus Perhtæ sibimet
benefice were handed-over with-excepted the-dowries of-Bertha for-herself
edicto, quoniam viro non asserat, stabilitis. Episcopo
by-edict since to-(her)-husband not she-would-assign settled with-the-bishop
autem apud ducem inducias dampnatis rogante, ut, si fieri
moreover with the-duke a-truce for-the-condemned asking that if to-be-done
posset, exilium eis a rege intercederet, aliquot eos dies
it-could exile for-them from the-king he-might-intercede some them days
dux in custodia tenuit. Rex autem crebro ab eo fatigatus
the-duke in custody held the-king moreover often by him wearied
tandem eos jugulari præcæpit. Quibus tamen episcopus
at-last them to-be-slaughtered ordered to-whom however the-bishop
multum eorum nece tristatus, indulgentia, quantum in se
much by-their death saddened with-pardon as-much-as in himself
erat, ætiam vivis data, sepulturam concessit ad æcclesiam.
it-was also to-the-living given burial granted at the-church
Rex vero castellum illud odiosum sancto Otmaro causa
the-king but the-castle that hateful to-Saint Othmar the-cause
mali tanti tradidit diruendum, omnique anno ille, dum
of-evil so-great handed-over to-be-demolished and-every year he while
vixit, censum capitis sui in cera ad sepulchrum ejus,
he-lived the-tax of-head his in wax to the-tomb his
uti filius carnificum illorum, pro reatu in eum quasi
as the-son of-the-executioners those for guilt against him as-if
proprio misit. Quod et Ruodolfus postea, Welfhardi comitis
his-own sent which also Rudolf afterward of-Welfhard the-count
pater, cum ejusdem quidem prosapiæ fuerit, in censu
the-father since of-the-same indeed lineage he-was in tax
calibum de metallo Faucium Juliarum fecit. Sed id ipsum
of-steel from the-metal of-the-Pass Julian did but that very

Welfhardus et Henricus, filii ejus, aliquot annis dum
Welfhard and Henry the-sons his for-some years while
facerent, motus rubore Henricus, quasi homo sit censarius,
they-did-it moved by-shame Henry as-if a-man he-be tax-paying
fratre invito censum supersedit. Accidit autem, ut
with-(his)-brother unwilling the-tax left-off it-happened moreover that
in vigiliarum sancti Otmari die fratres ambo capreum
on of-the-vigils of-Saint Othmar the-day the-brothers both a-roe-deer
venantes in cacumen quoddam rupis artissimæ ducti, lassi
hunting onto a-summit certain of-a-rock most-narrow led tired
cum consedissent, repente petra, super quam Henricus sedit,
when they-had-sat-down suddenly the-rock upon which Henry sat
collapsa, adolescens ille magnæ indolis, proh dolor!, in
having-collapsed the-youth that of-great promise oh grief into
profundissimas valles rueret et periret. Vix spiritum habere
the-deepest valleys fell and perished scarcely breath to-have
poterat mater orbata. Scripturi nunc sumus, quod vidimus.
could the-mother bereaved about-to-write now we-are what we-have-seen
Necdum luctu finito, cum filio et filia unicis ad
not-yet with-mourning finished with (her)-son and daughter only to
pedis sancti cum muneribus et calibe supersesso venit;
the-feet of-the-saint with gifts and the-steel left-off she-came
quod in censu non soluto peccatum est, tres pro se et
because in the-tax not paid a-sin it-is three for themselves and
defuncto penituerunt. — Salomon autem videns fortunam,
the-dead did-penance Salomon moreover seeing fortune
ut solet, ludicra rotæ reciprocare, immo Deum in
as it-is-wont the-playful-things of-the-wheel to-turn-back nay God in
se non occultis indiciis potentiam suam ostendere, apud
him not by-hidden signs power his to-show with
imperium severus accusator sui, permisso dato Romam
the-empire severe accuser of-himself with-permission given Rome

petiit flens et ejulans atque dicens: Merito hæc passus
sought weeping and wailing and saying deservedly these-things suffered
sum, quoniam peccavi coram Deo in cælum; veniam petere
I-have since I-have-sinned before God into heaven pardon to-seek
habeo ab ipso, miserante me Petro. A papa vero
I-have from him with-having-mercy-on me Peter by the-pope but
benigne susceptus, cum ibi supplicans aliquandiu moraretur,
kindly received when there supplicating for-some-time he-stayed
indulgentiam sibi ab eo plorans petiit: maxime autem,
pardon for-himself from him weeping he-sought most moreover
quod sui causa tres illi quidem decapitati sint; penitentiæ
because for-his sake three those indeed beheaded were of-penance
quem vellet modum, sibi, rogavit, inponeret. Tandem autem
whatever he-wished a-manner on-him he-asked he-might-impose at-last moreover
ab apostolico indulgentiam adeptus domum redire lætanter
from the-apostolic pardon obtained home to-return gladly
aggreditur, reliquiisque sanctorum donatus quam plurimis
he-sets-out and-with-relics of-the-saints presented as-very many
maxime animo, toto reditu suo, contenderat, quomodo illas,
most with-mind whole on-return his he-had-striven how them
quam decentissime posset, domum veniens honorificaret,
as most-becomingly as-he-could home coming he-might-honor
præ cæteris autem corpus Pelagii martyris, in cujus die
before the-rest moreover the-body of-Pelagius the-martyr on whose day
inimicis suis subactis ipse liberatus est a vinculis. Qui
with-enemies his subdued he-himself freed was from chains who
cum multorum miraculorum virtutibus insignis esset, cottidie
since of-many of-miracles by-the-powers notable he-was daily
rumor ejus non solum proximas, sed et exteras Constantiam
the-rumor of-him not only the-nearest but also the-foreign to-Constance
fecit orandi causa turmatim confluere regiones. Opinabile
made of-praying for-the-sake in-troops to-flow-together regions to-be-believed

autem erat, in quantum se post reditum suum in
moreover it-was in how-much himself after return his in
virtutibus christus Dei exercuit, quam assiduus nocte
virtues the-anointed of-God exercised how assiduous by-night
dieque in precibus, quam largus in dando, maxime autem
and-by-day in prayers how generous in giving most moreover
pauperibus, quam promptus et assiduus in pacificationibus.
to-the-poor how ready and assiduous in peacemakings
Accidit autem, ut, eo quidem domum reverso, Hatto
it-happened moreover that with-him indeed home returned Hatto
archiepiscopus, sodes utique, ut sibimet dicebant, suus,
the-archbishop comrade surely as to-each-other they-used-to-say his
Italiam jus regium exacturus tendens Constantiam
to-Italy the-right royal about-to-exact making-his-way to-Constance
deveniret. Ajebant autem, illum Magontinis suis minus
arrived they-said moreover him Mainzers his less
confisum totum, quod in thesauris haberet, sodali suo,
trusting all that in treasuries he-had to-comrade his
dum rediret, commissurum secum tulisse. Erat autem
until he-returned about-to-entrust with-himself to-have-brought was moreover
sodalitatis illorum, quoniam ambo acutissimi erant, jus
of-the-comradeship of-them since both most-sharp were a-law
mirabile. Nam uterque illorum, in quo alterum in verbis
wonderful for each of-them in what the-other in words
et in rebus per astuciam decipere posset, agere solebat,
and in deeds by cunning to-deceive he-could to-do was-wont
ut in cantaro quodam, quo Salamon utebatur, gemmato
as in a-tankard certain which Salomon used jeweled
gravissimi ponderis aureo. Quo cum uterque, ut solebant,
of-heaviest weight golden from-which when each as they-were-wont
coram convivis jejuni aquam quasi vinum potarent, Salamon
before the-guests fasting water as-if wine drank Salomon

autem in conclavi vase quodam æneo mire figurato ad
moreover in the-chamber a-vessel certain bronze wonderfully shaped for
aquam inferendam uteretur, Hatto abiturus inter cætera
water to-be-brought-in used Hatto about-to-go-away among other-things
viro ait: Vas illud aquæ, inquit, quo in conclavi tuo
to-the-man says vessel that of-water he-says which in chamber your
uteris, mihi, sodes! tribue. Quo hilariter annuente, Hatto
you-use to-me comrade grant with-whom cheerfully assenting Hatto
pincernæ ait latenter: Coppam auream domni tui, quoniam
to-the-cupbearer says secretly the-cup golden of-lord your since
sic ego et sodes meus, inquit, condiximus, pincernæ meo
thus I and comrade my he-says have-agreed to-cupbearer my
confestim offerto. Quod mox, uti ille jussus est, fecerat.
at-once offer which soon as he bidden was he-had-done
Ablata est coppa, fraude amica interim tecta. At Salamon
carried-off was the-cup by-fraud friendly meanwhile covered but Salomon
mensa sequenti dum eam exegisset, deceptum se
at-the-table following when it he-had-demanded deceived himself
sentiens: Enimvero, si vixero, idem illi modius
perceiving indeed if I-shall-have-lived the-same to-him the-measure
remetietur. Thesaurosque suos postea, uti præmisimus,
will-be-measured-back and-treasures his afterward as we-said-before
sodali suo sodes eo pacto, ut, si defunctum audiret,
to-comrade his the-comrade on-that condition that if dead he-heard
pro animabus amborum, quibus vellet, eos dilapidaret,
for the-souls of-both on-whom he-wished them he-might-squander
abiens consignaverat. Vix mensis, ut ajunt, abiit, et
going-away had-consigned scarcely a-month as they-say went-by and
mercatores ab Italia redeuntes defunctum Salamon diffamare
merchants from Italy returning dead Salomon to-report
per nuntios præmonuit. Doloreque ad horam simulato,
through messengers he-forewarned and-with-grief for an-hour feigned

scriniis reclusis multos denarios distribuit pauperibus;
with-the-chests unlocked many pennies he-distributed to-the-poor
fabrorum quoque copia contracta, chantarum quondam
of-smiths also an-abundance gathered the-tankard former
suum primo dispertiens, sarchofagum illud magnificum, quod
his first breaking-apart sarcophagus that magnificent which
hodie miramur, sancto Pelagio ex auro viri et gemmis
today we-wonder-at for-Saint Pelagius from the-gold of-the-man and gems
electis conpegit; martiris ossa solemniter intulit. Crucem
choice he-put-together of-the-martyr the-bones solemnly he-brought-in the-cross
ætiam illam honorandam sanctæ Mariæ, Tuotilone nostro
also that venerable of-Saint Mary with-Tuotilo our
anaglifas parante, ex eodem auro et gemmis mirificavit.
the-reliefs preparing from the-same gold and gems he-made-wonderful
Altare vero sanctæ Mariæ et analogium ewangelicum ejusdem
the-altar but of-Saint Mary and the-lectern of-the-gospel of-the-same
fratris nostri artificio in locis congruis deaurata Hattonis
brother our by-the-artifice in places fitting gilded of-Hatto
sui de scriniis vestivit argento et dyptivit, ut videre est, ex
his from the-chests he-clothed with-silver and he-diptyched as to-see it-is from
auro electo. Sancto Gallo ætiam, in nullis fortuniis immemor
gold choice to-Saint Gall also in no fortunes unmindful
ejus, duas tabulas eburneas de eisdem scriniis attulit;
of-him two tablets ivory from the-same chests he-brought
quibus alias magnitudine equipares rarissime videre est, quasi
than-which others in-size equal most-rarely to-see it-is as-if
sic dentatus elephans aliorum fuerit gigas. Erant autem
so toothed an-elephant of-the-others had-been a-giant were moreover
tabulæ quondam quidem ad scribendum ceratæ, quas latere
the-tablets once indeed for writing waxed which beside
lectuli soporantem ponere solitum in vita sua scriptor
of-the-little-bed sleeping to-place accustomed in life his writer

ejus Karolum dixit. Quarum una cum sculptura esset et sit
his Charles said of-which one since with-carving it-was and is
insignissima, altera planitiæ politissima, Tuotiloni nostro
most-notable the-other with-smoothness most-polished to-Tuotilo our
politam tradidit sculpendam. Quibus longioris et latioris
the-polished he-handed-over to-be-carved for-which of-longer and broader
moduli Sintrammum nostrum scribere jussit ewangelium,
measure Sintram our to-write he-bade the-gospel-book
ut, quod tabulis abundaret, auro et gemmis Hattonis
that what to-the-tablets might-abound with-gold and gems of-Hatto
ornaret. Hoc hodie est ewangelium et scriptura, cui
he-might-adorn this today is the-gospel-book and the-writing to-which
nulla, ut opinamur, par erit ultra; quia, cum omnis orbis
none as we-think equal will-be hereafter because since all the-world
cisalpinus Sintrammi digitos miretur, in hoc uno, ut celebre
cisalpine of-Sintram the-fingers wonders-at in this one as famous
est, triumphat. Mirari autem est, hominem unum tanta
it-is it-triumphs to-wonder moreover it-is a-man one so-much
scripsisse, quia in nominatissimis locis plerisque harum
to-have-written since in most-renowned places very-many of-these
regni partium Sintrammi caracteris libri, sancti Galli
of-the-kingdom parts of-Sintram of-the-hand books of-Saint Gall
obsides, habentur. Sed et hoc in homine mirabile erat et
hostages are-held but also this in the-man wonderful was and
singulare, quod, cum delicata ejus scriptura jocunde sit directa,
singular that since delicate his writing pleasantly be directed
raro in pagina vel unius verbi mendacium invenias rasum.
rarely on a-page even of-one word a-lie you-would-find scraped

Capitula 23–25

HATTO'S RETURN AND PALM SUNDAY

Hatto returns rich from Italy and rages at his comrade, but Salomon answers that alms given before death are surer than alms after it, and the two agree never to deceive each other again. At Constance the citizens shut the gates rather than let Hatto take the jeweled cross, and he dies soon after of an Italian fever. Salomon rides to Saint Gall on the eve of Palm Sunday to raise the antiphon, preaches from wooden steps in a meadow, and feeds the crowd. He has his acquisitions confirmed by King Conrad, among them Pfäfers, and prefers Saint Gall to the richer Reichenau.

Rediit dives ille ab Italia ditissimus, neque jam dampnum
returned rich that-one from Italy most-rich nor now loss
istud sentire habebat. Nam prius abiens cum Pelagii eum
that to-feel he-had for before going-away when of-Pelagius him
miracula terrerent aspecta magnisque eum laudibus prosecutus
the-miracles awed seen and-with-great him praises attended
honorare eum disponeret, cum rediret, dispendium tamen
to-honor him he-arranged when he-should-return the-loss however
gazæ cum Chumo propians audiret, sodalem suum
of-the-treasure when to-Como approaching he-heard comrade his
omnium hominum submurmurat versutissimum, multaque
of-all men he-murmurs most-crafty and-many-things
in illum cum spiritu infremeret, tristius agebat; Curiæque
against him with spirit he-roared more-sadly he-dealt and-at-Chur
sibi cum multis occursantem cum alloqui nollet, ita
him with many coming-to-meet when to-address he-was-unwilling thus
conventus est a suis: Hoc vos ludicrum, pater, si semper
addressed was by his-people this you jest father if always
decuit, si per hanc aleam semper alter alterum decæpistis
it-befitted if through this game always one the-other you-deceived

et tabulam, patere, et te nunc decæptum, sicut et
and the-board allow and you now deceived as also
ille multotiens, ut bene scimus, decæptus est. Salamone
he many-times as well we-know deceived was with-Salomon
autem juratores ei præponente, non aliter se, quam ut
moreover oath-takers to-him setting-before not otherwise himself than as
condixerant, egisse, vix tandem alloquio ejus frui valuit.
they-had-agreed to-have-acted scarcely at-last the-address his to-enjoy he-could
Comperto autem, quod major pars adhuc sibi supererat,
with-(it)-found moreover that the-greater part still to-him remained
cum quietior jam aliquid esset, Salamon ait: Fidei violatæ
when calmer now somewhat he-was Salomon says of-faith violated
innoxium vel in hoc, sodes, certus esse poteris, quod
guiltless even in this comrade certain to-be you-will-be-able that
cantharum meum, quem mihi jure assumere possem, pro
tankard my which to-me by-right to-take I-could for
anima tua carissima primo partitus sum. Sed et amplius
soul your dearest first divided I-have but also more
pace tua, sodes amande! loqui liceat. Bene enim et
by-peace your comrade to-be-loved to-speak let-it-be-allowed well for and
optime tecum actum noveris, velim. Elemosinæ enim,
very-well with-you done you-should-know I-would-wish alms for
quæ obitum præcedunt, certiores et Deo sunt, quam quæ
which death precede surer and to-God are than which
sequuntur, cariores. Modo quidem si ætiam ad tuos vivus
follow dearer just-now indeed if also to your-people alive
perveneris, quod nescis, casuque, qui ignotus est,
you-shall-have-come which you-know-not and-by-chance which unknown is
obieris, paucissima de scriniis tuis post te quidem
you-shall-have-died very-few-things from chests your after you indeed
daturi sunt tibi. Tandem in pristinam redeunt condicto
about-to-give are to-you at-last into the-former they-return by-agreement

mutuo sodalitatem, ut ultra neuter alterum nec serio
mutual comradeship that further neither the-other nor in-earnest
deciperet, nec joco. Veniens Hatto Constantiam festiveque
should-deceive nor in-jest coming Hatto to-Constance and-festively
receptus sarcophago Pelagium precaturus appropiat. Miratur
received to-the-sarcophagus Pelagius about-to-pray approaches he-wonders-at
opus tantum tam brevi peractum; miratur et crucem
the-work so-great in-so brief completed he-wonders-at also the-cross
lapidibus christallinis circumclusam. Amplexatus sodalem,
with-stones crystalline enclosed having-embraced (his)-comrade
ut de tanto thesauro suo vel illam sit asportandi
that from so-great treasure his at-least that-one be of-carrying-off
sibi permissio, osculis rogat. Et ille: Si civium, inquit,
to-him the-permission with-kisses he-asks and he if of-the-citizens he-says
sedicionem non vererer, permittere poteram. Dictoque citius
the-sedition not I-feared to-permit I-could and-than-said quicker
ab audientibus urbs undique concluditur. Quærenti, quid id
by the-hearers the-city on-all-sides is-shut to-him-asking what that
utique esset, sua precia, inquiunt cives, in cruce esse quam
surely was their prizes say the-citizens on the-cross to-be as
maxima, nolleque nec episcopo suo jubente sanctæ
greatest and-were-unwilling not-even with-bishop their bidding to-Saint
Mariæ oblata dimittere. Et ille: Quod meum est, inquit,
Mary offered to-let-go and he what mine is he-says
mihi liceat abducere. Illis autem non ad votum sibi
to-me let-it-be-allowed to-lead-away with-them moreover not to wish to-him
respondentibus, Salamon illi silentio: Sine illos, inquit,
answering Salomon to-him in-silence let them he-says
quia aptiori tempore, si ab incepto non desistis, cavea
because at-a-fitter time if from the-undertaking not you-desist in-a-case
inclusam, quocum mihi dixeris, nave terrave eam tibi
enclosed with-whom to-me you-shall-have-said by-ship or-by-land it to-you

mittam. Sedato tandem animo turbam ille dimisit. Dein
I-shall-send with-calmed at-last mind the-crowd he dismissed then
Constantia relicta abiit in sua. Parvo autem post tempore
with-Constance left he-went-away to his-own a-little moreover after time
confectus Italica febre, cruce non exacta, diem obiit,
worn-out by-Italian fever with-the-cross not exacted the-day met
sicque in verba Salamonis tanquam prophetica devenit. Egit
and-so into the-words of-Salomon as-if prophetic came dealt
tamen ille pro anima ejus precibus et opibus, quantumcunque
however he for soul his with-prayers and with-wealth as-much-as
potuit. Scrinia ejus palatio addicta sibi non proderant.
he-could the-chests his to-the-palace assigned to-him not availed
Sapientia autem equivoci sui antiqua Salomon noster amici
by-the-wisdom moreover of-namesake his ancient Salomon our of-friend
sui animam, ut diximus, auro suo, vellet nollet, forte
his the-soul as we-said with-gold his willing unwilling perhaps
redemerat; et, ut vellet, artifex acutus tandem effecerat.
had-redeemed and as he-wished artificer sharp at-last had-brought-about
Patravit quoque multa Salomon studiis suis in honorem
accomplished also many-things Salomon by-efforts his in honor
sanctæ Mariæ, nec non et Galli, unici sui, id est libros,
of-Saint Mary and also and of-Gall only his that is books
vasa, vestes varias, scribere jubens in aliquibus ævo longiore
vessels garments various to-inscribe bidding on some for-age longer
duraturis:
about-to-last

Tertius hæc agiæ Salomon dat dona Mariæ.
The-third these-things to-holy Salomon gives gifts to-Mary
Tertius hæc almo Salomon dat munera Gallo.
The-third these-things to-kindly Salomon gives presents to-Gall

Nec hoc quidem pretereundum, quod aliquando pridie
nor this indeed to-be-passed-over that sometime on-the-day-before
palmarum, id est sabbato, quo papa vacat et elemosinam
of-palms that is on-the-Saturday on-which the-pope is-free and alms
dat, cum primo sole ipse per se omnibus urbis
gives when with-the-first sun he-himself by himself to-all of-the-city
sive regionis dispersisset pauperibus, fatigatus his, ut
or of-the-region had-distributed the-poor wearied with-these as
solebat, in æcclesia orationi prostratus jacebat. Inter orandum
he-was-wont in the-church in-prayer prostrate he-lay among praying
autem vigiliis longis soporatus cum obdormiret, essetque
moreover by-vigils long made-drowsy when he-fell-asleep and-it-was
jam circa horam quidem terciam expergefactus, conclavim
now about the-hour indeed third awakened the-chamber
festinus intraverat, antiphonamque: Pater juste secum silentio
hastening had-entered and-the-antiphon Pater juste with-himself in-silence
cantitans: O, inquid, quali studio et vocibus futuram diem
singing O he-says with-what zeal and voices the-coming day
fratres mei apud sanctum Gallum sunt acturi! Sternatur
brothers my at Saint Gall are about-to-keep let-be-saddled
utique, ait, ambulatrix mea quantocius, quia istam ipse
surely he-says pacing-mare my as-quickly-as-possible because that I-myself
vespere levaturus sum antiphonam. Ascendensque equitem
at-evening about-to-raise am antiphon and-mounting the-horse
illam velocissimam quesitus, quos secum vellet: Utinam,
that swiftest asked whom with-himself he-might-wish would-that
inquit, omnes! Suis autem procuratoribus, ut necessaria
he-says all to-his moreover stewards that necessities
victui, quæque possent, post se transmitterent, edixit.
for-food whatever they-could after him they-should-send-over he-proclaimed
Sicque urbanorum populus plurimus pedibus, navibus, equis
and-so of-the-townsfolk the-people very-many on-feet on-ships on-horses

post illum nocte dieque cucurrerant. At ille spiritu Dei
after him by-night and-by-day had-run but he by-the-spirit of-God
vectus circa nonam aderat cœnobio antiphonamque
borne about the-ninth-hour was-present at-the-monastery and-the-antiphon
præoptatam ipse in ewangelium levavit et clare percantavit.
desired he-himself in the-gospel raised and clearly sang-through
Cœnam fratribus caritativam hilariter exhibuit; quod
a-supper for-the-brothers charitable cheerfully he-showed what
reliquum diei erat, mandato et pauperibus inpendebat.
remaining of-the-day was on-the-mandatum and on-the-poor he-spent
Crastinam autem processionem ad mansionariam suam sanctæ
of-the-morrow moreover the-procession to dwelling his of-the-holy
crucis disponens æcclesiam in proximo prato stationari
cross arranging the-church in the-nearest meadow to-make-a-station
jussit. Ibi de gradibus ligneis Esdras Domini populum
he-bade there from steps wooden an-Ezra of-the-Lord the-people
legem novam edocuit. Et quod Esdrae veteri non licuit,
the-law new taught and what to-Ezra old not was-allowed
indulgentiam dedit. Gradibus descendens omnem plebem,
indulgence he-gave from-the-steps descending all the-folk
quæ aderat, missis persolutis, in pratum ipsum ad panis
which was-present with-masses completed into the-meadow itself to of-bread
rogaverat confractionem. Quid dies illa consumpserit, Dominus
he-had-asked the-breaking what day that consumed the-Lord
solus novit, qui hospes verus in prandio illo collectus est
alone knew who as-guest true at luncheon that gathered was
et cibatus. Ibant refecti singuli in sua gaudentes et
and fed they-went refreshed each to their-own rejoicing and
laudes dantes Deo, grates sancti Galli cœnobio.
praises giving to-God thanks of-Saint Gall to-the-monastery

At vir Domini videns, se ætate jam gravescere, post
but the-man of-the-Lord seeing himself in-age now growing-heavy after
pascha proximum adiit palatium, et omnia loca, quæ
Easter next approached the-palace and all places which
Constantiam sive ad alia monasteria studio proprio vel regum
to-Constance or to other monasteries by-effort own or of-kings
conquisivit munificentia, cartis et sigillis tunc regis
acquired by-munificence with-charters and seals then of-the-king
Chuonradi fecit roborari. Erant autem, quæ sancto
Conrad made to-be-confirmed were moreover which for-the-saint
conquisierat, abbatia Favariensis. Longum dictu, qualibus
he-had-acquired the-abbey of-Pfäfers long to-tell with-what
per illum sancto Gallo quæsita et stabilita sit artibus;
through him to-Saint Gall sought and established it-was arts
cujus quidem fere omnium locorum cartæ, quæ tunc
of-which indeed almost of-all places the-charters which then
ad illam pertinebant, in sancti Galli adhuc hodie servantur
to it belonged in of-Saint Gall still today are-kept
armario. Qualiter autem sancto Gallo ablata sit, loco
the-book-chest how moreover from-Saint Gall taken-away it-was in-place
suo dicere habebimus. Sunt et alia multa, quæ sancto Gallo
its to-tell we-shall-have there-are also other many which for-Saint Gall
conquisierat loca, quæ, quia senes interrogati in armario
he-had-acquired places which because the-old-men asked in the-book-chest
quæri oportere tam plurima dicerent, intacta reliquimus,
to-be-sought to-be-fitting so very-many they-said untouched we-have-left
hoc verissime asserentes, quia præ omnibus, quæ rexit,
this most-truly asserting that before all which he-ruled
monasteriis Gallo suo semper conquisivit. Tradidit autem
monasteries for-Gall his always he-acquired handed-over moreover
Arnoldus quidem rex ei quandam villam in Ararispago,
Arnulf indeed the-king to-him a-certain estate in the-Aargau

Chollinchoven dictam, sibi in possessionem. Quam rogatus
Kölliken called to-himself into possession which asked
ut Constantiæ daret, Gallo suo daturum pollicitus obiens
that to-Constance he-might-give to-Gall his about-to-give promised dying
peregit. Multa sunt ætiam, quæ per concambium
he-accomplished many-things are also which through exchange
ei adquisivit, quæ item in cartis armarii, qui scire
for-him he-acquired which likewise in the-charters of-the-book-chest who to-know
voluerit, legere poterit. Tantis pro donis sit pax animæ
shall-have-wished to-read will-be-able so-great for gifts be peace to-the-soul
Salamonis. Qui et de abbatiis aliquando Augensi et
of-Salomon who also about the-abbeys sometime of-Reichenau and
Sanctigallensi requisitus, si neutram haberet, utram mallet:
of-Saint-Gall asked if neither he-had which he-would-prefer
Augensis quidem est latior et ditior; sancti Galli autem
that-of-Reichenau indeed is broader and richer that-of-Saint Gall moreover
commodior et saturatior est. Commoditas talentum, inquit,
more-convenient and more-sated is convenience a-talent he-says
valet. Hanc quia exquisivi a juventute mea et amator
is-worth this because I-have-sought-out from youth my and lover
factus sum formæ illius, semper præhabui. Hunc ergo
made I-am of-the-beauty of-it always I-preferred this-one therefore
tantum virum dilectum sibi et hominibus cum ad se
so-great a-man beloved to-himself and to-men when to himself
recipere vellet Dominus, nativitatem quidem suam nobiscum
to-receive wished the-Lord the-nativity indeed his with-us
ut sanus ageret et lætissimus, sancto Gallo concessit.
that sound he-might-keep and most-glad to-Saint Gall granted

Capitula 26–29

THE DEATH OF SALOMON

Leaving Saint Gall after Christmas, Salomon lets the schoolboys seize him, as they seize guests, and they ransom themselves with speeches in Latin prose, rhythm, and meter; he endows three days of feasting for them every year. At Constance he falls ill, confesses publicly, gives Kölliken to Saint Gall, and dies on the eve of the Epiphany. He is praised as scribe, painter, poet, and orator, given to vainglory but generous. As a youth he fathered a daughter, who refused King Arnulf's advances and married a nobleman, Notker; her mother became abbess of Zürich.

Cumque quatuor singulis diebus verbo Domini, quo
and-when on-four each days with-the-word of-the-Lord in-which
semper habundaverat, præ omnibus diebus suis abundantius
always he-had-abounded before all days his more-abundantly
populum pasceret, mane post innocentum diem
the-people he-fed in-the-morning after the-Innocents day
Constantiam pergere cum disponeret, fratribus valedictis
to-Constance to-proceed when he-arranged to-the-brothers bidden-farewell
scolas præteriit. Erat autem hic dies scolarium. Hostium
the-schools he-passed was moreover this the-day of-the-scholars the-door
quoque, ut, quomodo se haberent, perspiceret, aperuit et
also that how themselves they-held he-might-see-through he-opened and
intravit. Erat utique jus illorum, sicut adhuc hodie quidem
entered was surely the-right of-them as still today indeed
est, quoniam exleges quidem sunt, ut hospites intrantes
is since outlaws indeed they-are that guests entering
capiant, captos, usque dum se redimant, teneant. Ille vero
they-seize the-seized all-the-way until themselves they-ransom they-hold he but
uti domnus loci securus in medium illorum progressus
as the-lord of-the-place secure into the-middle of-them having-advanced
cum staret: Episcopum, inquiunt inter se, non domnum
when he-stood the-bishop they-say among themselves not the-lord

abbatem capiamus. Ille vero libentissime hoc perpessus,
abbot let-us-seize he but most-willingly this having-suffered
quomodolibet se tractare vellent, consensit. Capientes vero
in-whatever-way him to-treat they-might-wish consented seizing but
illum in magistri posuerunt, vellet nollet, solium. Et ille: Si in
him in of-the-master placed willing unwilling the-throne and he if in
magistri, inquid, solio sedeo, jure ejus uti habeo. Omnes
of-the-master he-said the-throne I-sit the-right his to-use I-have all
exuimini! At illi incunctanter id agentes, liceret sibi,
strip but they without-delay this doing it-might-be-allowed for-them
tandem rogant, ab ipso se, sicut a magistro soliti
at-last they-ask from him themselves as from the-master accustomed
sint, redimere. Cum ille subjunxisset: Quomodo?—, parvuli
they-were to-ransom when he had-added how the-little-ones
Latine pro nosse, medii rithmice, cæteri vero metrice,
in-Latin as they-knew-how the-middle-ones in-rhythm the-rest but in-meter
quasi pro rostris retorice ætiam, illum affantur. Quorum
as-if from the-rostra rhetorically also him address of-whom
duorum quoniam a patribus verba recepimus, unus:
of-two since from the-fathers the-words we-have-received one

Quid, inquit, tibi fecimus tale, ut nobis facias male?
What he-says to-you have-we-done such that to-us you-do badly
Appellamus regem, quia nostram fecimus legem.
We-appeal-to the-king because our we-have-made law

At alter versificator inquit:
but the-other versifier says

Non nobis piæ spes fuerat, cum sis novus hospes,
Not to-us pious hope had-been since you-be a-new guest
ut vetus im pejus transvertere tute velis jus.
that the-old into worse to-turn you-yourself should-wish right

Et ille, cum studiis loco sancti Galli semper inolitis
and he since in-the-studies in-the-place of-Saint Gall always ingrained
jocundaretur, suis temporibus adhuc solide stantibus, omnes
he-delighted in-his times still solidly standing all
ita, ut erant, in lineis exsurgens amplexatus et osculatus:
so as they-were in linens rising embraced and kissed
Induite, inquit; enimvero si vixero, ait, me redimam
put-on he-says indeed if I-shall-have-lived he-says myself I-shall-ransom
et talem indolem remunerabo. Collectisque quantotius ante
and such talent I-shall-reward and-gathered as-quickly-as-possible before
januam scolarum fratrum primis, statuit pueris illis et
the-door of-the-schools of-the-brothers the-first he-established for-the-boys those and
eorum perpetuo posteris pro testamento, singulis annis ludi
their perpetually for-successors for a-testament in-each years of-play
sui tribus ab imperio statutis diebus in eisdem scolarum
their on-three by the-emperor appointed days in the-same of-the-schools
ædibus carnibus vesci et de abbatis curte singulos tribus
buildings on-meats to-feed and from of-the-abbot the-court each with-three
donari æscis cottidie et potibus. Quod cum ipse
to-be-presented foods daily and drinks which when he-himself
quidem annuatim præsens solvi juberet, postea ita solutum
indeed yearly present to-be-paid ordered afterward so paid
est usque ad Ungrorum, de quibus loco suo dicturi
it-was all-the-way to of-the-Hungarians about whom in-place its about-to-tell

sumus, invasiones. Abiit tandem, quo disposuit, benedictis
we-are the-invasions he-went-away at-last where he-arranged with-blessed
nostratibus et ultime, pro dolor!, valefactis.
our-people and for-the-last-time oh grief farewells-said
Peractis ergo missis Constantiæ in octava nativitatis Domini
with-completed therefore the-masses at-Constance on the-octave of-the-nativity of-the-Lord
die secretario residens capitis dolorem querebatur. Pauperibus
day in-the-sacristy sitting of-the-head a-pain he-complained-of with-the-poor
ergo, ut solebat, ante prandium suum hilariter consolatis,
therefore as he-was-wont before luncheon his cheerfully consoled
mensam cum fratribus et civibus tenens largissimam dolorem
the-table with the-brothers and citizens holding most-lavish the-pain
continenter tulit sicque diem ipsam in gaudiis peregit. Sole
steadily he-bore and-so the-day itself in joys he-spent with-the-sun
autem sequente cum languor ingravesceret, missis circumquaque
moreover following when the-languor grew-heavy with-sent all-around
apparitoribus, presbyteros, monachos et canonicos collegit, quo
attendants priests monks and canons he-gathered as
citius potuit, precipue autem nostrates. In octava igitur sancti
quickly-as he-could especially moreover our-people on the-octave therefore of-Saint
Johannis missas sustentatus agens ab omnibus indulgentiam
John masses supported performing from all pardon
publice confessus petiit et dedit. Postea vero loca quedam
publicly having-confessed he-sought and gave afterward but places certain
nondum data sanctæ Mariæ et Pelagio, Gallo autem suo et
not-yet given to-Saint Mary and to-Pelagius to-Gall moreover his and
Otmaro villam Chollinchovin super tabulam lecti solito
to-Othmar the-estate Kölliken upon the-board of-the-bed by-the-wonted
jure canonum pro animæ requie disponens dedit, multum
right of-the-canons for of-the-soul the-rest disposing he-gave much
rogans nostrates, quatinus ædclesiam ab eo in loco sancti
asking our-people so-that the-church by him in the-place of-Saint

Galli in honore sanctæ crucis sanctique Magni constructam et
Gall in honor of-the-holy cross and-of-Saint Magnus built and
sub regiæ auctoritatis privilegiis dotatam tuerentur ibique
under of-royal authority privileges endowed they-might-protect and-there
servitium canonicorum minui non paterentur. In vigilia
the-service of-the-canons to-be-diminished not they-should-allow on the-vigil
dein Theophaniæ confidentissimus in Domino diem obiit.
then of-the-Theophany most-trusting in the-Lord the-day he-met
In æcclesia sedis suæ ad parietem dexterum multis suorum
in the-church of-see his by the-wall right with-many of-his-people
lacrimis fletus sepultus est. In cruce quæsitam pretioso
tears wept-for buried was on the-cross sought with-precious
sanguine vitam des cui, Christe!, locis in paradysiacis.
blood life may-you-give to-whom Christ places in paradisal
Raro autem deinceps homo videndus est, in quem largitor
rarely moreover henceforth a-man to-be-seen is on whom the-giver
omnium bonorum tantum suorum congerat donorum. Erat
of-all goods so-much of-his heap-up gifts was
enim homo præter decore faciei dotem et stature procere
for a-man besides the-grace of-face the-dowry and of-stature tall
doctus et disciplinatissimus, scribendi lingua manuque
learned and most-disciplined of-writing in-tongue and-hand
artifex, lineandi et capitulares literas rite creandi præ
an-artificer of-drawing and capital letters duly of-creating before
omnibus gnarus — ut in apicibus L et C longi
all skilled as in the-points L and C of-the-long
ewangelii primis videre est, quas episcopus, ut ajunt,
gospel-book the-first to-see it-is which the-bishop as they-say
probans, quid in talibus adhuc posset, lineans aurificabat—,
testing what in such-things still he-could drawing gilded
metro primus et coram regibus plerumque pro ludicro
in-meter first and before kings mostly for jest

cum aliis certator; dicendi, præter quod naturalis ei
with others a-competitor of-speaking besides that natural to-him
commoditas inerat, artifex erat, in palatinis et sinodicis
a-facility was-in an-artificer he-was in palatine and synodal
eque valens conciliis, in eo loco, quo apostolus prophetas
equally strong councils in that place in-which the-apostle the-prophets
ponit, nemo nobilior illo, adeo ut raro in gradibus
puts no-one nobler than-he so-much that rarely on the-steps
stans orator ille vehemens auditoribus promptis lacrimas
standing orator that vehement from-hearers ready tears
non eliceret. Favoribus quia aures interdum adhibere
not he-drew-forth to-favors because the-ears sometimes to-apply
solebat, se ipsum arguebat, hoc malum, inquiens, esse,
he-was-wont him himself he-accused this an-evil saying to-be
quod et justi et optimi vix vitare valeant: Quis
which even the-just and the-best scarcely to-avoid can who
enim tam sanctissimus, ait, qui non dicta et facta
for so most-holy he-says who not the-words and deeds
sua recipi malit, quam abici? Ilicoque adest
his to-be-received would-prefer than to-be-cast-away and-at-once is-present
pestis illa, quæ Grece dicitur cenodoxia, aurium inflatio
plague that which in-Greek is-called cenodoxia of-the-ears an-inflation
magna. Post elemosinarum cottidianas et pedum lavacri
great after of-alms the-daily and of-feet of-washing
exhibitiones commessator pro tempore, loco et personis
showings a-reveler for the-time the-place and the-persons
hilaris erat et jocundus, prodigus nunquam, Mariæ et
cheerful he-was and pleasant prodigal never of-Mary and
Pelagii et Galli sui et Otmari, ut dicere solebat, singularis
of-Pelagius and of-Gall his and of-Othmar as to-say he-was-wont a-singular

dilector, in quorum etiam, ut ajebant, nominibus deficiens
lover in whose also as they-said names failing
exspiravit.
he-expired
In calce tandem opusculi et reticenda hominis
at the-heel at-last of-the-little-work also things-to-be-kept-silent of-the-man
tangere indecorum non puto. Adolescens quidem et adhuc
to-touch unbecoming not I-think a-youth indeed and still
scolaris gratia amicos visendi hospitio cujusdam nobilis
a-scholar for-the-sake friends of-visiting at-the-lodging of-a-certain noble
viri receptus privignam ejus virginem latenter agnovit,
man received the-stepdaughter his a-virgin secretly knew
de qua semel tantum, ut ajunt, cognita filiam habuit.
of whom once only as they-say known a-daughter he-had
Quem lapsum pœnitentia multa secuta est amborum. Velum
which lapse penance much followed has of-both the-veil
sacrum utique ipsa Turegi sibi imponi expetens vitam
sacred indeed she-herself at-Zürich on-herself to-be-placed seeking a-life
agebat laudabilem. Ad ultimum abbatissa inibi ejus juvamine
led praiseworthy at the-last abbess there by-his help
facta multa fecit pro anima utique ipsius et sua.
made many-things did for the-soul surely his and her-own
Filiam vero tandem viro maturam, cum oblatum sibi
the-daughter but at-last for-a-husband ripe when the-offered to-her
velum recusaret, dotatam cum prædiis viro tradidit
veil she-refused endowed with estates to-a-husband he-handed-over
cuidam Notkero de prosapia Waltrammi et Notkeri,
to-a-certain Notker from the-lineage of-Waltram and of-Notker
de quorum dominio montes nostri nomina habent. Ejus
from whose lordship mountains our names have of-that
quidem feminæ generis viros fortes et bonos, clericos
indeed of-woman of-the-race men brave and good clerics

præclaros virtutumque conspeximus monachos. Enimvero
illustrious and-of-virtues we-have-beheld monks indeed
ipsa dum Turegi apud matrem educata aliquantisper etiam
she while at-Zürich with (her)-mother brought-up for-a-while also
literata in ætate puellari videretur quidem pulchra, ad
lettered in age girlish she-seemed indeed beautiful for
amplexus Arnolfi regis clam dum peteretur, respondisse
the-embraces of-Arnulf the-king secretly when she-was-sought to-have-answered
fertur lenoniæ procis: Ejus generis prosapiæ nec
is-said of-procuring to-the-suitors of-that kind of-lineage neither
de matre, nec de patre sum, inquid, ut virginitatem
from mother nor from father I-am she-said that virginity
meam me cuidam, vel ipsi regi quidem, deceat
my myself to-a-certain-one or himself to-the-king indeed it-should-befit
prostituere. Sicque amplexus illicitos regis hac et illac
to-prostitute and-so the-embraces illicit of-the-king here and there
fugitans et latitans, usque dum prædicto viro nuberet,
fleeing and lying-hid all-the-way until to-the-aforesaid man she-married
frustraverat.
she-had-frustrated
Claruerat autem Salomon sub quinque regibus æque
had-been-famous moreover Salomon under five kings equally
sibi amicis: Luduwico, Karolo, Arnolfo, item Luduwico,
to-him friendly Louis Charles Arnulf likewise Louis
Chuonrado.
Conrad

Capitula 30–32

ISO THE MASTER

Iso's parents, keeping Lent in penance, lie together on Holy Saturday; they confess before all the city, and the priest of the next village rebukes them, yet on Easter morning a priest seeming to be he gives them communion, though he never left his own people that day: it was an angel, as the synod made public. His mother dreams she bears a hedgehog whose spines boys pluck, and the recluse Eusebius foretells a son who will be a stern master. Iso, a monk of Saint Gall, is lent to King Rudolf of Burgundy for Grandval, heals a blind boy with his ointment, draws scholars from all Burgundy and Gaul, and dies there; his body, buried in Saint Germanus's church, is said to have been stolen.

Hinc de Hisone magistro et discipulis ejus, Nokero
hence about Iso the-master and the-disciples his Notker
Balbulo, Tuotilone, Ratperto, vitas, ut ita dicam, non
the-Stammerer Tuotilo Ratpert the-lives as so I-may-say not
negligendas aggrediar scribendas.
to-be-neglected I-shall-undertake to-be-written
Iso quidem non solum bene natorum, sed et sanctorum
Iso indeed not only of-well born but also of-holy
filius fuit parentum. Qui, ut crebro solebant, victualium
the-son was parents who as often they-were-wont of-victuals
aliarumque rerum abstinentia semet ex consensu pro Deo
and-of-other things by-abstinence themselves by consent for God
affligere, quadragesimam quandam secreti cubantes, sabbato
to-afflict for-a-Lent certain apart lying on-the-Saturday
sancto lavacro tandem utebantur. Ornanturque ambo post
holy the-bath at-last used and-are-adorned both after
cineres et cilicia ad processionem cum civibus, prout bene
the-ashes and haircloths for the-procession with the-citizens as for-the-well
natis copia erat. Ibat mulier vigiliis convicta dormitum
born the-means was went the-woman by-vigils overcome to-sleep

in lectum nobilius quidem tunc pro tempore stratum post
into the-bed more-nobly indeed then for the-time spread after
lavacrum. Temptatoris ductu vir ejus in conclave
the-bath of-the-tempter by-the-leading the-husband her into the-chamber
ipsum fortuiter intraverat accedensque ad illam, ipsa quidem
itself by-chance had-entered and-approaching to her she indeed
non recusante, eo sancto die concubuit. Fit post facinus
not refusing on-that holy day lay-with-her there-is after the-crime
patratum tantum amborum in ipso conclavi lamentum, ut
committed so-great of-both in that-very chamber a-lamentation that
familia superveniens, quid factum sit, non quereret, cum
the-household coming-up what done had-been not asked since
Deum inclamando, quid fecerint, ipsi palam fecerint.
God by-calling-on what they-had-done they-themselves openly made
Inter lacrimas ambo iterum abeunt lavatum; induuntur item
among tears both again go-away to-wash they-are-clothed likewise
ciliciis post tot ebdomadas tritis, cineribusque aspersi
in-haircloths after so-many weeks worn and-with-ashes sprinkled
presbyteri loci nudipedes coram omnibus civibus vestigiis
of-the-priest of-the-place barefoot before all the-citizens at-the-feet
procidunt. Ille vero pie discretus pœnitentia eorum accepta,
they-fall he but piously discerning with-penance their accepted
populo Deum pro eis inclamante, indulgentiam eis dedit
with-the-people God for them calling-on pardon to-them gave
allevatosque pro foribus basilicæ eo die et nocte punitionis
and-raised before the-doors of-the-basilica that day and night of-punishment
gratia incommunicatos jusserat stare. Ibant tandem
for-the-sake excommunicated he-had-bidden to-stand they-went at-last
officio diei peracto ad proximæ villæ presbyterum fama
with-the-office of-the-day completed to of-the-next village the-priest by-fame
quidem sanctum, et eodem habitu ipsi et civibus
indeed holy and in-the-same habit to-him and to-the-citizens

ejus lapsum suum fletibus nudant, et ut crastina eis
his lapse their with-weeping they-lay-bare and that tomorrow to-them
communicare liceat, permissum ejus rogant. Quos ille severe
to-communicate it-be-allowed the-permission his they-ask whom he severely
invectus temeritatis arguebat; benedictione tamen illius
having-inveighed of-rashness accused with-blessing however of-him
accepta, redeuntes in sua jejuni vigilem flentes duxerant
received returning to their-own fasting a-wakeful weeping they-had-led
noctem. Dies paschæ illuxerat; matutini pro foribus
night the-day of-Easter had-dawned in-the-morning before the-doors
stabant. Cruce ante missas exportata, extremi sequuntur.
they-stood with-the-cross before the-masses carried-out last they-follow
Presbiter autem illos populi totius adnisu inter Kirieleison
the-priest moreover them of-the-people whole by-the-effort amid the-Kyrie-eleison
induxerat, extremos locaverat. Communionem, quia presbitero
had-led-in last had-placed communion because to-the-priest
illi jam dicto non placeret, non petebant. Communione
that already mentioned not it-pleased not they-sought with-communion
autem finita, quasi presbiter ille festinus tanquam populo
moreover finished as-if priest that hastening as-if for-people
suo adhuc officium facturus ingreditur, manibus apprehensos
his still the-office about-to-do enters by-the-hands seized
ad aram duxit. Pixide communionis aperta, fletu
to the-altar led with-the-pyx of-communion opened with-weeping
perfusos communicavit et festinans quasi ad suos rediturus,
drenched he-communicated and hastening as-if to his-own about-to-return
revestiri eos et epulari pace et osculis datis edixit,
to-be-reclothed them and to-feast with-peace and kisses given he-proclaimed
et rediit. Lætati quoque sunt omnes, talis viri auctoritate
and returned rejoiced also were all by-such of-a-man the-authority
illos communicatos. Diem tandem in læticia et elemosinis
them communicated the-day at-last in gladness and alms

agentibus partesque presbitero illi sancto et eulogia per
with-them-spending and-portions to-the-priest that holy and blessed-bread by
equitem mittentibus, inventum est, eum nusquam eo die
a-horseman sending found it-was him nowhere on-that day
a suis discessisse, sed angelum Dei, quod factum est,
from his-people to-have-departed but an-angel of-God which done it-was
ætiam in synodo propalatum est, totum fecisse. Agebant
also in the-synod made-public was all to-have-done gave
ambo illi gratias deinde die et nocte Deo, et virtutum
both those thanks thereafter by-day and by-night to-God and of-the-virtues
operibus, quibus assueverant, tunc artius insistebant.
on-the-works to-which they-had-been-accustomed then more-closely they-pressed
Sed mulier illa concubitu illo cum esset gravida et
but woman that from-lying-together that when she-was pregnant and
tempore labente propinqua jam partui, eritium peperisse
with-time slipping near now to-the-birth a-hedgehog to-have-borne
somniaverat, puerulosque plures, ut stimulos ei eruerent,
dreamed and-little-boys several that the-spines from-it they-might-pluck
accurrisse, et parietes eis caraxasse viderat. Evigilans
to-have-run-up and the-walls with-them to-have-scratched she-had-seen waking
nimis stupida somnium viro narrat. Qui in Deo
very astonished the-dream to-(her)-husband tells who in God
confisus, somnium illud nihil mali portendere, ad inclusum
trusting dream that nothing of-evil to-portend to the-recluse
in Monte Victoris, Eusebium, pergens, conjectorem ejus
on the-Mount of-Victor Eusebius going interpreter its
fore rogavit. Filium, inquit, uxor tua pariet, quem sancto
to-be asked a-son he-says wife your will-bear whom to-Saint
Gallo votabis. Apud illum enim educatus, doctor erit
Gall you-shall-vow with him for brought-up a-teacher he-will-be
magnificus et multos pueros, ipse asper disciplinis,
magnificent and many boys he-himself harsh with-disciplines

stilis armaturus. Factum est, ut vir ille, spiritu
with-styluses about-to-arm done it-was as man that with-the-spirit
Dei plenus sanctique Galli conpatrianus, prædixerat. Per
of-God full and-of-Saint Gall fellow-countryman had-foretold through
cujus, præter hæc, præsagia Dominus multis revelaverat
whose besides these presages the-Lord to-many had-revealed
multa, sed et ipsi Karolo quidem, qui ejus peticione,
many-things but also himself to-Charles indeed who at-his petition
ut et Rapertus scribit, ipsum illum Victoris Montem sancto
as also Ratpert writes that very of-Victor Mount to-Saint
Gallo contradidit. Puer natus, educatus, sancti Galli fit
Gall handed-over the-boy born brought-up of-Saint Gall becomes
monachus doctissimus, docuitque, ut in gestis ejus jam
a-monk most-learned and-taught as in the-deeds his already
scripsimus, Salomonem cum cæteris quam plurimis. Sed
we-have-written Salomon with others as very-many but
Hartmuotus noster, Ruodolfo, Burgundionum regi, notissimus,
Hartmut our to-Rudolf of-the-Burgundians king most-known
qui et cognatus, cum magistrum aliquem nostratium
who also kinsman when a-master some of-our-people
Grandivallensium cœnobio peteret, ipsum illum regi
of-the-Grandval-monks for-the-monastery he-sought him that-very for-the-king
ad annos tres a Crimaldo expetiit, condicto in manus
for years three from Grimald requested with-agreed into hands
pacto, uti ter in anno sumptibus sibi regis
the-condition that three-times in the-year at-the-expenses for-him of-the-king
monasterii sui daretur invisere claustrum. Ibi vas illud
of-the-monastery his it-be-given to-visit the-cloister there vessel that
spiritus sancti cum devenisset provinciis diffamatum
of-the-spirit holy when he-had-come through-the-provinces made-famous
et regnis, sancti Galli dulcissima suffecerat pocula.
and through-the-kingdoms of-Saint Gall the-sweetest had-supplied cups

Fulsit autem ibi sancti Galli lucerna illa interdum quidem
shone moreover there of-Saint Gall lamp that sometimes indeed
per miracula. Nam, uti plurima doctus, cum unguenta
through miracles for as very-many-things learned since ointments
quidem facere nosset, leprosos et paraliticos, sed et
indeed to-make he-knew lepers and paralytics but also
cecos curaverat aliquos. Quod quidem, dum id diu
blind-men he-had-cured some which indeed while it for-long
celasset, virtute sanctitatis suæ magis fecisse, vellet
he-had-concealed by-the-virtue of-holiness his more to-have-done willing
nollet, tandem patuit. Nam dum pauperculum quendam
unwilling at-last it-lay-open for while a-poor-little certain
ceculum mendicare audisset ad hostium, misericordia
little-blind-one to-beg he-had-heard at the-door with-pity
tantilluli motus, unguentum afferri jubens egreditur
of-so-small-a-one moved ointment to-be-brought bidding he-goes-out
ad videndum. Cujus cum digitis benedicens tractaret
to see whose when with-fingers blessing he-handled
oculos unguentoque linire incipiret, exclamavit puer: Video,
the-eyes and-with-ointment to-anoint began cried-out the-boy I-see
inquit, domine, video. Et per aliquot dies convalescens
he-says lord I-see and over some days recovering
oculis tandem quidem clarissime vidit. Quod tamen
in-the-eyes at-last indeed most-clearly he-saw which however
ille, ut cælatum esset, unguenti pretiosissimi, quod
he that concealed it-might-be of-the-ointment most-precious which
manu ferret, factum affirmans virtute non mentitus
in-hand he-bore done affirming by-the-virtue not lied
est.
has

Talibus vir Dei cum dominum suum, sanctum Gallum,
with-such the-man of-God when lord his Saint Gall
ubicunque esset, ornasset virtutibus, stimulos suos pluribus
wherever he-was had-adorned with-virtues spines his for-many
scolaribus acuebat, cum ipse tantis virtutibus pollens
scholars he-sharpened since he-himself with-so-great virtues strong
vellet tamen esse involutus, ut eritius. Anhelabant ad illius
wished however to-be wrapped-up like a-hedgehog panted for of-him
doctrinam totius Burgundiæ, necnon et Galliæ ingenia.
the-teaching of-all Burgundy and-also also of-Gaul the-talents
Erant et aliqui, qui inter suos satis haberent, si discipuli
there-were also some who among their-own enough would-have if disciples
Hisonis vel ad horam dicerentur, etiamsi ad stilos ejus non
of-Iso even for an-hour they-were-called even-if to the-styluses his not
acuerentur. Erat enim de illo late fama, quoniam, et si
they-were-sharpened was for about him widely the-fame since also if
obtusa inveniret ingenia, ipse eis daret acumina. Libuit
dull he-found talents he-himself to-them gave sharpness it-pleased
tandem et ipsum, vel propter gratas consuetudines
at-last also him-himself either on-account-of the-pleasing habits
discipulorum, vel propter mnam dandam ad mensam, ut
of-the-disciples or on-account-of the-mina to-be-given at the-table that
post tres annos regi concessos aliorum annorum moras
after three years to-the-king granted of-other years delays
sibimet ab abbate suo per se ipsum expeteret. Mansit
for-himself from abbot his through himself in-person he-should-seek he-remained
itaque in benigna peregrinatione sua per plures tandem
and-so in kindly sojourn his through several at-last
annos, ratisque sibi temporibus claustrum suum, abbatem
years and-at-fixed for-himself times cloister his the-abbot
et fratres visitans benedictione illorum roboratus discipulos
and the-brothers visiting by-the-blessing of-them strengthened the-disciples

iterum egre exspectatus revisit. Disponente vero tandem eo,
again hardly awaited revisited with-disposing but at-last him
qui posuit terminos, qui præterire non poterunt, morbo
who set bounds which to-pass-over not they-will-be-able by-sickness
correptus, plurimis hinc inde dolentibus, bene validæ
seized with-very-many here and-there grieving of-well strong
adhuc ætatis diem obiit multum dolens, quod claustro
still age the-day he-met much grieving that from-cloister
suo procul sit et in cymiterio sancti Galli sepeliri non
his far he-was and in the-cemetery of-Saint Gall to-be-buried not
licuit. Collectis autem undequaque discipulis ejus, sepultus
it-was-allowed with-gathered moreover from-everywhere the-disciples his buried
est in æcclesia sancti Germani. Ubi cum tandem coruscaret
he-was in the-church of-Saint Germanus where when at-last it-shone
miraculis, corpus ejus furto, ut ajunt, in Burgundiam
with-miracles the-body his by-theft as they-say into Burgundy
in quandam hominis potentis translatum est æcclesiam.
into a-certain of-a-man powerful carried was church
Quod etsi dubie roboretur, præterire tamen noluimus.
which although doubtfully it-be-confirmed to-pass-over however we-were-unwilling
Constat autem, id in tumulo, quo conditum est, non
it-is-agreed moreover it in the-tomb in-which buried it-was not
haberi.
to-be-held

Capitula 33–36

NOTKER, TUOTILO, AND RATPERT

Iso's three pupils, taught by Marcellus in the liberal arts and above all in music, are one heart and three natures: Notker frail, stammering, and mild; Tuotilo strong, eloquent, a painter, carver, and musician; Ratpert a stern master of the schools who rarely leaves the cloister. The refectorer Sindolf, made dean of the workmen by Salomon, slanders them to the bishop. When he eavesdrops at the scriptorium window by night, Tuotilo seizes him by the hair through the glass and Ratpert flogs him, while Tuotilo shouts that he has caught the devil.

De Notkero, Ratperto, Tuotilone, discipulis ejus et Marcelli,
about Notker Ratpert Tuotilo disciples his and of-Marcellus
quoniam quidem cor et anima una erant, mixtim,
since indeed heart and soul one they-were mixedly
qualia tres unus fecerint, quantum a patribus
what-sort-of-things the-three as-one did as-much-as from the-fathers
audivimus, narrare incipimus. Hi quidem ab Hisone cum in
we-have-heard to-relate we-begin these indeed by Iso when in
divinis non mediocriter essent prælibati, Marcello, ut jam
divine-things not moderately they-were foretaught to-Marcellus as already
diximus, sunt conjuncti. Qui, in divinis eque potens et
we-said they-were joined who in divine-things equally strong and
humanis, septem liberales eos duxit ad artes, maxime autem
in-human the-seven liberal them led to arts most moreover
ad musicam. Quæ cum ceteris naturalior et, quamvis
to music which since than-the-others more-natural and although
difficilius apprehensa, usu quidem sit jucundior, tantum
with-more-difficulty grasped by-use indeed be more-pleasant so-much
in ea tandem valuerant, quantum in operibus singulorum,
in it at-last they-had-prevailed as-much-as in the-works of-each
quæ jam ante quiddam tetigimus, apparet. Enimvero hi
which already before somewhat we-touched appears indeed these

tres, quamvis votis essent unicordes, natura tamen, ut fit,
three although in-wishes they-were of-one-heart by-nature however as happens
erant dissimiles. Noker corpore non animo gracilis, voce
were unlike Notker in-body not in-mind slender in-voice
non spiritu balbulus, in divinis erectus, in adversis patiens,
not in-spirit stammering in divine-things upright in adversities patient
ad omnia mitis, in nostratium acer erat exactor disciplinis,
toward all-things mild in of-our-people keen he-was an-exacter disciplines
ad repentina timidulus et inopinata, præter demones
toward sudden-things somewhat-timid and unexpected-things except the-demons
infestantes, erat, quibus quidem se audenter opponere
assailing he-was to-whom indeed himself boldly to-oppose
solebat, in orando, legendo, dictando creberrimus, et, ut
he-was-wont in praying reading composing most-frequent and that
omnis sanctitatis ejus in brevi conplectar dotes, sancti spiritus
all of-holiness his in brief I-may-embrace the-gifts of-the-holy spirit
erat vasculum, quo suo tempore habundantius nullum.
he-was a-little-vessel than-which in-its time more-abundant none
At Tuotilo longe aliter bonus erat et utilis, homo lacertis
but Tuotilo far otherwise good was and useful a-man in-arms
et omnibus menbris, sicut Fávius athletas eligere docet.
and all limbs as Fabius athletes to-choose teaches
Erat eloquens, voce clarus, celaturæ elegans et picturæ
he-was eloquent in-voice clear in-carving elegant and of-painting
artifex, musicus, sicut et sotii ejus, sed in omnium
an-artificer a-musician as also the-companions his but in of-all
genere fidium et fistularum præ omnibus; nam et filios
the-kind of-strings and of-pipes before all for also the-sons
nobilium in loco ab abbate destinato fidibus edocuit.
of-the-nobles in the-place by the-abbot appointed on-strings he-taught
Nuntius procul et prope sollers, in structuris et ceteris
a-messenger far and near skillful in buildings and in-other

artibus suis efficax, concinnandi in utraque lingua potens et
arts his effective of-composing in each tongue powerful and
promtus natura, serio et joco festivus, adeo ut Karolus
ready by-nature in-earnest and in-jest festive so-much that Charles
noster aliquando ei maledixerit, qui talis naturæ hominem
our sometime him cursed who of-such nature a-man
monachum fecerit. Sed inter hæc omnia, quod præ aliis
a-monk had-made but among these all what before the-others
est, in choro strenuus, in latebris erat lacrimosus, versus
is in choir vigorous in hiding-places he-was tearful verses
et melodias facere præpotens, castus, ut Marcelli discipulus,
and melodies to-make very-powerful chaste as of-Marcellus a-disciple
qui feminis oculos clausit. — Ratpertus autem inter ambos,
who to-women (his)-eyes closed Ratpert moreover between both
quos diximus, medius incedebat, scolarum ab adolescentia
whom we-mentioned in-the-middle walked of-the-schools from youth
magister, doctor planus et benevolus, disciplinis asperior, raro
master a-teacher plain and kindly in-disciplines harsher rarely
præter fratres pedem claustro promovens, duos calceos
beyond the-brothers (his)-foot from-the-cloister moving-forward two shoes
annum habens, excursus mortem nominans, sepe Tuotilonem
a-year having excursions death naming often Tuotilo
itinerarium, ut se caveret, amplexibus monens. In
the-traveler that himself he-should-guard from-embraces warning in
scolis sedulus plerumque cursus et missas negligebat:
the-schools diligent mostly the-courses and the-masses he-neglected
Bonas, inquiens, missas audimus, cum eas agi docemus.
good saying masses we-hear when them to-be-done we-teach
Qui cum labem maximam claustri impunitatem nominasset,
who when the-stain greatest of-the-cloister impunity he-had-named

ad capitulum tamen nonnisi vocatus venit, cum sibi officium
to the-chapter however not-except called he-came since to-him the-office
capitulandi et puniendi gravissimum, ut ait, sit traditum.
of-holding-chapter and of-punishing most-heavy as he-said be handed-over
Tales cum essent tres isti nostræ rei publicæ senatores,
such when they-were three these of-our of-the-common weal senators
quod semper doctorum est et utilium, ab otio vacantibus
what always of-the-learned is and of-the-useful from at-leisure free-ones
et in levitate ambulantibus detractiones et dorsiloquia
and in levity walking detractions and back-talk
patiuntur assidua, sed maxime, quia minus refellere solebat,
they-suffer constant but most because less to-rebut was-wont
sanctus, ut vere asseram, domnus Nothkerus. Tuotilo quidem
holy that truly I-may-assert lord Notker Tuotilo indeed
et Rapertus acriores talibus minusque ad contumelias
and Ratpert sharper to-such-ones and-less to insults
habiles rarius ab eis ledebantur. Notkerus autem, hominum
handy more-rarely by them were-hurt Notker moreover of-men
mitissimus, quid injurie essent, in semet ipso didicit. De
the-mildest what injuries were in him himself learned about
quibus pluribus unum aliquem, ut, quantum satanas in talibus
whom many one some that how-much Satan in such-things
præsumat, ab uno discas omnes, introducere volumus. Erat
may-presume from one you-may-learn all to-introduce we-wish was
hic quidem refectorarius, nomine Sindolfus, postremo autem
here indeed a-refectorer by-name Sindolf at-last moreover
fictis obsequelis, cum alias in nullo esset utilis, accusans
by-feigned services since otherwise in nothing he-was useful accusing
fratres criminibus conjectis, a Salomone operariorum positus
the-brothers with-charges invented by Salomon of-the-workmen set
est decanus. Enimvero cum esset refectorarius, pro commodis
was dean indeed when he-was refectorer for comforts

incommoda, quibus ausus erat, exhibebat, præ ceteris autem
discomforts to-whom dared he-had he-showed before the-rest moreover
Notkero. Salomone autem in plurimis occupato nec
to-Notker with-Salomon moreover in very-many-things occupied nor
adtendere ad singula sufficienti, alimonia interdum fratribus
to-attend to each-thing sufficing the-food sometimes from-the-brothers
cum aut detraheretur, aut depravaretur, clamabant plures pro
when either was-taken-away or was-spoiled cried-out many for
injusticia, inter quos aliquando ætiam tres, quos dicimus, isti
the-injustice among whom sometime also three whom we-mention these
aliqua locuti parebant. At Sindolfus discordiæ semper
some-things having-spoken appeared but Sindolf of-discord always
fomes, sciens antiquam condiscipulorum odii facem et
the-tinder knowing the-ancient of-the-fellow-pupils of-hatred torch and
causam, accommodat se auribus Salomonis, quasi pro suo
cause fits himself to-the-ears of-Salomon as-if for his
honore rem sibi sit dicturus. Ille vero etsi nihil
honor a-thing to-him he-were about-to-tell he but although nothing
nocivius scisset prælatis a subditis quam susurros audire,
more-harmful he-knew for-prelates from subjects than whispers to-hear
quod novi afferret, quesivit. Ille vero tres illos semper super
what of-new he-brought asked he but three those always against
se verba jacere solitos hesterno, quæ Deo importabilia
him words to-throw accustomed yesterday things-which to-God unbearable
sint, mentitur locutos. Credidit ille sermoni et nihil mali
be lies having-spoken believed he the-speech and nothing of-evil
opinantibus rancorem portavit, tandem et ostendit. At illi
to-those-suspecting a-grudge bore at-last also showed but they
cum nihil ab eo reatus sui exsculpere possent, Sindolfi
when nothing from him of-guilt their to-chisel-out they-could of-Sindolf
se tegnis ariolantur fuisse circumventos. Re
themselves by-the-tricks they-guess to-have-been circumvented with-the-matter

tandem coram fratribus discussa, cum ipsi testantibus cunctis,
at-last before the-brothers discussed when they with-witnessing all
nihil omnino se contra episcopum dixisse, cum ceteris
nothing at-all themselves against the-bishop to-have-said with the-rest
eum vincerent, vindictam super falsidicum quisque sibi
him convinced vengeance upon the-false-speaker each for-himself
rogant. Quod ille cum dissimulasset, taciti quieverant.
they-ask which he when he-had-dissembled silent they-had-rested
Erat tribus illis inseparabilibus consuetudo, permisso
there-was for-the-three those inseparable a-custom with-permission
quidem prioris, in intervallo laudum nocturno convenire in
indeed of-the-prior in the-interval of-the-lauds nocturnal to-meet in
scriptorio collationesque tali horæ aptissimas de scripturis
the-scriptorium and-conferences at-such an-hour most-fitting about the-scriptures
facere. At Sindolfus sciens horam et colloquia quadam nocte
to-make but Sindolf knowing the-hour and the-talks on-a-certain night
fenestræ vitreæ, cui Tuotilo assederat, clandestinus foris
to-the-window glass at-which Tuotilo had-sat secretly outside
appropiat aureque vitro affixa, si quid rapere posset, quod
approaches and-with-ear to-the-glass fixed if anything to-snatch he-could which
depravatum episcopo traderet, auscultabat. Senserat illum
distorted to-the-bishop he-might-hand-over was-listening had-perceived him
Tuotilo, homo pervicax lacertisque confisus, Latialiterque,
Tuotilo a-man stubborn and-in-(his)-arms trusting and-in-Latin
quo illum, qui nihil intellegeret, lateret, compares
so-that him who nothing understood it-might-escape (his)-fellows
alloquitur: Adest ille, inquit, et aurem fenestræ affixit.
addresses is-here he he-says and (his)-ear to-the-window has-fixed
Sed tu, Notker, quia timidulus es, cede in æcclesiam;
but you Notker because somewhat-timid you-are go into the-church
Ratperte autem mi, rapto flagello fratrum, quod pendet
Ratpert moreover my with-snatched the-scourge of-the-brothers which hangs

in pyrali, deforis accurre! Ego enim illum, cum
in the-warming-room outside run-up I for him when
appropinquare te sensero, vitreo citissime redaperto
to-approach you I-shall-have-perceived with-the-glass most-quickly reopened
captum capillis ad meque pertractum violenter tenebo. Tu
seized by-the-hair to and-me drawn violently shall-hold you
autem, anime mi, confortare et esto robustus, flagelloque
moreover soul my be-strengthened and be robust and-with-the-scourge
illum totis viribus increpita et Deum in illo ulciscere! Ille
him with-all strength chide and God on him avenge he
vero, sicut semper erat ad disciplinas acutissimus, modeste
but as always he-was for disciplines most-keen modestly
exiens rapto flagello cucurrit celerrimus hominemque
going-out with-snatched scourge ran most-swiftly and-the-man
intro capite tractum totis viribus a dorso ingrandinat.
inside by-the-head drawn with-all strength on the-back hails
Et ecce ille manibus pedibusque renisus flagellum incussum
and lo he with-hands and-feet resisting the-scourge struck
capiens tenuit; at ille virgam propius aspectam rapiens ictus
catching held but he the-rod nearer seen snatching blows
ei validissimos infregit. Cum autem parci sibi male
on-him most-mighty broke-upon when moreover to-be-spared to-himself badly
jam mulctatus incassum petisset: Voce, inquit, opus est,
already punished in-vain he-had-sought of-voice he-says need there-is
et exclamans vociferavit. At fratrum pars, voce audita
and crying-out he-shouted but of-the-brothers a-part with-the-voice heard
tali tempore insolita, stupens accurrit luminibus, et quidnam
at-such a-time unusual astonished ran-up with-lights and what
esset, quesivit. Tuotilo autem diabolum se cepisse creber
it-was asked Tuotilo moreover the-devil himself to-have-caught often
ingeminans lumen adhiberi rogat, ut, in cujus illum imagine
redoubling a-light to-be-applied asks that in whose him likeness

teneret, certius inspiceret. Capite autem inviti
he-held more-surely he-might-inspect with-the-head moreover of-the-unwilling-one
hac et illac ad inspicientes versato, si Sindolf esset,
this-way and that-way to the-inspectors turned if Sindolf it-were
quasi nescius, interrogat. Omnibus autem vere ipsum esse
as-if not-knowing he-asks with-all moreover truly him to-be
clamitantibus et, ut illum dimitteret, rogantibus, relicto eo:
shouting and that him he-should-let-go asking with-left him
Me miserum, ait, in auricularem et intimum episcopi manus
me wretched he-says on the-ear-man and intimate of-the-bishop hands
misisse! Rapertus vero fratribus accurrentibus in partem
to-have-laid Ratpert but with-the-brothers running-up into a-part
cedens clam se subduxit. Neque enim ipse, qui passus est,
yielding secretly himself withdrew nor for he-himself who suffered has
a quo cederetur, scire poterat. Querentibus autem aliquibus,
by whom he-was-beaten to-know could to-those-asking moreover some
ubinam domnus Notkerus Rapertusque abissent: Ambo,
where lord Notker and-Ratpert had-gone both
inquit, ad opus Dei diabolum sentientes abierunt meque
he-says to the-work of-God the-devil perceiving went-away and-me
cum illo in negotio perambulante in tenebris dimiserunt. Vere
with him in business walking in darkness they-left truly
autem omnes scitote, angelum Domini ictus ei manu
moreover all know an-angel of-the-Lord blows on-him with-hand
sua incussisse. Discedentibus tandem fratribus a partium
his to-have-struck with-departing at-last the-brothers from of-the-parties
sectatoribus surgunt, ut fit, multiloquia. Alii Dei judicio,
the-followers arise as happens much-talk some of-God by-judgment
ut auscultatores clandestini publicarentur, factum dicebant;
that eavesdroppers secret might-be-made-public done they-said
alii autem, tali viro nisi quod angelum Domini prætendit,
others moreover for-such a-man unless that an-angel of-the-Lord he-pretended

tale opus non decuisse. Occultabat autem se confractus
such work not to-have-befitted hid moreover himself the-broken-one
ille corporis pariter et mentis dolore. Interrogatque tandem
that of-body equally and of-mind by-pain and-asks at-last
episcopus post aliquos dies, ubinam tamdiu moraretur suus
the-bishop after some days where so-long might-be-staying his
famidicus; sic enim hominem nominare erat solitus nova
rumor-monger thus for the-man to-name was accustomed new-things
semper aliqua sibi clam adportantem. Re, ut erat,
always some to-him secretly bringing with-the-thing as it-was
veraciter comperta, quoniam tantæ auctoritati pro tam
truly found since to-so-great authority for so
turpiter reo nihil imputare volebat, consolatur accitum:
shamefully guilty nothing to-impute he-wished he-consoles the-summoned-one
Quoniam illi, inquit, a pueritia mei semper invidi male
since they he-says from boyhood of-me always envious badly
tibi fecerant, ego quidem, si vixero, melius tibi facere
to-you had-done I indeed if I-shall-have-lived better to-you to-do
habebo. Data est post non multum temporis occasio, et
shall-have given was after not much of-time an-occasion and
plerisque omnibus, ne rem loci tam præclaram in tali
with-very-many all lest the-thing of-the-place so illustrious on such
homine deiceret, contradicentibus, ut supra prælibavimus,
a-man he-should-cast-down objecting as above we-foretasted
operariorum factus est ab ipso decanus.
of-the-workmen made he-was by him dean

Capitula 37–40

NOTKER'S PROPHECY AND TUOTILO'S TRAVELS

Notker, gentle and keen on discipline, answers a proud chaplain of Charles who mocks him that God exalts the humble and humbles the proud; the chaplain breaks his leg the same day and is healed only when Notker comes to him. Sindolf throws down the wine of Notker and Ratpert, but the fallen vessel keeps it unspilled, and he calls them sorcerers; Hartmann rebukes him and the dean Waltram has him punished. Tuotilo, sent to Mainz for cloth, flogs a monk of Saint Alban's caught with a woman, carves the throne of God on a golden altar there, and once routs two robbers with an oak.

Erant illo in tempore sancto Gallo et alii cœnobitæ quidem
there-were that in time for-Saint Gall also other monks indeed
sancti, quorum justiciæ apud Deum non sunt in oblivione,
holy whose righteousnesses before God not are in oblivion
quorum quidem opera multa audivimus præclara. Inter quos
of-whom indeed the-works many we-have-heard illustrious among whom
Hartmannus et ipse doctissimus, abbas cœnobii post
Hartmann also himself most-learned abbot of-the-monastery after
Salomonem, Waltrammus vero, cujus ætiam melodiæ, quis
Salomon Waltram but whose also the-melodies who
fuerit, non cælant, Ruodkerus, cujus supra meminimus, et
he-was not conceal Ruodker of-whom above we-made-mention and
alii quidem multi, cum sanctis sancti, cum electis electi. De
others indeed many with the-saints saints with the-elect elect about
quibus, quia longum est operi audita prosequi, tres solos,
whom because long it-is for-the-work things-heard to-pursue three alone
quos assumpsimus, in exemplum posteris sufficere credamus.
whom we-have-taken-up as an-example for-later-men to-suffice let-us-believe
Notkerus vero in his, quæ in capitulo suo prælibavimus,
Notker but in these-things which in chapter his we-foretasted

dies noctesque semper idem et novus, quod Ratpertus in
days and-nights always the-same and new what Ratpert in
scolis, hoc ipse in claustro, præter verbera, omni caritatis
the-schools this he-himself in the-cloister besides blows with-all of-charity
egit censura. Nam priorum permisso, magis autem et
did severity for of-the-priors by-the-permission more moreover and
ortatu, juveniores ad hoc idonei noctes diesque, quando
by-the-urging the-younger-ones for this fit nights and-days when
ab orationibus quiesceret, velut in insidiis erant. Neque enim
from prayers he-rested as-if in ambush were nor for
hora incompetens dicebatur, si codice in manibus quis
the-hour unfitting was-called if with-a-book in hands anyone
cum domno Notkero loquebatur. Ipse autem cum propter
with lord Notker spoke he-himself moreover when on-account-of
regulæ tenorem sibilis eos interdum et strepitu absturbaret,
of-the-rule the-tenor with-hisses them sometimes and with-noise disturbed-away
ab abbatibus ei per obœdientiam, quod refutarat,
by the-abbots on-him through obedience what he-had-refused
injunctum est. Quam autem mellifluus in responsis fuerit,
enjoined was how moreover honey-flowing in answers he-was
lacrimæ eorum, qui hominem viderant, testantur. Enimvero
the-tears of-those who the-man had-seen attest indeed
ætiam in spiritu Dei multa, bonis et malis, aut
also in the-spirit of-God many-things to-good-men and to-bad either
fortunia prædixit, aut infortunia, sicut, ut gratia exempli
fortunes he-foretold or misfortunes as that for-the-sake of-example
superiora repetam, cuidam Karoli elati animi capellano.
the-above-things I-may-repeat to-a-certain of-Charles of-proud mind chaplain
Nam rex idem cum ob caritates agendas fratribus,
for the-king the-same when for charities to-be-done for-the-brothers
ut solebat, cœnobio veniret totumque triduum gratia
as he-was-wont to-the-monastery came and-whole three-days for-the-sake

reverentiæ conversantium ibidem moraretur sanctisque nostris,
of-reverence of-those-dwelling there stayed and-to-saints our
ut et Ratpertus scribit, munificus, abbate jam mutato,
as also Ratpert writes generous with-the-abbot now changed
abire parasset, ille quidem elati animi capellanus virum
to-go-away had-prepared that indeed of-proud mind chaplain the-man
Dei psalterio, ut solebat, assidentem præteriens conspexit,
of-God at-the-psalter as he-was-wont sitting passing-by beheld
agnitoque, quod is esset, qui Karolo multa querenti
and-recognized that he was who to-Charles many-things asking
pridie quæsita resolveret, comitantibus ait: Ecce, inquam,
the-day-before the-questions had-solved to-(his)-companions says lo I-say
iste est, quo neminem ajunt in regno Karoli
this-one is than-whom no-one they-say in the-kingdom of-Charles
doctiorem. Sed ego, si vultis, illum tam præcellentissime
more-learned but I if you-wish him so most-excellently
doctum ad irrisionem vobis temptabo et, quod tantæ
learned to mockery for-you I-shall-test and what of-so-great
famæ vir omnino nesciat, interrogabo. Illis vero, ut
fame a-man at-all knows-not I-shall-ask with-them but that
hoc faceret, curiose rogantibus, accedunt pariter, salutant
this he-should-do curiously asking they-approach together greet
eum. Humilis ille assurgens, quid petant, quærit. At ille
him humble he rising what they-seek asks but he
infelix, quem diximis: Scimus, inquit, homo doctissime,
unhappy whom we-mentioned we-know he-says man most-learned
omnia te nosse. Quid autem Deus in cælo nunc faciat,
all-things you to-know what moreover God in heaven now does
a te cupimus, si nosti, audire. — Scio, inquit ille, et
from you we-desire if you-know to-hear I-know says he and
optime scio. Nunc enim facit, quod semper fecit, utique
very-well I-know now for he-does what always he-did surely

et tibi quam mox facturus est. Exaltat enim humiles et
and to-you how soon about-to-do he-is he-exalts for the-humble and
humiliat superbos. Abibat temptator ille et irrisor a suis
humbles the-proud went-away tempter that and mocker by his-people
irrisus, parvi pendens, quod sibi futurum dixisset. Sonatur
mocked of-small weighing what to-him about-to-be he-had-said is-sounded
continuo ad concursum et laudes Cæsaris abituri. Arripit
at-once for the-concourse and the-lauds of-Caesar about-to-depart seizes
ille infelix futurus labarum, eo die ordinis sui dominum
that unhappy about-to-be-so the-labarum on-that day of-order his the-lord
antecedendi. Et equo superbo invectus ante portam civitatis
to-precede and on-a-horse proud carried before the-gate of-the-city
offendens cecidit et misere in facie collisus crus confregit.
stumbling fell and wretchedly on the-face dashed (his)-leg broke
Committitur abbati novo Hartmuoto suffecto Perinhardo
he-is-committed to-the-abbot new Hartmut substituted for-Bernhard
procurandus. Cui ipse tandem præsagium Notkeri
to-be-cared-for to-whom he-himself at-last the-presage of-Notker
omnemque hujusmodi rem cum aperuisset, desiderabat
and-all of-this-kind the-matter when he-had-disclosed desired
viri Dei, si se invisere dignetur, absolutionem et
of-the-man of-God if himself to-visit he-should-deign the-absolution and
præsentis benedictionem. Quod cum ille despective de
of-(him)-present the-blessing which when he contemptuously about
Notkero audiens nihil sibi mali ejus vaticinio assereret
Notker hearing nothing to-himself of-evil by-his prophecy he-asserted
contigisse, coagulari fractura illa nullis fomentis, nullis
to-have-happened to-set fracture that by-no poultices by-no
adunari valuit ligamentis. Supplicatur tandem media quadam
to-be-united could bindings is-supplicated at-last at-mid a-certain
nocte a miserantibus clamores ejus Notkero. Qui dum
night by those-pitying the-cries his Notker who while

adveniens crus contrectasset, confestim conbullire illud sensit
arriving the-leg he-had-handled at-once to-boil-up it felt
confractus didicitque severe de cætero humilia sentire.
the-broken-one and-learned severely of the-rest humble-things to-think
Et ut ad ordinem redeamus Sindolfumque sub Salomone
and that to the-order we-may-return and-Sindolf under Salomon
licenter bachantem prosequamur, quadam die, quod erat
licentiously raging we-may-pursue on-a-certain day what was
refectorarii, Notkero et Ratperto simul ordinariis mensuram
of-the-refectorer to-Notker and to-Ratpert together regulars the-measure
potus, ut officii sui erat, considentibus cum in uno vase non
of-drink as of-office his it-was sitting-together when in one vessel not
poneret, sed maledicta submurmurans absentibus adhuc quasi
he-placed but curses muttering with-them-absent still as-if
proiceret, vas illud quasi de mensa lapsum in terram
he-threw-down vessel that as-if from the-table slipped onto the-ground
cecidit, operculoque procul rotante in latus jacuit vinumque,
fell and-with-the-lid far rolling on (its)-side lay and-the-wine
tanquam si subrectum esset, solide continuit. Quod ille morose
as if upright it-were solidly held which he sulkily
reversus — nam per passus aliquot festinus abscesserat — cum
returned for by paces some hastening he-had-gone-off when
levasset, accurrentibus, qui procul viderant, et si quicquam de
he-had-lifted to-those-running-up who from-afar had-seen and if anything of
vino effusum sit, terram conspectando querentibus: Ne
the-wine spilled had-been the-ground scanning asking do-not
miremini, inquit, si diabolus, a quo nigros libros noctibus
wonder he-says if the-devil from whom black books by-night
discunt, fascinatorum suorum calices, ne effunderentur,
they-learn of-sorcerers his the-cups lest they-be-spilled
continuit. Quod Hartmannus post a dicentibus cum
held which Hartmann afterward from those-telling when

audisset protervoque illi occurrisset: Vide, bone vir, inquit,
he-had-heard and-to-the-insolent-one that had-met see good man he-says
ne in tales viros injurias tuas tam patienter ferentes nimium
lest against such men injuries your so patiently bearing too-much
tandem desipias. Cui ille cum sibi solita usque ad
at-last you-play-the-fool to-whom he when to-him with-wonted all-the-way to
convicia respondisset protervia, Waltrammus, tunc decanus, in
insults had-answered insolence Waltram then dean in
proximo fratrum capitulo regulari illum vindictæ subjecit.
the-next of-the-brothers chapter regular him to-punishment subjected
Tuotilo vero abbatum, sub quibus militaverat, permissis
Tuotilo but of-the-abbots under whom he-had-soldiered by-the-permissions
plerumque et præceptis multas propter artificia simul et
mostly and commands many on-account-of the-arts together and
doctrinas peragraverat, ut in suo capitulo tetigimus, terras.
teachings had-traveled as in his chapter we-touched lands
Picturas ætiam et anagliphas carminibus et epigrammis
pictures also and reliefs with-songs and epigrams
decorabat singulariter pretiosis. Tantæque auctoritatis,
he-adorned singularly precious and-of-so-great authority
ubicumque moraretur, apparuit, ut nemo illum, qui vidisset,
wherever he-stayed he-appeared that no-one him who had-seen
sancti Galli monachum dubitasset. Erat autem in divinis et
of-Saint Gall a-monk doubted was moreover in divine and
humanis ad responsa paratissimus, et si quid incondecens,
human-things for answers most-ready and if anything unbecoming
maxime in monachis, usquam vidisset, pro loco, tempore et
most in monks anywhere he-had-seen for place time and
persona zelator erectus, ut in uno de pluribus dicere habebimus.
person a-zealot erect as in one of many to-tell we-shall-have

Enimvero quoniam homo erat itinerarius lateque terrarum
indeed since a-man he-was traveling and-widely of-lands
et urbium gnarus, missus est aliquando pro communi causa
and of-cities knowing sent he-was sometime for the-common cause
Mogontiam utique pro pannis laneis emendis, quos sericales
to-Mainz surely for cloths woolen to-be-bought which serge-cloths
vocant aut tunicas. In ingressu ergo civitatis circa sancti
they-call or tunics at the-entrance therefore of-the-city near of-Saint
Albani monasterium hospitium petens, hominibus suis statim
Alban the-monastery lodging seeking with-men his at-once
propter pabula et victualia mercatum missis, ipse super
for fodder and victuals to-the-market sent he-himself upon
sedile se lassus, ut paulisper quiesceret, locaverat. Erant
a-seat himself tired that for-a-little he-might-rest had-placed were
autem dies vindemiæ, quibus fratres ad obœdientias dimissi
moreover the-days of-the-vintage on-which the-brothers to obediences sent-out
sunt per vineas. Et ecce, primo signo ad vesperas pulsato,
were through the-vineyards and lo at-the-first signal for vespers rung
circator fratres collecturus, asino pro religione insidens,
the-circator the-brothers about-to-gather on-an-ass for religion sitting
hostio domus hospitii jam dicti quasi aliquem et ibi
to-the-door of-the-house of-lodging already mentioned as-if someone also there
quesiturus appropiat. Latenter autem, si commatrina sua
about-to-seek approaches secretly moreover if (his)-fellow-godmother his
domi sit, sciscitando domum inequitat. At illa de camera
at-home be asking into-the-house rides but she from the-chamber
egressa salutans conpatrem, hospitem illum dormire putans,
come-out greeting (her)-fellow-godfather the-guest that to-sleep thinking
optulit viro mustum; quo ille impigre hausto vaseque
offered to-the-man new-wine which he briskly drained and-with-the-vessel
reddito, mammam feminæ titillat assentientis. Hospes vero
returned the-breast of-the-woman tickles assenting the-guest but

viso facinore exilit, illum scælestum inclamitans, comis
with-the-deed seen leaps-out him wicked calling-on by-the-hair
apprehensum in terram dejecit flagelloque, quo ad equum
seized onto the-ground threw-down and-with-the-whip which on the-horse
usus est, adhuc manu habito acriter hominem cecidit adiciens:
used he-had still in-hand held sharply the-man beat adding
Hoc, inquit, tibi sanctus Gallus, sancti Albani frater, dedit.
this he-says to-you Saint Gall of-Saint Alban the-brother has-given
Ille vero quamvis pro reatu sit tristis et passus, timidus
he but although for guilt he-was sad and having-suffered fearful
tamen sui venia petita, uti se cælatum habere vellet,
however of-himself pardon sought that himself concealed to-have he-would-wish
hominem rogat. Hospes illi: Ne modo adicias peccatum
the-man asks the-guest to-him lest just-now you-add sin
peccato, quantum in me est, bene cælaberis. Intimatur
to-sin as-much-as in me is well you-will-be-concealed it-is-made-known
abbati, fratrem de sancto Gallo ante portam hospitari;
to-the-abbot a-brother from Saint Gall before the-gate to-lodge
vocatur in claustrum. Nomen sciscitati agnoscunt hominem
he-is-called into the-cloister the-name having-asked they-recognize the-man
diu fama vulgatum caritativeque tractato ipsi exhibebant
long by-fame spread and-charitably treated to-him-himself they-showed
Martham; ille vero capacibus exhibebat Mariam. Rogaturque
Martha he but to-the-capable showed Mary and-he-is-asked
ibi morari, usque dum thronum Dei in brathea altaris
there to-stay all-the-way until the-throne of-God on the-plate of-the-altar

aurea cælaret, cui similem anáglipham raro usque hodie
golden he-might-carve to-which like a-relief rarely until today
videre est alteram, (in circulo scribens hunc versum:
to-see it-is the-other in the-circle writing this verse

Ecce polo potior solio terraque scabello).
Lo with-heaven mightier as-throne and-with-the-earth as-footstool

Cum autem ibi aliquantum tardasset, non cælatum est ex
when moreover there for-some-time he-had-delayed not concealed it-was in
parte. Quid deforis egerit, rogatus dicere: Fratrem, inquit,
part what outside he-had-done asked to-tell a-brother he-says
ibi indisciplinatum vidi, quem ut ferirem, flagellum levans,
there undisciplined I-saw whom that I-might-strike the-whip raising
intentavi, quod illi et mihi indultum quidem rogo. Sic
I-threatened which to-him and to-me pardoned indeed I-ask thus
ille fidei memor veritati parcens non tamen mentitus est.
he of-faith mindful the-truth sparing not however lied has
— Dixerant autem de illo unum aliquid, quod, quamvis
they-had-told moreover about him one something which although
monachi non fuerit, propter naturam tamen hominis dicere
of-a-monk not it-was on-account-of the-nature however of-the-man to-tell
volo. Ibat aliquando per silvam latronibus aptam duobus
I-wish he-went sometime through a-forest for-robbers suited by-two
suis comitatus, uno scutato cum lancea, altero sine. Et ecce
of-his accompanied one with-a-shield with a-lance the-other without and lo
a duobus audacissimis invasus, ambos istos uterque suum
by two most-daring attacked both those each his-man
equo dejecerat. Interea ille, utroque in spolio occupato,
from-the-horse had-thrown-down meanwhile he with-each in plunder occupied
robur quoddam validum circumspectum arripuit et terrore
an-oak certain strong looked-about seized and with-terror

magno minax super illos venit. At illi videntes hominem
great threatening upon them came but they seeing a-man
forti assimilem spolia omittunt, scuta dorso rejecta
to-a-strong-one like the-spoils let-go the-shields on-the-back thrown
contra illum vergunt; lanceasque ille latronum præ securitate
against him turn and-the-lances he of-the-robbers from security
procul abjectas suos citissime rapere jussit, et ut se
far thrown-away his-men most-quickly to-seize bade and that themselves
defenderent, acer verbis emonuit. Quas cum dejecti
they-should-defend sharp with-words warned which when the-thrown-down
celeres raperent, tanti ducis violentiam minime se
swift seized of-so-great a-leader the-violence by-no-means themselves
perpeti posse videntes hostes ab eo exarmati divertunt.
to-endure to-be-able seeing the-enemies by him disarmed turn-aside
Sic isti lancea ætiam sua levata, ut, si illi reverterentur,
so these with-lance also his raised that if they should-return
domino eam darent, silvam imperterriti transeunt.
to-the-master it they-might-give the-forest undaunted cross

Capitula 41–43

NOTKER AND THE DEVIL

Notker, praying in the crypt by night, finds the devil there in the form of a dog, binds him to stay, and beats him with Saint Gall's staff until it breaks; the sacristan has it mended and keeps the secret. When Notker omits None, the devil writes it down on a tablet above his seat and drops a board on him. The devil warns Notker of a bad night; the restless young monk Wolo, a count's son, climbs the bell tower against orders, falls through the ceiling, confesses, commends himself to the holy virgins and to Notker, and dies clasping his hand.

Notkerus autem spiritualiter, ut diximus, fortis, quantum
Notker moreover spiritually as we-said strong as-much-as
Tuotilo in homines, tantum ipse valuit in demones,
Tuotilo against men so-much he-himself prevailed against demons
alias autem corpore, ut jejunans et vigilans, tener, ut
otherwise moreover in-body as fasting and keeping-vigil tender as
diximus, et macer. Accidit autem, ut quadam nocte in
we-said and lean it-happened moreover that on-a-certain night in
ædclesia præveniens in maturitate altariaque circuiens, ut
the-church anticipating in the-early-hour and-the-altars going-round as
solebat, clamaret. In criptam vero veniens duodecim
he-was-wont he-was-calling-on into the-crypt but coming of-the-twelve
apostolorum sanctique Columbani, acriores de post aram
apostles and-of-Saint Columban sharper from behind the-altar
oculi ejus cum deducerent lacrimas, quasi canem audierat
the-eyes his when they-drew-forth tears as-if a-dog he-had-heard
mussitantem. Cumque interea suis vocem grunnientis
muttering and-when meanwhile with-his the-voice of-one-grunting
mixtam sentiret, intellexit temptatorem. Esne tu, inquit,
mixed he-perceived he-understood the-tempter are you he-says
iterum ibi? Quam bene tibi, miser!, contigit nunc mussitanti
again there how well to-you wretch has-befallen now muttering

et grunnienti post gloriosas voces illas, quas in cælis
and grunting after glorious voices those which in heaven
habueras? Accensoque lumine, quo angulo lateret,
you-had-had and-with-lit a-light in-what corner he-might-lie-hid
quæsivit. Ille vero sinistro angulo appropiantem tanquam canis
he-sought he but in-the-left corner the-one-approaching like a-dog
rabidus vestibus lacerat. Eia, inquit ille, servitium tuum
rabid in-(his)-clothes tears come-now says he service your
foris criptam satagere habeo; neque enim penæ illæ valent,
outside the-crypt to-busy-with I-have nor for penalties those avail
quas, ut ajunt, jam pateris: acrius tibi aliquid paraturus
which as they-say already you-suffer sharper for-you something about-to-prepare
sum. Præcipio tibi autem in nomine istorum sanctorum et
I-am I-command you moreover in the-name of-these saints and
Domini mei, ut me in eodem, quo nunc indutus es,
of-the-Lord my that me in the-same in-which now clothed you-are
canino corpore exspectes. Et ille: Faciam, inquit, si volo.
canine body you-await and he I-shall-do-so he-says if I-wish
Et Notkerus velocius abiens: Confido, ait, in Domino,
and Notker more-quickly going-away I-trust he-says in the-Lord
quia, velis nolis, me exspectabis. Festinato autem aram
that willing unwilling me you-will-await hastening moreover to-the-altar
sancti Galli adiens, cambotam suam et magistri ejus,
of-Saint Gall approaching staff his and of-the-master his
multarum virtutum operatricem, cum spera illa sanctæ crucis
of-many miracles the-worker with ball that of-the-holy cross
notissima rapuit et in introitu criptæ dextero spera
most-famous he-seized and at the-entrance of-the-crypt on-the-right with-the-ball
posita cum baculo sinistrorsum caninum illum aggressus
placed with the-staff from-the-left canine that attacked
est diabolum. Cum autem illum baculo sancto cedere
has devil when moreover him with-the-staff holy to-beat

cœpisset, voces suas anteriores altius gannitu edidit et
he-had-begun voices his former more-loudly with-yelping he-uttered and
grunnitu. Tandem vero cum ad speram sanctissimam cedendo
with-grunting at-last but when to the-ball most-holy by-yielding
cedentem fugiens venisset, ultra jam progredi non valens
the-beater fleeing he-had-come further now to-go-forward not able
constitit, et tot jam ictus et incussiones ferre non
stood and so-many now blows and strokes to-bear not
sustinens barbarice clamans: Au wê! Mir wê! vociferavit. At
enduring barbarously crying Au we mir we he-shouted but
interea edituus cum basilicam intrasset vocesque horridas
meanwhile the-sacristan when the-basilica he-had-entered and-the-voices horrid
audisset, lumen velox in manibus sumpsit et ad criptam
he-had-heard a-light swift into hands took and to the-crypt
acceleravit. At ille cum ei ictum ultimum fecisset,
hastened but he when on-him the-blow last he-had-made
baculum sanctum in locis confregit. Et nisi edituus speram
the-staff holy into places broke and unless the-sacristan the-ball
videns allevasset canemque sic abire permisisset, adhuc eum
seeing had-raised and-the-dog so to-go-away had-allowed still him
cedere habuisset. Edituus vero baculo inspecto attonitus:
to-beat he-would-have-had the-sacristan but with-the-staff inspected astonished
Baculumne sanctum, domne mi, in cane fedasti? Illo
the-staff holy lord my on a-dog have-you-defiled with-him
conticente addidit: Quisnam ille erat, inquit, qui: A wê!
silent he-added who that was he-says who a we
vociferavit? Putansque illum pro pietate furem aliquem cælare,
shouted and-thinking him for piety a-thief some to-conceal
ivit in pedes per totam æcclesiam, furem comprehendere
he-went on feet through the-whole church the-thief to-seize
cupiens. Sed cum neque furem inveniret, neque canem,
desiring but when neither a-thief he-found nor a-dog

graditur secum mirans, quia æcclesiam post se introiens
he-walks with-himself wondering because the-church after himself entering
clauserat, quidnam esse posset, quod contigerat. Virum
he-had-shut what to-be could which had-happened the-man
denique regularem jam semel sibi tacitum amplius alloqui
finally of-the-rule now once to-himself silent further to-address
non ausus est præsumere. Et ille, secundum quod humilis
not dared he to-presume and he according-to what humble
erat et prudens, edituo foras ire significans in partem
he-was and prudent to-the-sacristan outside to-go signaling into a-part
eum sumpsit, benedictioneque prælata: Quoniam baculum,
him took and-with-blessing given-first since the-staff
inquit, fili mi, confregi, nisi tu juveris, secreta mea
he-says son my I-have-broken unless you shall-have-helped secrets my
habent efferri. Sed quoniam meum non est ambulare
have to-be-carried-out but since mine not it-is to-walk
in magnis et in mirabilibus super me, silentio fidei tuæ,
in great-things and in wonders above me to-the-silence of-faith your
quod factum est, committo. Sicque ei rem, ut facta
what done has-been I-commit and-so to-him the-thing as done
est, enucleavit. At ille baculo per fabrum latenter reparato,
it-was he-unfolded but he with-the-staff by a-smith secretly repaired
quod factum est, ad tempus occultavit. In temporis autem
what done had-been for a-time concealed in of-time moreover
processu res, ut erat, in medium venit.
the-course the-thing as it-was into the-open came
Et ut videas loci nostri religionem ætiam in psalmodiis,
and that you-may-see of-place our the-religion also in psalmodies
tredecim sedilia cum psalteriis aut auro inpictis, aut
thirteen seats with psalters either with-gold painted or
alias nobilibus habebat; præter alias et habet illa sancti
otherwise noble had besides others and has that of-Saint

Galli basilica capellas, in quorum uno angulari foribus
Gall basilica chapels in of-which one corner to-the-doors
proximo Notkerus psallere erat solitus. Accidit autem, ut
nearest Notker to-sing-psalms was accustomed it-happened moreover that
quadam die ad nonæ sinaxim non veniret neque eam per
on-a-certain day to of-None the-synaxis not he-came nor it by
se caneret. In illo autem solio cum post completorium
himself sang in that moreover seat when after compline
clara adhuc die precibus insisteret, videt super se
with-bright still day in-prayers he-persisted he-sees above himself
in laquearii interrupti trabibus diabolum consedisse
in of-the-paneled-ceiling broken the-beams the-devil to-have-sat-down
et stilo in tabula scribere. Quem cum, quid scelus
and with-a-stylus on a-tablet to-write whom when what wicked-one
scriberet, interrogasset: Nonam, inquit, quam tu scelus hodie
he-wrote he-had-asked None he-says which you wicked-one today
supersederas, scribo. At ille dicto cicius: Deus in adjutorium
had-omitted I-write but he than-said quicker O-God unto help
meum intende! prosecutus, videt eum manu celerrima, quod
my attend having-gone-on sees him with-hand most-swift what
scripserat, planasse. Cumque ad preces sinaxis se in
he-had-written to-have-smoothed and-when for the-prayers of-the-synaxis himself on
terra prosterneret, tabulam laquearii disrupti super eum
the-ground he-prostrated a-board of-the-ceiling broken upon him
dejecerat. At ipse videns, ut ictum declinaret, citus
he-had-thrown-down but he seeing that the-blow he-might-avoid quick
exiliit. Chachinnans tandem ille: Tamen mihi ut assurgeres,
leapt-out cackling at-last he yet for-me that you-should-rise
inquit, effeci. Enimvero, ait et Notker, si tu, ut
he-says I-have-brought-about indeed says also Notker if you as
nuper, caninus fueris, iterum tecum habeo operari.
lately canine you-shall-have-been again with-you I-have to-work

Tandem cum evanuisset, fratres aliqui in extremis templi
at-last when he-had-vanished brothers some in the-farthest-parts of-the-temple
orantes sonum tabulæ vocesque audientes mirati, quid
praying the-sound of-the-board and-the-voices hearing having-wondered what
esset, citi aderant. Videntesque eum, ut solebat, prostratum,
it-was quick were-present and-seeing him as he-was-wont prostrate
nolebant illum, quod ætiam incompetens hora esset,
they-were-unwilling him because also unfitting the-hour was
impedire. Tandem tamen Tuotilo, unus ex ipsis, signo dato
to-hinder at-last however Tuotilo one of them with-a-sign given
amice illum foras evocans silenter in aurem: Magnas,
in-friendly-fashion him outside calling silently into the-ear great
inquit, inquietudines tu et demones tui fratribus facere
he-says disturbances you and demons your to-the-brothers to-make
soletis. At ille: Audierantne, mi anime, fratres omnia? Non
are-wont but he had-heard my soul the-brothers all-things not
omnia, inquit, sed mihi, velim, quæ hæc turba fuerit, per
all-things he-says but to-me I-would-wish what this turmoil was through
singula pandas. Ipse vero id cum abnueret ab eoque
each-thing you-should-disclose he but this when he-refused from and-him
se concitus, tabulam ibi cecidisse dicens, subtraheret,
himself hastily a-board there to-have-fallen saying withdrew
erant alii, qui viderant et factum, ut erat, non celabant.
there-were others who had-seen and the-deed as it-was not they-concealed
Erat eodem in tempore in loco adolescens quidam
there-was at-the-same in time in the-place a-youth certain
monachus admodum literatus, comitis cujusdam filius, nomine
a-monk very lettered of-a-count certain the-son by-name
Wolo, inquietus et vagus, cui propter aversionem cum
Wolo restless and wandering to-whom on-account-of (his)-aversion when
nec decanus ipse, nec domnus Notkerus seu ceteri imperare
neither the-dean himself nor lord Notker or the-others to-command

potuissent, crebroque esset verbis verberibusque coercitus
had-been-able and-often he-was with-words and-with-blows restrained
nihilque proficeret, omnes pro talis ingenii viro dolebant.
and-nothing he-profited all for of-such talent a-man grieved
Nam cum nunquam sanctus Gallus nisi libertatis monachum
for since never Saint Gall except of-free-birth a-monk
habuisset, nobiliores tamen sepius aberrabant. Advenerant
had-had the-nobler however more-often strayed had-come
in monasterium parentes ejus pro eo solliciti; per quorum
into the-monastery the-parents his for him anxious through whose
monita cum parumper proficeret, iterum post abitum
admonitions when for-a-little he-profited again after the-departure
eorum idem erat. Diabolus autem quadam die domno
their the-same he-was the-devil moreover on-a-certain day to-lord
apparuit Notkero diluculo: Malam tibi, inquit, et fratribus
appeared Notker at-dawn a-bad for-you he-says and for-brothers
tuis facturus sum noctem. Mala avis, ait ille, malam famam
your about-to-make I-am night a-bad bird says he bad news
prodere solet. At ille fratribus, quæ audivit, uti die illo
to-betray is-wont but he to-the-brothers what he-heard that on-day that
se caverent, prænotuit. Wolo vero cum hoc et ipse
themselves they-should-guard forewarned Wolo but when this also he-himself
a dicentibus audisset: Senes, inquit, semper vana
from those-telling had-heard the-old-men he-says always vain-things
somniant. Erat autem dies ipse, quo sibi a decano, ne
dream was moreover the-day itself on-which to-him by the-dean lest
quoquam, ut solebat, claustro progrederetur, interdictum
anywhere as he-was-wont from-the-cloister he-should-go-forth forbidden
esse omnes noverant; et cum sederet ad scribendum, ultima
to-be all knew and when he-sat for writing the-last
ejus scriptura erat: Incipiebat enim mori. Ilicoque exiliens,
his writing was he-was-beginning for to-die and-at-once leaping-up

cæteris illum inclamantibus: Quo nunc, Wolo; quo
with-the-others him calling-out whither now Wolo whither
nunc? — in campanarium sancti Galli per gradus ad hoc
now into the-bell-tower of-Saint Gall by the-steps for this
quidem nobis paratos ascendere incipit, uti oculis, quia
indeed for-us prepared to-climb he-begins that with-the-eyes since
gressu non licuit, montes camposque circumspiciens,
with-step not it-was-allowed the-mountains and-plains looking-around
vel sic animo suo vago satisfaceret. Ascendens vero cum
at-least so mind his wandering he-might-satisfy climbing but when
super altare virginum venisset, impulsu, ut creditur, satanæ
above the-altar of-the-virgins he-had-come by-the-thrust as it-is-believed of-Satan
per laquear cecidit collumque confregit. Plurimis autem,
through the-ceiling fell and-(his)-neck broke with-very-many moreover
qui viderant vel audierant, accurrentibus, cum viaticum ei
who had-seen or heard running-up when the-viaticum to-him
properanter afferrent, confessione dicta communicavit. At illi
hastily they-brought with-confession said he-communicated but they
cum eum efferre voluissent et ad domum infirmorum
when him to-carry-out they-had-wished and to the-house of-the-sick
portare: Sinite me, inquit, sanctas virgines prius inclamare;
to-carry let me he-says the-holy virgins first to-call-on
ipse enim sciunt, quia, quamvis alias nefandissimus,
they-themselves for know that although otherwise most-wicked
mulierem tamen non novi. Interea cum alte ejulasset,
a-woman however not I-have-known meanwhile when loudly he-had-wailed
Notkero accurrente, manus illi porrexit: Tibi, inquit,
with-Notker running-up hands to-him he-stretched-out to-you he-says
domine mi, et sanctis virginibus, quas semper amabas,
lord my and to-the-holy virgins whom always you-loved
animam peccatricem commendo. At ille jactans se circa
(my)-soul sinful I-commend but he throwing himself around

eum: Sanctæ, inquit, virgines, in vobis confisus fratris istius
him holy he-says virgins in you trusting of-brother this
crimina super me tollo et ambos nos vobis committo. Et
the-crimes upon me I-take and both us to-you I-commit and
hæc dicens flebat et ejulabat; cumque ille efferretur,
these-things saying he-wept and wailed and-when he was-being-carried-out
præ foribus æcclesiæ quiete petita Notkerum manu artissime
before the-doors of-the-church with-quiet sought Notker with-hand most-tightly
stringens, omnibus preces effundentibus, emisit spiritum.
clasping with-all prayers pouring-out he-breathed-out (his)-spirit

Capitula 44–46

THE DEATHS OF RATPERT AND TUOTILO

Notker buries Wolo and takes on two offices for his soul; in a vision Ratpert tells him Wolo's sins are forgiven. Ratpert falls ill, still teaching, and dies among forty former pupils who promise him thirty masses each. At Metz pilgrims see a lady handing Tuotilo his tools as he carves an image of Mary, and the letters on its rim are carved by no one knows whom. Sindolf cuts up Notker's copy of the Greek canonical epistles. Tuotilo's tropes, Hodie cantandus *and* Omnium virtutum gemmis*, and the works of Waltram and Hartmann are named.*

Inter exequias Notker eum lavit, in feretrum collocavit;
during the-funeral-rites Notker him washed on the-bier placed
obsequium faciens totam ejus sepulturam ipse procuravit,
the-service doing the-whole his burial he-himself provided
semperque, quoad vixit, duo in se monachi officia testatus
and-always as-long-as he-lived two on himself of-a-monk offices testified
est solvenda. Completorium ipso obitus viri die
he-has to-be-paid the-compline on-the-very of-the-death of-the-man day
dum finiretur, patrum quidam simplicior precem, in
while it-was-being-finished of-the-fathers a-certain-one simpler the-prayer in

qua inest, ut: Sicut læti duximus diem, ita noctem quoque
which is-in that as glad we-have-spent the-day so the-night also
læti transigamus, dum recitasset, exiliens vir Dei: Quid
glad we-may-pass while he-had-recited leaping-up the-man of-God what
petis, inquit, frater admirabilis, quid petis? Sufficeret
do-you-ask he-says brother wonderful what do-you-ask would-suffice
hodie diei malicia sua et superhabundaret. Tu autem
today for-the-day the-malice its and would-overflow you moreover
et nocti eadem precaris? Septima vero obitus hominis
also for-the-night the-same pray on-the-seventh but of-the-death of-the-man
die, cum pernoctans in æcclesia permansisset, circa tempus
day when spending-the-night in the-church he-had-remained around the-time
laudis nocturnæ parumper super genua pausans, videt quasi
of-the-lauds nocturnal for-a-little on (his)-knees resting he-sees as-if
Rapertum suum se excitantem et dicentem: Dimissa sunt
Ratpert his him rousing and saying forgiven are
ei peccata multa, quia dilexit multum. At ille evigilans:
to-him sins many because he-loved much but he awakening
Unde, anime mi, unde hoc nosti? cum subjunxisset,
whence soul my whence this have-you-known when he-had-added
quasi modesto gradu ille exiit. At ipse putans, eum
as-if with-modest step he went-out but he-himself thinking him
æcclesiam, ut ibi licentius loqueretur, exire, dum eum
the-church that there more-freely he-might-speak to-leave while him
extra velum prosequitur, neque ipsum, neque gressus ejus
beyond the-veil he-follows neither him nor of-steps his
ullum sentire poterat sonum; cereoque accenso quæsivit
any to-perceive could sound and-with-a-candle lit he-sought
eum in lecto, quem invenit surgentem, ut et ipse, sicut
him in bed whom he-found rising that also he-himself as
solebat, præveniret in maturitate et clamaret. Cereo
he-was-wont might-anticipate in the-early-hour and might-call-on with-the-candle

extincto æcclesiam rediit. Te Deum laudamus, præ gaudio
put-out to-the-church he-returned Te Deum laudamus for joy
flens, silenter cantavit. Die autem dato quærente Ratperto,
weeping silently he-sang with-day moreover given with-asking Ratpert
utrumne ad excitandum se nocte venisset, quod viderat,
whether to rouse him by-night he-had-come what he-had-seen
amabili suo aperuit. Tandem quoque et cæteros fratres spes
to-beloved his he-disclosed at-last also also the-other brothers hope
tanta non latuit. — Ratpertus vero et ipse sanctus circa
so-great not escaped Ratpert but also himself holy around
claustrum sancti Galli cum languidus iret, nec tamen docere
the-cloister of-Saint Gall when languid he-went nor however to-teach
desineret, quadraginta discipulis quondam suis, canonicis tunc
ceased to-forty disciples formerly his canons then
quidem presbyteris, loco propter festum advenientibus
indeed priests to-the-place on-account-of the-feast arriving
animam singulis in manibus commisit, quorum quisque ei
(his)-soul to-each into hands committed of-whom each to-him
triginta missas obituro promiserat. Sicque ille lætissimus
thirty masses about-to-die had-promised and-so he most-glad
Deum, uti se diutius morbo coqueret rogans, panis
God that him longer with-sickness he-might-bake asking bread
nitidus factus inter discipulorum manus in paradysum, ut
clean made among of-the-disciples the-hands into paradise as
credimus, transiit. Pro quo Notker et Tuotilo præter cæteros
we-believe passed for whom Notker and Tuotilo besides the-other
fratres dolentes, qui post eum relicti sunt, multa fecerunt.
brothers grieving who after him left were many-things did
Tuotilo vero cum apud Metensium urbem cælaturus satageret,
Tuotilo but when at of-the-Metzers the-city about-to-carve he-was-busy
peregrini duo sanctæ Mariæ imaginem cælanti astiterant
pilgrims two of-Saint Mary the-image to-the-one-carving stood-by

elemosinamque petebant. Quibus cum nummos clam tribueret,
and-alms sought to-whom when coins secretly he-gave
divertentes ab eo clerico cuidam astanti ajebant: Benedictus
turning-aside from him to-a-cleric certain standing-by they-said blessed
Domino vir iste, qui nos hodie bene consolatus est; sed estne
to-the-Lord man this who us today well consoled has but is
soror ejus, inquiunt, domina illa præclara, quæ ei tam
sister his they-say lady that illustrious who to-him so
commode radios ad manum dat et docet, quid faciat? Ille
fittingly the-tools to the-hand gives and teaches what he-may-do he
vero miratus, quid dicerent, cum nuperrime ab eo digressus
but wondering what they-might-say since most-lately from him having-departed
nil tale vidisset, revertitur et, quod dixerant, velut ad
nothing such he-had-seen returns and what they-had-said as-if for
momentum et in ictu oculi contemplatur. Ait autem
a-moment and in the-twinkling of-an-eye beholds says moreover
illi clericus et peregrini: Benedictus tu pater Domino, qui
to-him the-cleric and the-pilgrims blessed you father to-the-Lord who
tali magistra uteris ad opera! Qui cum ipsos, quid dicerent,
such a-mistress use for the-works who when them what they-said
nescire assereret, vehementer in illos invectus, ne cui
not-to-know asserted vehemently against them inveighing lest to-anyone
tale quid dicerent, interminatur. In crastinum autem, cum
such anything they-should-say threatens on the-morrow moreover when
gloriam talem de se plures audirent dictitare, subtrahens
the-glory such about him many heard to-repeat withdrawing
se cessit de medio, neque jam ultra in urbe illa operari
himself he-went-away from the-midst nor now further in city that to-work
volebat. In brattea autem ipsa aurea, cum reliquisset circuli
he-wished on the-plate moreover itself golden when he-had-left of-the-circle
planitiem vacuam, nescio cujus arte postea cælati sunt
the-flat empty I-know-not by-whose art afterward carved were

apices: Hoc panthema pia cælaverat ipsa Maria. Sed et imago
the-letters this panthema pious had-carved herself Mary but also the-image
ipsa sedens quasi viva cunctis inspectantibus adhuc hodie est
itself sitting as-if living with-all looking-on still today is
veneranda. Dicebant autem nobis patres, quod ipse vir
to-be-venerated they-said moreover to-us the-fathers that he-himself the-man
Dei iter agendo in quandam villam, ubi ad missas
of-God on-a-journey making into a-certain village where for masses
sonatum est, properans demonem ab homine in æcclesia
rung it-was hastening a-demon from a-man in the-church
bacchantem invocatione sancti Galli ejecerat. Sunt vero et
raging by-the-invocation of-Saint Gall had-cast-out there-are but also
alia, quæ de illo audivimus, multa, sed et de aliis nostro
other-things which about him we-have-heard many but also about other in-our
in loco Dei viris, quibus quia, ut nunc seculum est, diffidi
in place of-God men which because as now the-age is to-be-mistrusted
putamus, tacere quam scribere maluimus. De obitu autem
we-think to-be-silent than to-write we-have-preferred about the-death moreover
ejus, quia nihil constans conperimus, hoc solum, quod ad
his because nothing firm we-have-found this only that to
gaudia eum migrasse confidimus, indubitanter asserimus.
joys him to-have-departed we-trust undoubtedly we-assert
De Notkero, quæ reliqua sunt, audenter narrabimus,
about Notker what-things remaining are boldly we-shall-relate
quoniam illum spiritus sancti vas electum nequaquam
since him of-the-spirit holy a-vessel chosen by-no-means
dubitamus. Remansit ille sanctissimus uterinis in spiritu
we-doubt remained he most-holy of-(his)-brothers in spirit
viduus et orbus, tandemque malum illi, quo dolore cordis
widowed and bereaved and-at-last an-evil to-him by-which with-pain of-heart
intrinsecus tactus est, accidit. Epistolas canonicas Grecas a
inwardly touched he-was befell the-epistles canonical Greek from

Liutwardo, Vercellensi episcopo, petitas multis sudoribus ille
Liutward of-Vercelli the-bishop sought with-many sweats he
exemplaverat. Et ecce Sindolfus, magnus jam et præpotens
had-copied and lo Sindolf great now and very-powerful
in loco, ut diximus, codicem illum delicate scriptum casu
in the-place as we-said book that delicately written by-chance
incurrens furatus est, et singulas quaternionum, sicut hodie
running-upon stolen has and the-single of-the-quires as today
videre est, cultro excisas discerpsit atque depravavit et iterum
to-see it-is with-a-knife cut-out tore-apart and spoiled and again
conplicatas in locum, ubi eas fuerat furatus, reposuit.....
folded into the-place where them he-had stolen put-back
arus sponte..... velut hec miraculis factam, ne maturitas
(lacuna) of-its-own-accord as-if this by-miracles done lest the-maturity
tanti viri umquam huic assenserit levitati. — Que
of-so-great a-man ever to-this should-have-assented levity what
autem Tuotilo dictaverat, singularis et agnoscibilis melodie
moreover Tuotilo had-composed of-singular and recognizable melody
sunt, quia per psalterium seu per rothtam, qua potentior
are because through the-psaltery or through the-rote in-which more-powerful
ipse erat, neumata inventa dulciora sunt, ut apparet in: Hodie
he was the-neumes found sweeter are as appears in Hodie
cantandus et Omnium virtutum gemmis. Quos quidem
cantandus and Omnium virtutum gemmis which indeed
tropos Karolo ad offerendam, quam ipse rex fecerat,
tropes to-Charles for the-offertory which he-himself the-king had-made
obtulit canendos. Qui rex etiam, Viri Galilei offerendam
he-offered to-be-sung who the-king also Viri Galilei the-offertory
cum dictasset, Tuotiloni versus addere injunxit, ut ajunt:
when he-had-composed to-Tuotilo verses to-add enjoined as they-say
Quoniam Dominus Jesus Christus cum esset, omnipotens
Quoniam Dominus Jesus Christus cum esset omnipotens

genitor, fons et origo, cum sequentibus: Gaudete et cantate,
genitor fons et origo with the-following Gaudete et cantate
et alios quidem; sed istos proposuimus, ut, quam dispar ejus
and others indeed but these we-have-set-forth that how unlike his
melodia sit ceteris, si musicus es, noris. Waltrammus
melody be to-the-others if a-musician you-are you-may-know Waltram
autem, quem supra diximus, decanus, sed et Hartmannus,
moreover whom above we-mentioned dean but also Hartmann
qui abbas noster factus est, quas fecerant laudes, sua
who abbot our made was what they-had-made praises their
nomina quia preferuntur in cantilenarum libellis, studiose
names because are-set-before in of-songs the-little-books studiously
transimus, preter quod Waltrammi sequentia: Sollempnitatem
we-pass-over except that of-Waltram the-sequence Sollempnitatem
hujus devoti filii ecclesie sine ejus nomine scribitur. Fecerat
hujus devoti filii ecclesie without his name is-written had-made
et Hartmannus minor quedam, que, utrius sint,
also Hartmann the-younger certain-things which of-which-of-the-two they-be
equivocatio dubia facit. Erant vero et alii quidam nostratium,
the-equivocation doubtful makes were but also others certain of-our-people
qui sequentias et tropos nec non et alia quedam plura
who sequences and tropes and also and other certain more-things
pro studio quisque suo fecerant opera, quos loco suo
for zeal each his-own had-made works whom in-place its
memoraturi singulorum singula narranda servamus.
about-to-recall of-each the-several-things to-be-related we-reserve

Capitula 47–49

HARTMANN AND THE ROMAN CHANT

Abbot Hartmann keeps the cloister strict and the authentic antiphonary. Charlemagne had asked Pope Adrian for Roman singers; Peter went to Metz, but Romanus, falling sick, stayed at Saint Gall with an antiphonary, and the two houses vied in chant and learning. Romanus set up a cantarium like Rome's and devised the letters that mark the notes. Under Hartmann the stewards of the outer estates take up arms and hunting; his successor Engilbert cannot rule them. The dying King Conrad sends his brother Eberhard with the crown to Henry of Saxony, who is made king.

Hartmannum post Salomonem privilegio electionis patres
Hartmann after Salomon by-the-privilege of-election the-fathers
acceperant abbatem. De quo quoniam proprium ejus sui
had-received as-abbot about whom since own his of-his
temporis libellum habemus, plura scribere supersedemus. Erat
time a-little-book we-have more to-write we-refrain he-was
tamen, ut a patribus audivimus, præter sapientiæ doctrinalem
however as from the-fathers we-have-heard besides of-wisdom doctrinal
dotem religionis tenacissimus, claustro sepius manens,
the-dowry of-religion most-tenacious in-the-cloister more-often remaining
quæ deforis in locis suis agerentur, minus sollicitus,
what-things outside in places his were-done less anxious
magisque suos habere passus, quam se; quæ sibi
and-more his-people to-have having-allowed than himself what-things to-him
suppares in manus dare vellent regratiando contentus, solius
nearly-equal into hands to-give they-wished thanking content of-the-sole
disciplinæ patrum more investitor et severus exactor.
of-discipline of-the-fathers in-the-manner an-investor and severe exacter
Doctrinas vero ita amabat, ut inter scolas et claustrum aut
teachings but so he-loved that between the-schools and the-cloister either

nihil, aut parum intersit. In victu fratrum et vestitu
nothing or little there-be-a-difference in the-food of-the-brothers and clothing
Hartmuoti statuta secutus; maxime autem authenticum
of-Hartmut the-statutes following most moreover the-authentic
antiphonarium docere et melodias Romano more tenere
antiphonary to-teach and the-melodies in-the-Roman manner to-keep
sollicitus, de quo antiphonario altiora repetere operæ
anxious about which antiphonary higher-things to-repeat of-the-work
precium putamus. — Karolus imperator cognomine Magnus
worth we-think Charles the-emperor by-surname the-Great
cum esset Rome, æcclesias cisalpinas videns Romanæ
when he-was at-Rome the-churches cisalpine seeing from-the-Roman
æcclesiæ multimodis in cantu, ut et Johannes scribit,
church in-many-ways in chant as also John writes
dissonare, rogat papam tunc secundo quidem Adrianum,
to-differ asks the-pope then the-second indeed Adrian
cum defuncti essent, quos ante Gregorius miserat, ut
since dead were those-whom before Gregory had-sent that
item mittat Romanos cantuum gnaros in Franciam.
likewise he-might-send Romans of-chants skilled into Francia
Mittuntur secundum regis peticionem Petrus et Romanus,
are-sent according-to of-the-king the-petition Peter and Romanus
et cantuum et septem liberalium artium paginis admodum
both in-chants and of-the-seven liberal arts in-the-pages very
imbuti, Metensem æcclesiam, ut priores, adituri. Qui cum
imbued to-the-Metz church as the-former about-to-go who when
in Septimo lacuque Cumano aëre Romanis contrario
on the-Septimer and-on-the-lake of-Como by-the-air to-Romans hostile
quaterentur, Romanus febre correptus vix ad nos usque
they-were-shaken Romanus by-fever seized scarcely to us all-the-way
venire potuit. Antiphonarium vero secum, Petro renitente,
to-come could the-antiphonary but with-him with-Peter resisting

vellet nollet, cum duos haberet, unum sancto Gallo attulit.
willing unwilling since two he-had one to-Saint Gall brought
In tempore autem, Domino se juvante, convaluit. Mittit
in time moreover with-the-Lord him helping he-recovered sends
imperator celerem quendam, qui eum, si convalesceret,
the-emperor a-swift-one certain who him if he-recovered
nobiscum stare nosque instruere juberet. Quod ille quidem
with-us to-stay and-us to-instruct should-bid which he indeed
patrum hospitalitati regratiando libentissime fecit: Quatuor,
of-the-fathers the-hospitality thanking most-willingly did four
inquiens, mercedes vos sancti Domini in me uno acquisistis.
saying rewards you saints of-the-Lord in me one have-acquired
Hospes erat, et in me eum collegistis; infirmus, et visitastis;
a-stranger he-was and in me him you-took-in sick and you-visited
esurivit in me, et dedistis mihi in eo manducare; sitivit,
he-hungered in me and you-gave to-me in him to-eat he-thirsted
et dedistis ei bibere. Dein uterque, fama volante studium
and you-gave to-him to-drink then each with-fame flying the-zeal
alter alterius cum audisset, emulabantur pro laude et
one of-the-other when he-had-heard they-vied for praise and
gloria naturali gentis suæ more, ut alterum transcenderet.
glory by-the-natural of-race his manner that the-other he-might-surpass
Memoriaque est dignum, quantum hac emulatione locus
and-of-memory it-is worthy how-much by-this rivalry place
uterque profecerit et non solum in cantu, sed et in cæteris
each profited and not only in chant but also in other
doctrinis excreverit. Fecerat quidem Petrus ibi jubilos ad
teachings grew had-made indeed Peter there jubili for
sequentias, quas Metenses vocat. Romanus vero Romanæ
the-sequences which Metensian he-calls Romanus but Romana
nobis econtra et Amœnæ de suo jubilos modulaverat,
for-us in-turn and Amoena of his-own jubili had-set-to-music

quos quidem post Notker, quibus videmus, verbis ligabat;
which indeed afterward Notker with-which we-see words bound
Frigdoræ autem et Occidentanæ, quas sic nominabat, jubilos,
Frigdora moreover and Occidentana which so he-named jubili
illis animatus, ætiam ipse de suo excogitavit. Romanus
by-those inspired also himself of his-own devised Romanus
vero, quasi nostra præ Metensibus extollere fas fuerit,
but as-if ours before the-Metensian-ones to-extol right it-were
Romanæ sedis honorem sancti Galli cœnobio ita quidem
of-the-Roman see the-honor of-Saint Gall to-the-monastery so indeed
inferre curavit. Erat Romæ instrumentum quoddam et theca
to-bring took-care there-was at-Rome an-instrument certain and a-case
ad antiphonarii authentici publicam omnibus adventantibus
for of-the-antiphonary authentic public for-all arriving
inspectionem repositorium, quod a cantu nominabant
inspection a-repository which from chant they-named
cantarium. Tale quidem ipse apud nos ad instar illius
the-cantarium such indeed he-himself among us after the-likeness of-that
circa aram apostolorum cum authentico locari fecit, quem
near the-altar of-the-apostles with the-authentic to-be-placed made which
ipse attulit exemplato antiphonario; in quo usque hodie in
he-himself brought with-the-copied antiphonary in which until today in
cantu si quid dissentitur, quasi in speculo error ejusmodi
chant if anything is-disputed as-if in a-mirror error of-that-kind
universus corrigitur. In ipso quoque primus ille literas
all is-corrected in it also first he the-letters
alphabeti significativas notulis, quibus visum est, aut
of-the-alphabet significative to-the-little-notes to-which seen it-was either
susum, aut jusum, aut ante, aut retro, assignari excogitavit,
up or down or before or behind to-be-assigned devised
quas postea cuidam amice quærenti Notker Balbulus
which afterward to-a-certain in-friendly-fashion asking Notker the-Stammerer

dilucidavit, cum et Martianus, quem de Nuptiis miramur,
explained since also Martianus whom on the-Nuptials we-admire
virtutes earum scribere molitus sit.
the-powers of-them to-write attempted has
Hartmannus autem paucos annos cum præfuerit, in
Hartmann moreover a-few years when he-had-presided in
maximo nostratium luctu diem obiit, claustrumque nostrum
the-greatest of-our-people mourning the-day met and-cloister our
disciplinæ patrum tenacissimus sectator doctrinæque assiduus
of-the-discipline of-the-fathers a-most-tenacious follower and-of-learning assiduous
inculcator reliquit celeberrimum, preter quod terras colentium
inculcator left most-thronged except that the-lands of-those-tilling
et secularis rei curas gerentium non sine damno loci
and of-the-secular thing the-cares bearing not without loss of-the-place
minus exilis exactor erat. Enimvero eo claustri solius
less sparing an-exacter he-was indeed with-him of-the-cloister alone
gubernacula curante et præpositis religionem, quam docuit,
the-helms caring-for and with-the-provosts the-religion which he-taught
etiam deforis in sancta simplicitate artissime servantibus,
also outside in holy simplicity most-strictly keeping
majores locorum, de quibus scriptum est, quia servi, si non
the-greater of-the-places about whom written it-is that servants if not
timent, tument, scuta et arma polita gestare incœperant;
they-fear swell shields and arms polished to-bear had-begun
tubas alio, quam cæteri villani, clanctu inflare didicerant;
trumpets with-other than the-other villagers sound to-blow had-learned
canes primo ad lepores, postremo ætiam non ad lupos,
dogs first for hares at-last also not for wolves
sed ad ursos, et ad Tuscos, ut quidam ait, minandos
but for bears and for Tuscan as a-certain-one says to-be-driven
aluerant apros. Cellararii, ajunt, curtes et agros excolant;
had-reared boars the-cellarers they-say the-courts and the-fields let-cultivate

nos beneficia nostra curemus et venatui, ut viros decet,
we benefices our let-us-tend and to-hunting as men befits
indulgeamus! His bonis florentem rempublicam nostram
let-us-indulge with-these goods flourishing commonwealth our
hisque malis Hartmannus obiens reliquerat periclitantem.
and-with-these evils Hartmann dying had-left imperiled
Defuncto Hartmanno Engilbertus eligitur Chuonradoque
with-dead Hartmann Engilbert is-elected and-to-Conrad
dirigitur, quæm ille omni honore dignatum sancti Galli fecit
is-directed whom he with-all honor honored of-Saint Gall made
esse vicarium, brevique supervivens tempore defunctus est et
to-be the-vicar and-a-short surviving time dead was also
ipse. At Engilbertus loca foras monasterium minus culta
himself but Engilbert the-places outside the-monastery less cultivated
colere incipiens, majores, quos diximus, talium desueti,
to-cultivate beginning the-greater whom we-mentioned of-such-things unaccustomed
minus ei obtemperabant. Atque ille his atque aliis multis
less him obeyed and he by-these and other many
afflictus infortuniis, quæ et sibi per se, et defuncto
afflicted misfortunes which both to-himself by himself and with-dead
Chuonrado totius regni imminebant cervicibus, domi
Conrad of-the-whole kingdom were-overhanging the-necks at-home
residens tristis finem rei jejunans cum suis et orans
staying sad the-end of-the-matter fasting with his-people and praying
exspectabat. Cujus rei seriem breviatim dicere ad trajediam
awaited of-which thing the-series briefly to-tell for tragedy
nostram explicandam utile duxi. — Chuonradus rex
our to-be-unfolded useful I-have-judged Conrad the-king
virili prole carens, Eburhardum autem fratrem habens ad
of-male offspring lacking Eberhard moreover as-brother having to
regni gubernacula, si sibi superviveret, aspirantem, sensit
of-the-kingdom the-helms if him he-survived aspiring perceived

eum nec regno virtute quidem habilem, nec populo
him neither for-the-kingdom in-virtue indeed fit nor to-the-people
moribus acceptum; rogantemque, cum ipse jam senesceret,
in-manners acceptable and-asking when he-himself now grew-old
ut se populo commendaret, crebro frustravit. Incipiens
that him to-the-people he-should-commend often disappointed beginning
autem mori clam loquitur fratri: Video, ait, germane mi!
moreover to-die secretly he-speaks to-(his)-brother I-see he-says brother my
et semper vidi, te a populo nolle accipi, ideoque,
and always I-saw you by the-people to-be-unwilling to-be-accepted and-therefore
quod sepe rogaras, ne te contristarem, tacite distuli.
what often you-had-asked lest you I-should-sadden silently I-deferred
Consilium autem meum si nunc feceris, ut in Deum
the-counsel moreover my if now you-shall-have-followed as in God
spero, inglorius non eris. Est in Saxonia, cui neminem
I-hope inglorious not you-will-be there-is in Saxony to-whom no-one
in regno equiparem scio, Henrich quippe comes, Mathilda
in the-kingdom equal I-know Henry indeed the-count by-Matilda
conjuge clarus. Sumens ergo coronam et sceptrum nocte
(his)-wife famous taking therefore the-crown and the-scepter by-night
dieque accelera ad ipsum teque et regnum ei meis
and-by-day hasten to him and-yourself and the-kingdom to-him with-my
verbis in manus dato et mei in te memores fore ambos
words into hands give and of-me in you mindful to-be both
rogato. Fecit igitur, ut rex jusserat, veniensque secretum
ask he-did therefore as the-king had-bidden and-coming a-private
comitis petiit alloquium. Eliminatis omnibus ipse hostium
of-the-count sought conversation with-put-out all he-himself the-door
clausit, clamideque exuta ad pedes viro corruens
shut and-with-the-cloak stripped-off at the-feet to-the-man falling
nimis stupenti coronam et sceptrum detegit, et quæ jussus
much astonished the-crown and the-scepter uncovers and what bidden

est, narrat. Cui ille, inter cætera, si secum in fide,
he-was relates to-whom he among other-things if with-himself in the-faith
qua dixerat, sentire vellet, omnia quæ tanto nuntio
in-which he-had-said to-feel he-would-wish all-things which so-great a-message
decerent, facturum spoponderat. Et ne per longas ambages
befitted about-to-do had-promised and lest through long windings
vadam, fit colloquium publicum; Henricus Saxonum
I-go there-is-made a-colloquy public Henry of-the-Saxons
et Francorum consensu elevatur et ungitur in regnum.
and of-the-Franks by-consent is-raised and is-anointed into the-kingdom

Capitula 50–53

THE HUNGARIANS AND HERIBALD

Giselbert and Eberhard rebel against King Henry and are killed at Breisach by Kurzibold, who also killed a lion. Duke Burchard of Swabia plunders Saint Gall's estates and treasure and dies on his way to Italy. When the Hungarians overrun Alemannia, Abbot Engilbert arms the brothers and fortifies a castle on the Sitter, carrying the church's treasure into its chapel and sending the books to Reichenau and the old men and boys to Wasserburg. Only the simple Heribald, who has not been given his leather for shoes, stays behind; the Hungarians spare him as a fool, two of them die falling from the church's tower and roof, and the wine casks are left because he asks it.

Sed postea dux Lotharingorum Kisilbertus Eburhardum
but afterward the-duke of-the-Lotharingians Giselbert Eberhard
castigatum, cur honorem suum alieno dedisset, regi
rebuked why honor his to-a-stranger he-had-given against-the-king
Saxonico rebellare secumque sentire persuasit. Surgunt ambo
Saxon to-rebel and-with-himself to-side persuaded rise both
in arma. Ducibus Suevo et Norico literas mittunt. Quibus
into arms to-the-dukes Swabian and Noric letters they-send whom

secum sentire jam motis, quadam die cum collectas in armis
with-them to-side already moved on-a-certain day when the-gathered in arms
apud Prisacham copias navibus transposuissent ipsique
at Breisach forces in-ships they-had-carried-across and-they-themselves
interea in litoris planitiæ luderent tabula, Chuono quidam
meanwhile on of-the-shore the-flat were-playing at-the-board Kuno a-certain
regii generis, Churzibolt a brevitate cognominatus, fortuitu
of-royal race Kurzibold from shortness surnamed by-chance
viginti militibus stipatus viros incurrit, Kisilbertum cum
with-twenty soldiers surrounded the-men attacks Giselbert with
omnibus, qui in nave erant, quam insilivit, lancea infixa
all who in the-ship were onto-which he-leapt with-lance fixed
submersit; Eburhardum levitatis increpatum gladio in
sank Eberhard of-levity rebuked with-the-sword on
litore occidit. Erat quidem angusto in pectore audax et fortis,
the-shore killed he-was indeed in-narrow in breast bold and strong
qui leonem cavea effracta se et regem solos inventos
who a-lion from-the-cage broken himself and the-king alone found
in consilio insilientem, rege, grandi quidem viro, gladium,
in council leaping-upon with-the-king great indeed man the-sword
quem Chuono tunc, ut moris est, gerebat, arripere volente,
which Kuno then as of-custom it-is bore to-seize wishing
ipse præsiliens incunctanter occidit. Diffamatur longe
he-himself leaping-forward without-delay killed it-is-reported far
lateque, Henrici regis militem leonem se insilientem
and-wide of-Henry of-the-king a-soldier a-lion on-himself leaping
gladio occidisse. Mulieres ille et mala arborum naturali
with-the-sword to-have-killed women he and the-fruits of-trees with-natural
sibi quodam odio adeo execratus est, ut, ubi in itinere
to-himself a-certain hatred so-much detested has that where on the-road
utrumvis inveniret, mansionem facere nollet. Multa
either he-found a-halt to-make he-would-not many-things

sunt, quæ de illo concinnantur et canuntur, quæ, quia
there-are which about him are-composed and are-sung which because
ad nos redeundum est, præterimus, nisi quod provocatorem
to us to-be-returned it-is we-pass-over except that a-challenger
Sclavum, giganteæ molis hominem, e castro regis
Slav of-giant bulk a-man from the-camp of-the-king
prorumpens novus David lancea pro lapide straverat. —
bursting-forth a-new David with-a-lance for a-stone had-laid-low
Purchardus autem dux Suevorum, Sueviam quasi tyrannice
Burchard moreover the-duke of-the-Swabians Swabia as-if tyrannically
regens, prestationes Engilbertum abbatem primo militibus
ruling payments from-Engilbert the-abbot first for-soldiers
suis petivit; postea utique, quod cum rege Saxonico
his sought afterward surely because with the-king Saxon
sentiret, insimulatum, quæcunque loca sancti Galli sui rapere
he-sided charged whatever places of-Saint Gall his to-snatch
vellent, patienter tulit, et nisi preciis gazophilatii
they-might-wish patiently bore and unless with-the-treasures of-the-treasury
ejus redempta, nulla reddi fecit; inter quæ calicem
his redeemed none to-be-returned caused among which chalice
illum aureum, Adalberonis episcopi donum, cum dari
that golden of-Adalbero the-bishop the-gift when to-be-given
sibi consentiret, et crucem, a sancta Wiborada correptus,
to-him he-consented and the-cross by Saint Wiborada rebuked
uxori verbis simulatis, ut ajunt, uti redderet, jussit;
to-(his)-wife with-words feigned as they-say that she-should-return bade
reque infecta ad Italiam, ut et ejus regem secum
and-with-the-thing undone to Italy that also its king with-himself
sentire faceret, properans, beata illa ei mortem
to-side he-might-make hastening with-blessed that-one to-him death

pro avaritia præsagiente, equo ruens periit. Quæ
for avarice foreseeing from-(his)-horse falling perished which-things
quia alibi plenius sunt scripta, hic libasse sufficiat.
because elsewhere more-fully are written here to-have-touched-on let-it-suffice
Engilbertus vero, ut, unde digressi sumus, redeamus, ad
Engilbert but that whence digressed we-have we-may-return to
Henricum venit, abbatiam ab eo suscipiens fidem juravit,
Henry came the-abbey from him receiving fealty swore
omnique honore ab eo dimissus domum ad majora adhuc
and-with-all honor by him dismissed home to greater still
infortunia rediit. Nam Ungri, auditis tempestatibus
misfortunes returned for the-Hungarians having-heard-of the-storms
regni, Noricos rabidi invadunt et vastant, Augustaque
of-the-kingdom the-Norici rabid invade and lay-waste and-from-Augsburg
diu obsessa, precibus Uodalrici episcopi, sanctissimi quidem
long besieged by-the-prayers of-Ulrich the-bishop most-holy indeed
inter omnes tunc temporis viri, repulsi Alemanniam nemine
among all then of-time man driven-back Alemannia with-no-one
vetante turmatim pervadunt. At Engilbertus, quam idoneus
forbidding in-troops overrun but Engilbert how fit
ad mala toleranda quidem fuerit, impiger ostendit. Nam
for evils to-be-borne indeed he-was tireless showed for
malis his imminentibus, militum suorum unoquoque pro
with-evils these overhanging of-soldiers his each for
semet ipso sollicito, validiores fratrum arma sumere jubet,
him himself anxious the-stronger of-the-brothers arms to-take he-bids
familiam roborat; ipse velud Domini gigans lorica
the-household strengthens he-himself as-if of-the-Lord a-giant in-a-breastplate
indutus, cucullam superinduens et stolam, ipsos eadem facere
clothed the-cowl putting-over and the-stole them the-same to-do
jubet. Contra diabolum, ait, fratres mei, quam hactenus
he-bids against the-devil he-says brothers my as until-now

animis in Deo confisi pugnaverimus, ut nunc manibus
with-minds in God trusting we-have-fought that now with-hands
ostendere valeamus, ab ipso petamus! Fabricantur spicula;
to-show we-may-be-able from him let-us-seek are-made darts
piltris loricæ fiunt; fundibula plectuntur; tabulis compactis
with-felt breastplates are-made slings are-plaited with-boards joined
et wannis scuta simulantur; sparrones et fustes acute
and with-winnowing-fans shields are-imitated spears and cudgels sharply
focis prædurantur. Sed primo fratrum quidam et familiæ,
in-fires are-hardened but at-first of-the-brothers some and of-the-household
famæ increduli, fugere nolunt. Eligitur tamen locus
to-the-report unbelieving to-flee are-unwilling is-chosen however a-place
velut a Deo in promptu oblatus ad arcem parandam circa
as-if by God in readiness offered for a-fort to-be-prepared by
fluvium Sinttriaunum, quem sanctus Gallus quondam sanctæ
the-river Sitter which Saint Gall once of-the-holy
trinitatis amore de tribus fluviis in unum confluentibus
trinity from-love from three rivers into one flowing-together
sic equivocasse fertur. Præmunitur in artissimo
so to-have-named-ambiguously is-said is-fortified-in-advance in the-narrowest
collo vallo et silva excisis locus fitque castellum,
neck with-a-rampart and forest cut the-place and-becomes a-castle
ut sanctæ trinitati decuit, fortissimum. Convehuntur raptim,
as to-the-holy trinity befitted most-strong are-brought-together hastily
quæque essent necessaria. Hæc in vita Wiboradæ
whatever-things were necessary these-things in the-life of-Wiborada
per scriptorem ejus minus dicta, a fratribus, qui hæc
by writer her less said by the-brothers who these-things
noverant, docti perstrinximus. Capella citata fit oratorium,
knew taught we-have-touched-on the-chapel hurried becomes an-oratory
in quod invehuntur cruces et cum diptitiis capsæ, necnon
into which are-carried crosses and with diptychs reliquaries and-also

et pene omnis præter libros repositorios æcclesiæ thesaurus.
also almost all except the-books stored of-the-church the-treasure
Illos abbas Augiam, non satis tuto tamen, commiserat;
those the-abbot to-Reichenau not enough safely however had-entrusted
nam cum reportarentur, ut ajunt, numerus conveniebat,
for when they-were-brought-back as they-say the-number agreed
non ipsi. Senes cum pueris in Wazzirburc tuitioni
not they-themselves the-old-men with the-boys in Wasserburg for-protection
dedit, quam cum familia, quæ trans lacum erat, sollicite
gave which with the-household which across the-lake was carefully
firmavit. Quibus ætiam, ut navibus quidem crebrius inessent,
he-fortified to-whom also that in-ships indeed more-often might-be-in
victualia secum assumere jussit.
victuals with-them to-take he-bade
Ibant exploratores per nota sibi loca nocte dieque,
went scouts through known to-them places by-night and-by-day
adventum hostium fratribus sanctum Gallum unquam a
the-arrival of-the-enemies to-the-brothers Saint Gall ever by
barbaris invadi nimis incredulis, ut ad castellum fugerent,
barbarians to-be-invaded too unbelieving that to the-castle they-should-flee
prædicturi. Engilbertus enim et ipse talibus assentiens
about-to-foretell Engilbert for also himself to-such-things assenting
pene sero carissimas sancti Galli res castello intulit, unde
almost late the-dearest of-Saint Gall things into-the-castle brought whence
et ciborium Otmari relictum est hostibus. Nam hostes
also the-ciborium of-Othmar left was to-the-enemies for the-enemies
non simul ibant; sed turmatim, quia nemo restiterat, urbes
not together went but in-troops because no-one had-resisted cities
villasque invaserant et spoliatas cremaverant, ideoque
and-villages they-had-invaded and despoiled had-burned and-therefore
improvisi, qua vellent, imparatos insiliebant. Silvis quoque
unforeseen where they-wished the-unprepared they-leapt-upon from-forests also

centeni vel minus interdum latentes eruperant; fumus tamen
a-hundred or fewer sometimes lying-hid had-burst-out the-smoke however
et cœlum ignibus rubens, ubi essent turmæ quæque, innotuit.
and the-sky with-fires reddening where were troops each made-known
Erat autem tunc inter nostrates frater quidam simplicissimus
there-was moreover then among our-people a-brother certain most-simple
et fatuus, cujus dicta et facta sepe ridebantur, nomine
and foolish whose words and deeds often were-laughed-at by-name
Heribaldus. Huic cum ad castellum fratres primo pergerent,
Heribald to-this-one when to the-castle the-brothers first were-proceeding
ut et ipse fugeret, cum terrore quidam dicerent: Enimvero,
that also himself he-should-flee with terror some said indeed
ait ille, fugiat, qui velit; ego quidem, quoniam corium meum
says he let-flee who wishes I indeed since leather my
ad calceos camerarius hoc anno non dedit, nusquam fugiam.
for shoes the-chamberlain this year not gave nowhere shall-flee
Cum autem illum fratres, ut secum pergeret, in novissimo
when moreover him the-brothers that with-them he-should-proceed at the-last
articulo vi cogere vellent, multa reluctatus, nisi annotinum
moment by-force to-compel wished much having-resisted unless of-last-year
corium sibi ad manus daretur, nusquam se juravit
leather to-him into hands were-given nowhere himself swore
iturum. Sicque Ungros ingruentes imperterritus exspectabat.
about-to-go and-so the-Hungarians bearing-down undaunted he-awaited
Fugiunt tandem pene sero fratres cum aliis incredulis
flee at-last almost late the-brothers with others unbelieving
horridicis vocibus, hostes instanter irruere, perculsi; sed
by-horror-telling voices the-enemies urgently to-rush-in struck but
ipse intrepidus in sententia permanens otiose deambulabat.
he-himself fearless in (his)-opinion remaining idly strolled

Ingruunt tandem pharetrati illi, pilis minantibus et
bear-down at-last quivered those with-javelins threatening and
spiculis asperi. Locum omnem perscrutantur solliciti; nulli
with-darts fierce the-place all they-search-through anxious for-no
sexui vel ætati certum est misereri. Inveniunt solum illum
sex or age certain it-is to-have-mercy they-find alone him
in medio stantem intrepidum. Quid velit curque
in the-middle standing fearless what he-might-wish and-why
non fugerit mirati, ferro interim parcere necatoribus
not he-had-fled wondering from-the-sword meanwhile to-spare with-the-killers
jussis, primipilares per interpretes interrogantes, fatuitatis
bidden the-chief-centurions through interpreters questioning of-foolishness
monstrum ubi sentiunt, omnes illi risibiles parcunt. Aram
a-monster when they-perceive all they laughing spare the-altar
lapideam sancti Galli, quod prius crebro talibus frustrati
stone of-Saint Gall because before often by-such-things frustrated
nihil intus, nisi ossa vel cineres cum invenissent, nec
nothing inside except bones or ashes when they-had-found not-even
tangere curant. Requirunt tandem a fatuo suo, ubi
to-touch they-care they-require at-last from fool their where
thesaurus loci sit conditus. Quos cum ille alacer ad
the-treasure of-the-place is hidden whom when he eagerly to
gazophilatii duceret occultum ostiolum, effracto illo nihil
of-the-treasury he-led the-hidden little-door with-broken that nothing
ibi, nisi candelabra et coronas deauratas reperientes, quas
there except candelabra and crowns gilded finding which
in fugam festinantes reliquerant, deceptori suo alapas dare
into flight hastening they-had-left on-deceiver their slaps to-give
palmis intentant. Duo ex illis ascendunt campanarium,
with-palms they-make-to two of them climb the-bell-tower
cujus cacuminis gallum aureum putantes deumque loci,
of-whose top the-cock golden thinking and-god of-the-place

sic vocatum, non esse nisi carioris metalli materia
so called not to-be except of-dearer metal from-the-material
fusum, lancea dum unus, ut eum revellat, se validus
cast with-a-lance while one that it he-might-tear-off himself strong
protendit, in atrium de alto cecidit et periit. Alter
stretches-out into the-forecourt from on-high fell and perished the-other
interea in dedecus fani dei ipsius ad summum
meanwhile into dishonor of-the-shrine of-the-god itself to the-top
pinnaculi orientalis veniens, dum ad alvum se parasset
of-the-pinnacle eastern coming while for the-bowel himself he-had-prepared
purgandum, retrorsum cadens totus confractus est. Quos
to-be-purged backward falling wholly broken was whom
ambos, ut Heribolt post retulit, inter postes valvarum
both as Heribald afterward reported between the-posts of-the-doors
dum cremassent rogusque flammivomus superliminare et
while they-were-burning and-the-pyre flame-vomiting the-lintel and
laquear vehementer invaderet contisque incendia certatim
the-ceiling vehemently invaded and-with-poles fires eagerly
plures miscerent, nequaquam templum Galli, sicut nec
many mixed by-no-means the-temple of-Gall as nor
Magni, incendere quiverant. Erant autem in cellario fratrum
of-Magnus to-set-on-fire could were moreover in the-cellar of-the-brothers
communi duo vasa vinaria usque ad sigillos adhuc plena. Quæ
common two vessels for-wine up to the-seals still full which
quia in articulo illo nemo boves jungere aut minare est ausus,
because at moment that no-one oxen to-yoke or to-drive has dared
ita sunt relicta. Hæc vero, nescio quo loci fortunio,
so are left these but I-know-not by-what of-the-place good-fortune
nisi quod talibus in vehiculis prædarum habundaverant,
except that with-such in vehicles of-plunder they-had-abounded
hostium nullus aperuit. Nam cum quidam illorum ascia
of-the-enemies none opened for when a-certain-one of-them with-an-axe

vibrata unum retinaculorum succideret, Heribaldus inter eos
brandished one of-the-hoops cut Heribald among them
jam domestice versatus: Sine, inquit, vir bone! Quid vis
now familiarly moving let-be he-says man good what do-you-wish
vero, ut nos, postquam abieritis, bibamus? Quod ille
indeed that we after you-shall-have-gone-away may-drink which he
per interpretem audiens et cachinnans socios ne fatui
through an-interpreter hearing and laughing (his)-companions lest of-the-fool
sui vascula tangerent, rogavit. Sicque usque ad abbatis
his the-little-vessels they-should-touch asked and-so until to of-the-abbot
conspectum, Ungris locum deserentibus, sunt servata.
the-sight with-the-Hungarians the-place deserting are kept

Capitula 54–57

THE HUNGARIANS AT SAINT GALL AND ULRICH'S YOUTH

The Hungarians, having killed Wiborada, feast in the cloister, and Heribald and a captured cleric are made to sing; as the cleric is about to be tortured, scouts report the castle, and the raiders burn some houses and leave by the Constance road. The castle men cut down stragglers; Engilbert creeps back to the monastery and finds the casks unbroken, and the two captives return to the castle. Ulrich, later bishop of Augsburg, is schooled at Saint Gall, and Wiborada girds him with a linen girdle against the fire of the flesh.

Exploratores autem, qui silvas et quæque latentia
scouts moreover who the-forests and all hidden-places
sollicitissime scrutarentur, certatim illi mittunt; eos, si quid
most-carefully might-search eagerly they send them if anything
novi referant, operiuntur. Sparguntur tandem, Wiborada
of-new they-may-report they-await are-scattered at-last Wiborada
jam passa, per atrium et prata ad prandia copiosa.
already martyred through the-forecourt and the-meadows to luncheons plentiful

Cyborium quoque sancti Otmari argento vestitum nudant, quod
the-ciborium also of-Saint Othmar with-silver clothed they-strip which
repente invasi fugientes asportare non poterant. Primipilares
suddenly attacked fleeing to-carry-off not they-could the-chief-centurions
quidem claustri planitiem tenentes omni copia convivantur.
indeed of-the-cloister the-flat holding with-all plenty feast
Heribaldus ætiam coram illis plus quam unquam, ut ipse
Heribald also before them more than ever as he-himself
postea dicebat, saturatus est. Cumque more suo super viride
afterward said sated was and-when in-manner their upon the-green
fœnum singuli ad prandendum absque sedilibus recumberent,
hay each for lunching without seats they-reclined
ipse sibi et clerico cuidam præda capto sellulas
he-himself for-himself and for-a-cleric certain in-plunder captured little-stools
posuit. Ipsi vero cum armos et cæteras victimarum
set they-themselves but when the-shoulders and other of-the-victims
portiones semicrudas absque cultellis dentibus laniando
portions half-raw without little-knives with-teeth tearing
vorassent, ossa obæsa inter se unus quidem in alterum
they-had-devoured bones gnawed among themselves one indeed at another
ludicro jecerant. Vinum quoque plenis cubbis in medio
in-jest had-thrown the-wine also in-full vats in the-middle
positum sine discretione, quantum quemque libuerat, hausit.
placed without distinction as-much-as each it-pleased drank
Postquam vero mero incaluerant, horridissime diis suis
after but with-wine they-had-grown-hot most-horribly to-gods their
omnes vociferabant. Clericum vero et fatuum suum id ipsum
all shouted the-cleric but and fool their that very
facere coëgerant. Clericus autem linguæ bene eorum sciolus,
to-do had-compelled the-cleric moreover of-tongue well their knowing
propter quod ætiam eum vitæ servaverant, cum eis valenter
on-account-of which also him for-life they-had-kept with them strongly

clamabat. Cumque jam satis lingua illorum insanisset,
shouted and-when now enough in-the-tongue of-them he-had-raved
antiphonam de sancta cruce, cujus postera die inventio erat:
the-antiphon about the-holy cross of-which on-the-next day the-finding was
Sanctifica nos lacrimans incœperat, quam Heribaldus cum
Sanctifica nos weeping had-begun which Heribald with
eo, quamvis voce raucosus, et ipse decantabat. Conveniunt
him although in-voice hoarse also himself sang-through gather
omnes, qui aderant, ad insolitum captivorum cantum, et
all who were-present at the-unusual of-the-captives song and
effusa lætitia saltant coram principibus et luctantur.
with-poured-out gladness dance before the-princes and wrestle
Quidam ætiam armis concurrentes, quantum disciplinæ bellicæ
some also in-arms running-together how-much of-discipline warlike
nossent, ostenderant. Interea clericus ille pro relaxatione sua
they-knew had-shown meanwhile cleric that for release his
rogandi tempus oportunum in tali alacritate arbitratus, sanctæ
of-asking the-time opportune in such eagerness judging of-the-holy
crucis implorans adjutorium, provolvitur miser principum cum
cross imploring the-help rolls-forward wretched of-the-princes with
lacrimis pedibus. At illi nimis effero spiritu sibilis et quasi
tears at-the-feet but they with-too wild spirit with-hisses and as-if
grunnitu horrido satellitibus, quid velint, insinuant, illique
with-grunting horrid to-the-attendants what they-wish insinuate and-they
rabidi advolant, hominem dicto cicius corripiunt, cultellos,
rabid fly-at the-man than-said quicker seize little-knives
ut ludicrum, quod Teutones picchin vocant, in coronam ejus
that a-game which the-Germans picchin call on tonsure his
facerent, antequam capite illum plecterent, exigunt.
they-might-make before with-head him they-should-punish they-demand

Interim dum talia parant, exploratores in silva, quæ
meanwhile while such-things they-prepare the-scouts in the-forest which
castellum vergit, subitanea tubarum et vocum significatione
toward-the-castle slopes with-sudden of-trumpets and of-voices signal
accelerant. Castellum cum armatis legionibus obfirmatum in
hasten the-castle with armed legions fortified in
proximo sibimet esse asserunt, clerico ibi et Heribaldo
the-near to-themselves to-be they-assert with-the-cleric there and Heribald
relictis solis in claustro, celeres pro se quisque viri foras
left alone in the-cloister swift for himself each the-men outside
festinant et, ut assueti erant, priusquam quis credat,
hasten and as accustomed they-were before anyone could-believe
parati in acie stabant. Audita autem castelli natura, quod
ready in battle-line stood with-heard moreover of-the-castle the-nature that
obsideri non possit, locum autem longo collo et artissimo
to-be-besieged not it-could the-place moreover by-a-long neck and very-narrow
impugnantibus maximo damno certoque periculo adibilem,
for-the-attackers with-greatest loss and-certain danger approachable
tutores ejus suæ multitudini, dum victualia habeant,
the-guardians its to-their multitude while victuals they-had
modo viri sint, nunquam cessuros, monasterio, eo quod
provided-only men they-be never about-to-yield with-the-monastery for-this because
Gallus, deus ejus, ignipotens sit, tandem omisso, villæ
Gall the-god its fire-mighty is at-last given-up of-the-village
domos, ut videre possint, — nam nox proxima erat
the-houses that to-see they-might-be-able for the-night near was
— aliquas incendunt et silentio tubis et vocibus indicto
some they-burn and with-silence by-trumpets and voices proclaimed
via, quæ Constanciam ducit, abeunt. Castellani autem
by-the-road which to-Constance leads they-go-away the-castle-men moreover
cum monasterium ardere putassent, abitu eorum
when the-monastery to-burn they-had-thought with-the-departure their

comperto, per compendia eos insecuti exploratores de
discovered by short-cuts them having-followed the-scouts from
longe multitudinem prosecutos in faciem aggressi, quosdam
afar the-multitude having-followed in face attacking some
occidunt; unum autem vulneratum captum aveunt; ceteri
they-kill one moreover wounded captured they-carry-off the-rest
vix fuga lapsi multitudini tubis, ut caveant,
scarcely by-flight escaped to-the-multitude with-trumpets that they-should-beware
significant. At illi campos et planitiem, quam citissime
signal but they the-fields and the-plain as quickly-as
poterant, optinentes aciemque, prout copia esset, alacriter
they-could holding and-the-battle-line as the-supply was eagerly
instruentes vehiculis et cæteris impedimentis circumpositis
drawing-up with-wagons and other baggage set-around
noctem vigiliis partiuntur fusique per herbas vino et
the-night in-watches they-divide and-spread through the-grasses to-wine and
somno taciti indulgent. Mane autem prima villas
sleep silent they-indulge in-the-morning moreover early the-villages
proximas incurrentes, si quid fugientes reliquerint, investigant
nearest attacking if anything the-fleeing had-left they-track
et rapiunt cunctaque, quæ prætereunt, ædificia exurunt. At
and seize and-all which they-pass buildings burn but
Engilbertus hostium invasionis primicerius castellum repetere,
Engilbert of-the-enemies of-the-invasion the-foremost the-castle to-seek-again
cæteris dimissis, cum paucis eque audacibus monasterium
with-the-others dismissed with a-few equally bold the-monastery
vitabundus inambulat, si aliqui ad insidias relicti sint, explorat.
avoiding-notice walks-about if some for ambushes left were he-explores
Heribaldi fratris fatuitatem bene quidem nati miserans, si vel
of-Heribald of-the-brother the-foolishness well indeed born pitying if even
corpus ejus ad sepeliendum inveniant, sollicite investigant. Illo
the-body his for burial they-might-find anxiously they-search him

quidem nusquam reperto — nam cacumen proximi montis,
indeed nowhere found for the-top of-the-nearest hill
vix a clerico persuasus, cum ipso occupans inter arbusta et
scarcely by the-cleric persuaded with him occupying among shrubs and
frutecta latuit — miserebatur adhuc, si tantæ simplicitatis
thickets he-lay-hid he-pitied still if of-so-great simplicity
mancipium hostes quidem secum abegerint. Miratus ætiam
a-chattel the-enemies indeed with-them had-driven-off wondering also
vini vasa ab hostibus nimium bibulis vitata gratias Deo egit.
of-wine the-vessels by the-enemies too thirsty avoided thanks to-God gave
Matutinas deinde laudes cursim de sancta cruce, prout
the-matins then lauds hastily of the-holy cross as
silentissime poterant, persolventes januas et laquear præustum
most-silently they-could paying the-doors and the-ceiling scorched
mirantur, locoque celerrime abeuntes, si Wiborada
they-wonder-at and-from-the-place most-quickly going-away whether Wiborada
vivat, ad clausulam ejus silentio sciscitantur, compertoque,
might-live at the-cell her in-silence they-inquire and-found
quod passa sit, tardare non ausi montem proximum
that martyred she-was to-delay not daring the-hill nearest
superant, castellumque per avia nota celeres tandem
they-surmount and-the-castle through pathless-ways known swift at-last
revisunt, timentes, ut fit, ne aut in insidiis relicti, aut
revisit fearing as happens lest either in ambushes left or
ad alia circumquaque spolia sparsi socios in locum secuti
to other round-about spoils scattered the-comrades into the-place following
superveniant, parati tamen, quoniam res eis pro anima
might-come-upon prepared however since the-matter to-them for life
erat, aut fortiter emori, aut manibus quidem viriliter defendi.
was either bravely to-die or by-hands indeed manfully to-be-defended
Et clericus, Heribaldo assumpto — castellum enim de monte
and the-cleric with-Heribald taken-along the-castle for from the-hill

conspexerant — matutini adveniunt. Sed custodes de longe
they-had-seen in-the-morning arrive but the-guards from afar
illos et adhuc in tenebris prospicientes exploratores putantes
them and still in darkness seeing scouts thinking
sociis clamabant. At illi agiliter erumpentes, Heribaldo
to-the-comrades shouted but they nimbly bursting-out with-Heribald
agnito, de clerico primo hesitant; in municionem tamen eum
recognized about the-cleric at-first hesitate into the-fortification however him
recipiunt, et omnem tragediam ejus audientes hospitaliter tum
they-receive and all tragedy his hearing hospitably then
pro Christo, sed et pro captivo suo, cujus linguam noverant,
for Christ but also for captive their whose tongue they-knew
tractant curando. Tandemque per illos duos omnes insolentiæ
they-treat by-caring and-at-last through those two all of-the-insolence
hostium didicerant mores. Ungar baptizatus uxorem
of-the-enemies had-learned the-manners the-Hungarian baptized a-wife
duxit, filios genuit. Dein quoniam reverti eos interdum solere
married sons begot then since to-return them sometimes to-be-wont
didicerant, arbores silvæ iterato contra castelli aditum
they-had-learned the-trees of-the-forest again against of-the-castle the-approach
latius succidunt fossamque altam fodiunt, puteum, ubi
more-widely they-cut-down and-a-ditch deep dig a-well where
scirpus ante crescere solebat, altissime fodientes, certi aquæ,
the-rush before to-grow was-wont most-deeply digging sure of-water
purissimam inveniunt, vinumque, quod Heribaldo Ungri
most-pure they-find and-the-wine which to-Heribald the-Hungarians
indulserant, languenis et quibuscumque possent vasculis
had-left in-flagons and with-whatever they-could little-vessels
clandestini die noctuque curraces reportant, sicque degentes
secretly by-day and-by-night runners bring-back and-so living
Dominum assidui invocant. — De sancta Wiborada autem,
the-Lord assiduous invoke about Saint Wiborada moreover

quia liber per se est ejus, amplius non loquemur, præter
because a-book by itself is about-her more not we-shall-speak except
quod in sanctam eam levari jam bis nostris temporibus per
that into a-saint her to-be-raised already twice in-our times by
duos papas decretum est et sub Norperto tandem impletum.
two popes decreed was and under Norbert at-last fulfilled
De sancto Uodalrico autem, qualiter nobiscum egerit, dicta
about Saint Ulrich moreover how with-us he-dealt the-sayings
patrum quedam audivimus, quæ quidem in vita ejus
of-the-fathers certain we-have-heard which indeed in the-life his
vel tercio jam scripta non invenimus. De nobilibus
even for-the-third-time already written not we-find of noble-parents
enim ille, ut et ab aliis jam dictum est, natus, apud
for he as also by others already said it-has born among
nostrates educatus est et doctus. Hic viam, qua in
our-people brought-up was and taught here the-way by-which into
cælos volavit, subvolare didicit; hic virtutibus, quas nunc
the-heavens he-flew to-fly-up he-learned here for-the-virtues which now
operatur, præludium fecit. Sanctorum enim nostrorum Galli
he-works a-prelude he-made of-the-saints for our Gall
et Otmari, quos puerulus patres elegit, se monachis
and Othmar whom as-a-little-boy as-fathers he-chose himself to-the-monks
jungens cum sanctis sanctissimus et cum electis ingreditur
joining with the-saints most-holy and with the-elect enters
electissimus. Hartmanni enim junioris discipulus divina
most-elect of-Hartmann for the-younger the-disciple divine-things
præ omnibus spiritu sancto prælibatus hausit. In refectorio
before all by-the-spirit holy foretaught drank in the-refectory
coram patribus, ubi vel in puncto peccare capitale erat,
before the-fathers where even in a-point to-sin a-capital-offense was
lector inoffensus creber erat quamvis canonicus, quod tamen
a-reader unoffending frequent he-was although a-canon which however

illi progenitorum suorum indultum est gratia. Wiboradam
to-him of-ancestors his granted was by-grace Wiborada
inclusam, coævulis se licentia data ad ludos
the-recluse with-(his)-age-mates themselves with-leave given for games
parantibus, feriatis diebus furtim visitare assolitus divinis ab
preparing on-feast days secretly to-visit accustomed with-divine from
illa interdum verbis et exemplis instructus est paginis. Nam
her sometimes words and examples instructed he-was pages for
quadam die, cum illum ante fenestellam clausulæ stantem
on-a-certain day when him before the-little-window of-the-cell standing
levissimo videret cingulo præcinctum, de suo ei
with-a-very-light she-saw girdle girded of her-own for-him
paratum offerens: Castitatis, inquit, fili mi! tibi cingulum
prepared offering of-chastity she-says son my for-you the-girdle
per hoc lineum meum a Deo accipe, continentieque
through this linen my from God receive and-of-continence
strophio ab hac deinceps die per Wiboradam tuam te
with-the-band from this henceforth day through Wiborada your yourself
præcinctum memento! Cave autem me tibi a Domino meo
girded remember beware moreover me to-you from Lord my
edictum ferente, ne ullis abhinc colloquiis vanis mulierculis
an-edict bearing lest in-any from-now conversations vain with-little-women
miscearis, et si, ut facillime fit, aliquo carnis igne incensus
you-be-mingled and if as most-easily happens by-some of-the-flesh fire kindled
fueris, loco, in quo fueris, mutato: „Deus,
you-shall-have-been with-the-place in which you-shall-have-been changed O-God
in adjutorium meum intende!“ „Domine, ad adjuvandum me
unto help my attend O-Lord to help me
festina!“ mox cantaveris. Sin autem sic pacem aliquo alio
make-haste at-once you-shall-have-sung if moreover so peace by-some other
lapsu tuo vetante non habueris, titionem sive candelam
lapse your forbidding not you-shall-have-had a-brand or a-candle

ardentem, quasi aliud aliquid agas querens, digitum
burning as-if other something you-were-doing seeking the-finger
vel leviter adure eodemque versu dicto securus eris.
even lightly burn and-with-the-same verse said safe you-will-be
Sic magistra prædurata discipulum sanctissimum futurum, ut
thus the-mistress hardened the-disciple most-holy about-to-be as
ipse patribus narrabat, contra ignem igne præduraverat.
he-himself to-the-fathers related against fire with-fire had-hardened

Capitula 58–60

ULRICH'S MIRACLES

Ulrich keeps the austerities of his nurse Wiborada, rests his head on a stone, and is mocked as the little saint; a stolen stylus pierces the thief's hand. Bishop of Augsburg, he returns to feast the brothers, and a wagon of his wine falls from the high bridge and is brought up unharmed. A paralytic who lies in his road to be stepped over rises and walks when Ulrich, too lame to step over him, bids him rise, and he credits Saint Magnus. His biographers left out such deeds and lighter jokes: a strong woman carried in on his order to Abbot Immo, who had asked for an anvil, a drowning chamberlain cast ashore, and Augsburg delivered from the Hungarians by the cries of its infants laid before the altars.

Multa sunt, quæ de doctrina nutricis suæ — sic enim
many-things there-are which about the-teaching of-nurse his so for
ætiam vetulus eam nominare solebat — patribus ille
also as-an-old-man her to-name he-was-wont to-the-fathers he
dixerat, quæ, quia austera hujus temporis sanctis videri
had-told which because austere of-this time to-the-saints to-seem
possunt et impossibilia, ne quid eis suboleat, preterimus.
can and impossible lest anything to-them smell we-pass-over
De cilicio ætiam, quo ipsa utebatur, cujus hodie
about the-haircloth also which she-herself used whose today

asperitatem pro reliquiis id habentes horrescimus, pulvillulum
the-roughness for relics it having we-shudder-at a-little-pillow
filio suo, ut et ipsa eum nominabat, in abstinentiæ diebus
for-son her as also she-herself him named in of-abstinence the-days
utendum conneverat. Quod interdum in sinu gestans
to-be-used she-had-sewn which sometimes in (his)-bosom carrying
noctibus ille maxillis lapide supposito aptare solebat.
by-nights he for-(his)-jaws with-a-stone placed-under to-fit was-wont
Tali ille lectisternio pro deliciis usus coram januis æcclesiæ
with-such he bedding for delights used before the-doors of-the-church
nocturnorum sonitum aut in sedili, aut nuda quidem
of-the-nocturns the-sound either on a-seat or on-bare indeed
exspectare terra solebat. His et aliis similibus eum a
to-await the-ground was-wont to-these and other like-things him from
pueritia assuescentem, cum et feminarum alloquia, et
boyhood accustoming since both of-women the-conversations and
solita sociorum fugitasset ludicra, sanctulum illum derisorie
the-wonted of-companions he-had-shunned games the-little-saint him mockingly
jam abinde cœperant vocitare. Audivimus ætiam de eo, quod
already from-then they-had-begun to-call we-have-heard also about him what
quidem pro nihilo ab rigidis corde duci soleat, quod cum
indeed for nothing by the-hard of-heart to-be-reckoned is-wont that when
ei grafium coævulorum quidam furatus sit, per, nescio
from-him a-stylus of-(his)-age-mates a-certain-one stolen has by I-know-not
quam, sub cappula incuriam sibimet ipsi manum transfixerit.
what under the-little-cope carelessness to-himself himself the-hand he-pierced
Quam cum ille dolore clamans exereret, diu quæsitus et sepe
which when he with-pain crying-out drew-out long sought and often
pejeratus Uodalrici proditur stilus. Hoc tamen ille et alia
perjured of-Ulrich is-betrayed the-stylus this however he and other-things
de se similia cum tegere nosset, illius meritis fieri præter
about himself like-things since to-hide he-knew by-his merits to-be-done except

altioris aliquos ingenii quis credere nollet? Nam figuratis
of-higher some wit who to-believe would-not-wish for with-figurative
et interdum ætiam risum moventibus, non tamen falsis et
and sometimes also laughter moving not however false and
inanibus crebro usus est verbis. Ut cuidam scolarium elato
empty often used he-has words as to-a-certain-one of-the-scholars proud
et glorianter agenti cum, Constantiæ diaconatu precio empto,
and boastfully acting when at-Constance with-the-diaconate by-price bought
inter processores nostros progredi parans stola indutus sibi
among processional-men our to-advance preparing with-a-stole clothed to-him
ewangelium eo die nobis lecturo non sine gloria assisteret:
the-gospel on-that day to-us about-to-read not without glory he-stood-by
Eia, inquit, mi sodes care, quam decenter tibi clippei
come-now he-says my comrade dear how becomingly on-you of-the-shield
fascia insidet! Id ipsum tamen etiam sibi pro reverentia
the-band sits that very however also to-him for reverence
sui, ut nobis canonicus ewangelium legeret, concessum est.
of-himself that to-us a-canon the-gospel might-read granted was
Nam frater conscriptus tum vocis pulcherrimæ gratiam habebat.
for brother enrolled then of-voice most-beautiful the-grace he-had
Diutius autem, quam cæteri coævi sui, tum pro gratia
longer moreover than the-other age-mates his both for the-grace
loci, tum pro Wiborada sua scolis inheserat. Quas
of-the-place and for Wiborada his to-the-schools he-had-clung which
tamen tandem relinquens suique juris in possessionibus
however at-last leaving and-of-his-own right in possessions
factus, Augustæ, ubi canonicus ab infantia erat, in virtutum
made at-Augsburg where a-canon from infancy he-was in of-virtues
exemplis clarissimus, Gallum suum crebro visitabat. Fratres
examples most-famous Gall his often visited the-brothers
suos conscriptos ter in anno ipse minister paverat.
his enrolled three-times in the-year he-himself as-servant had-fed

De convivis autem ipsis, quamvis multa dictu dulcia
about the-feasts moreover themselves although many-things to-tell sweet
patres, qui intererant, narrare soleant, unum ego miraculum
the-fathers who were-present to-relate be-wont one I miracle
ætiam sibimet ipsi grande visum in memoriam posteris
also to-himself himself great seen for memory to-posterity
memorabo. Est non longe a monasterio pons altus, sic
shall-record there-is not far from the-monastery a-bridge high so
quoque vocatus, super præcipitium arduum, ut videre est,
also called over a-precipice steep as to-see it-is
situs alteque profundum, inevitabilis quidem Gallum illac
placed and-deeply deep unavoidable indeed for-Gall that-way
petentibus. Ducitur vas vinarium, Uodalrici, tunc quidem
seeking is-drawn a-vessel for-wine of-Ulrich then indeed
episcopi, boum paribus copiosis longoque tractu minatis per
bishop of-oxen with-pairs plentiful and-in-long train driven through
ipsum montem illum ad caritatis fratrum, ipso jam in
that mount that for of-charity of-the-brothers he-himself already in
loco manente, convivium. Et ecce, horridum dictu, vehiculum
the-place staying the-feast and lo horrid to-tell vehicle
illud honustissimum exorbitans cecidit et paria illa super
that most-laden leaving-the-track fell and the-pairs those upon
se convolvit. Clamatur viciniæ circumquaque ad
itself rolled-over there-is-shouting for-the-neighborhood round-about for
auxilium. Conveniunt undique; integra omnia et sana
help they-gather from-all-sides whole all-things and sound
invenientes, jumenta prostrata disjungunt acuto ingenio et
finding the-beasts prostrate they-unyoke with-sharp wit and
anxio labore, quia alias non poterant; ad pontem ipsum
anxious labor because otherwise not they-could to the-bridge itself
item omnia reportant. Kyrie eleison vero cantantes paucaque
likewise all-things they-bring-back Kyrie eleison but singing and-few

jumentis, quia perculsa erant, adjumenta nectentes episcopo
to-the-beasts because struck they-were aids binding to-the-bishop
Bozanarium suum exspectanti deferunt et integra omnia et
Bozen-wine his awaiting they-bring and whole all-things and
sana ostendunt. Laudes Deo cum fratribus tandem vir
sound they-show praises to-God with the-brothers at-last the-man
Dei publice persolvens exemplo Benedicti et Mauri, ipse
of-God publicly paying by-the-example of-Benedict and of-Maurus he-himself
hoc signum fratrum meritis, ipsi autem inpossibile
this sign of-the-brothers to-the-merits they-themselves moreover impossible
illud virtutum ejus possibilitati attribuunt. Egerat quidem
that-thing of-virtues his to-the-possibility attribute he-had-kept indeed
aliquando in loco sancti Magni ætiam diem sibi semper
sometime in the-place of-Saint Magnus also the-day to-him always
amabilem reliquiasque ejus, ut mos nobis est, cappa
lovable and-the-relics his as the-custom with-us is in-cope
illa aquilifera indutus vespere diei sancti ipse domum
that eagle-bearing clothed at-evening of-the-day holy he-himself home
reportabat. Et cum infirmus tunc esset, ut sepe quidem
was-bringing-back and when sick then he-was as often indeed
erat, paraliticus quidam adjutorio suorum in viam se, ut
he-was a-paralytic a-certain with-the-help of-his-people into the-road himself that
ipse super eum graderetur, prostraverat. At ille homini
he-himself over him might-step had-prostrated but he to-the-man
appropians quasi de obstaculo indignatus: Surge, ait, quia
approaching as-if at the-obstacle indignant rise he-says because
et ego pedibus infirmus super te progredi nequeo. At ille
also I in-feet sick over you to-go cannot but he
tanquam ad increpantis verbum velocissime surgens incolomis
as-if at of-one-rebuking the-word most-quickly rising unharmed
abiit, secutusque fratres sine ullius adjutorio sancti
went-away and-following the-brothers without of-anyone help of-Saint

Magni ædesiam cum cæteris sanus introiit. Et episcopus,
Magnus the-church with the-others sound entered and the-bishop
capitio cappe imposito, cum anhelus stetisset et de
with-the-hood of-the-cope put-on when panting he-had-stood and from
via lassus audiens sanitatem hominis acriter in dicentes
the-road tired hearing-of the-health of-the-man sharply against those-telling
invectus super cancellos tandem innititur, signumque tam
inveighing on the-chancel-rails at-last leans and-the-sign so
manifestum ab se excutiens, sancti Magni virtutem, quam
manifest from himself shaking-off of-Saint Magnus the-power which
manibus gerebat, hanc esse astantibus prædicans asseruit.
in-hands he-bore this to-be to-the-bystanders proclaiming asserted
Neque tamen sic eis, ut hominem ab ipso sanatum esse
nor however so them that the-man by him healed was
discrederent, persuadere quidem ullo modo potuit.
they-should-disbelieve to-persuade indeed in-any way could
Hæc de pluribus, quæ apud sanctum Gallum conmanens
these-things of many which at Saint Gall dwelling-with
gessit, tribus vitæ ejus scriptoribus non præjudicantes
he-did for-the-three of-life his writers not prejudging
scripsimus. Neque enim miramur, eos cum quibus in seculo
we-have-written nor for do-we-wonder them with whom in the-world
versatus est, ea quæ cum spiritalibus gessit, quia minus
lived he-has those-things which with the-spiritual he-did because less
sciverant, non scripsisse. Sed plura eos, quæ de eo
they-had-known not to-have-written but more-things them which about him
concinnantur vulgo et canuntur, tacuisse, cum infima
are-composed commonly and are-sung to-have-kept-silent since lowest
quædam ejus magna fecerint, ætiam miramur. Neque enim quia
certain-things his great they-made also we-wonder nor for because
interdum ridenda, ut diximus, non inaniter loqui solebat
sometimes laughable-things as we-said not idly to-speak he-was-wont

et facere, ea dici ab eis queramus; ut abbati nostro
and to-do these to-be-told by them let-us-seek as to-abbot our
Ymmoni verecundo homini et talia semper detestanti, cum
Immo a-modest man and such-things always detesting when
incudem noviter sub terra repertam sibi dari peteret,
an-anvil newly under the-earth found to-himself to-be-given he-asked
feminam de mercato dorso validam inferri jusserat. Sed
a-woman from the-market in-back strong to-be-brought-in he-had-bidden but
et Hettinum, camerarium suum, in effuso Lico flumine jam
also Hettin chamberlain his in the-flooded Lech river already
mergi visum, quomodo ad se festinum vocaverit fluctusque
to-be-drowned seen how to himself hastening he-called and-the-waves
illum coram pedibus suis in litus ejecerit; sed et ipsam
him before feet his onto the-shore threw but also very
urbem suam Augustam quidem in Ungrorum invasione sub
city his Augsburg indeed in of-the-Hungarians the-invasion under
Henrico, ut jam diximus, rege, quomodo meritis suis liberaverit
Henry as already we-said king how by-merits his he-freed
ab ipsis, prius illam, quam ad nos venerint, arta obsidione
from them first it than to us they-came with-close siege
cingentibus, nec uno verbo tetigisse miramur. Nam
girding not with-one word to-have-touched we-wonder for
imminente irruptionis illorum jam facili introitu, infantulos
with-overhanging of-irruption of-them already easy entrance the-little-infants
urbis universos ab uberibus matrum raptos circa se coram
of-the-city all from the-breasts of-the-mothers snatched around himself before
altaribus nuda terra jactari jusserat vagitibusque illorum
the-altars on-bare ground to-be-thrown he-had-bidden and-with-the-wailings of-them
lacrimas cum ejulatibus miscens infestissimos illos alter Ezechias
tears with lamentations mixing most-hostile those another Hezekiah

abegerat hostes. Nam nulla nisi talium præcum exsistente
had-driven-off enemies for no except of-such prayers existing
causa, efferi illi urbe relicta ad alia dispersi sunt loca.
cause the-savage-ones those with-the-city left to other scattered were places

Capitula 61–64

AFTER THE STORM

Ulrich's enemy Hugo, guilty of incest with the bishop's consecrated sister, refuses to make way for his cart and wastes away to skin and bone, yet is never brought to seek peace. As the Hungarians move on Buchau and Saint Gall, Ulrich prays that his sister be spared the sword, that Wiborada win the martyr's palm, and that Gall's cell be kept whole. Heribald, back in the castle, praises the Hungarians as hosts more generous than the cellarer but complains of their manners in church. When the raiders have crossed the Rhine, Engilbert returns, has the monastery purified, restores the rule, and resigns to Thieto. Irminger and his six sons surprise a Hungarian troop bridging the Rhine at Säckingen; the rest cross into Alsace and reach Besançon.

Hugo ætiam quidam regii generis homo primarius propter
Hugo also a-certain of-royal race a-man chief on-account-of
sororem viri Dei virginem sacram incestu agnitam ab
the-sister of-the-man of-God a-virgin consecrated by-incest known by
ipso quia sepe inclamatus est, insolenter ei inimicus,
him because often rebuked he-was insolently to-him hostile
quadam die carræ vehiculo, ut erat infirmitatis suæ, occurrit
on-a-certain day of-a-cart in-the-vehicle as he-was of-infirmity his he-met
invecto. Quem cum milites episcopi precessores, uti ei non
carried whom when the-soldiers of-the-bishop going-before that him not
occurreret, præmonerent: Carrucarium, inquit, illum ab itinere
he-should-meet warned the-carter he-says that from road

meo nunquam declinabo. Quod ille a dicentibus post
my never shall-I-turn-aside which he from those-telling afterward
audiens: Carrucæ, inquit, vehiculo, scitote, filii mei!, ipse
hearing of-a-cart he-says of-the-vehicle know sons my he-himself
plus, quam ego, indigus erit. Nec post multum nocte
more than I in-need will-be nor after much on-a-night
quadam sanus sopori se tradens, cum evigilasset, lumbos,
certain sound to-sleep himself giving when he-had-awakened the-loins
in quibus peccaverat, acerrime dolens in inferioribus ab illa
in which he-had-sinned most-sharply aching in the-lower-parts from that
nocte ita decreverat, ut præter cutem et ossa gracilia nihil
night so he-had-wasted that besides skin and bones slender nothing
haberet. Sicque longevitatis tempora, nunquam cogi
he-had and-so of-long-life the-times never to-be-compelled
valens, ut pacem a viro Dei peteret, perduxerat.
able that peace from the-man of-God he-should-seek he-had-drawn-out
Ipsa autem sanctimonialis illa sanctorum exemplorum post
she-herself moreover nun that of-holy examples afterward
visa est femina, quippe quam frater novis sententiis,
seen was a-woman indeed whom (her)-brother with-new sentences
dum vixit, annuatim puniverat. Ungris autem a se
while he-lived yearly had-punished with-the-Hungarians moreover from him
recedentibus, cum Puochouvam illos, ubi soror ipsa erat,
withdrawing when Buchau them where the-sister herself was
partesque nostras, ubi Wiboradam matrem sciebat, invadere
and-the-parts our where Wiborada the-mother he-knew to-invade
velle conperisset, orasse fertur: Domine, miseram istam
to-wish he-had-learned to-have-prayed is-said Lord wretched that-woman
adhuc impunitam mihi dona, ut gladio non pereat! Sed
still unpunished to-me grant that by-the-sword not she-perish but
et illam gladio semper paratam, ut palmam martyrii
also her for-the-sword always ready that the-palm of-martyrdom

mereatur, confortans robora! Cellam quoque Galli tui
she-may-merit comforting strengthen the-cell also of-Gall your
integram cum sibi famulantibus pie et misericors conserva!
whole with to-it those-serving piously and merciful preserve
Atque ita precibus ejus sanctis effectum Deus undique dedit.
and so to-the-prayers his holy effect God on-all-sides gave
At Engilbertus noster, circumquaque omnibus igne cælo
but Engilbert our round-about with-all with-fire in-the-sky
nocte dieque relucentibus, exploratores jam emittere non
by-night and-by-day shining scouts now to-send-out not
ausus castellum suum cum suis immanens tuebatur. Raro
daring castle his with his-people remaining-in guarded rarely
autem in monasterium magis animo fidentibus, ut missas
moreover into the-monastery the-more in-mind trusting that masses
ibi agerent, missis spiritum inter eorum reditum vix
there they-might-perform sent breath during their return scarcely
habere potuit. Multum autem socios roborabat inter
to-have he-could much moreover the-comrades strengthened between
timorem et spem Heribaldi et clerici assidua de hostibus
fear and hope of-Heribald and of-the-cleric the-constant about the-enemies
relatio. Mirabantur tandem altioris ingenii fratres pium
report wondered at-last of-higher wit the-brothers pious
Deum tam amicum simplicitati, ut eum ætiam fatuos et
God so friendly to-simplicity that him also fools and
ebetes tueri non pigeat inter medios hostium gladios et
dullards to-protect not it-irks among the-midst of-the-enemies swords and
contos. Querentes autem ab Heribaldo inter otia, quomodo
pikes asking moreover from Heribald in leisure how
sibimet tam numerosi hospites sancti Galli placerent: Eia,
to-him so numerous guests of-Saint Gall pleased come-now
inquit, quam optime! Nunquam ego, credite mihi!, hilariores
he-says how very-well never I believe me merrier

in claustro nostro homines vidisse me memini; cibi enim
in cloister our men to-have-seen myself I-remember of-food for
potusque datores sunt largissimi. Quod enim ego ante
and-of-drink givers they-are most-lavish what for I formerly
cellararium nostrum tenacissimum vix rogare poteram, ut
cellarer our most-stingy scarcely to-ask I-could that
vel semel sitientem me potaret, ipsi mihi affluenter
even once thirsty me he-would-give-drink they-themselves to-me abundantly
roganti dabant. Et clericus: Et si bibere, inquit, nolles,
asking gave and the-cleric and if to-drink he-says you-were-unwilling
alapis cogebant. — Non nego, ait; id enim unum valde
with-slaps they-compelled not I-deny he-says that for one very
displicebat, quod tam indisciplinati quidem erant. In veritate
displeased that so undisciplined indeed they-were in truth
dico vobis: nunquam in claustro sancti Galli tam indisciplinatos
I-say to-you never in the-cloister of-Saint Gall so undisciplined-men
vidi; neque plus in æcclesia et in claustro, quam si foris in
I-saw nor more in the-church and in the-cloister than if outside in
prato essent, ferales illi, inquit, egerant. Nam cum eis
the-meadow they-were wild-men those he-says acted for when to-them
semel manu signum darem, ut Dei ipsius memores vel in
once with-hand a-sign I-gave that of-God himself mindful at-least in
æcclesia silentius agerent, grandes mihi collo infregerant
the-church more-silently they-might-act great to-me on-the-neck they-broke
ictus, atque ilico, quod in me peccaverant, vino oblato,
blows and at-once what against me they-had-sinned with-wine offered
quod nemo quidem vestrum faceret, emendabant.
which no-one indeed of-you would-do they-amended
Taliter imperterriti illi Deum semper invocantes miseriis suis
thus undaunted they God always invoking with-miseries their
se pascebant, dum otia haberent. Fama vero volante, ut
themselves fed while leisure they-had with-rumor but flying as

fit, reversos hostes iterum in cœnobio versari, emitti
happens returned the-enemies again in the-monastery to-be-moving to-be-sent-out
se fatuus, ut ad caros suos veniret, enixe rogabat. Sicque
himself the-fool that to dear-ones his he-might-come earnestly asked and-so
per aliquot dies ipsi et Wazzirburgenses in navibus tamen
for some days they-themselves and the-men-of-Wasserburg in ships however
sepius agentes, quas hostes nullas habebant, finem hostice
more-often staying which the-enemies none had the-end of-the-hostile
tempestatis exspectabant. Audiunt tandem, Constancia foris
storm awaited they-hear at-last Constance outside
muros cremata, intus armis defensa, Augia quoque navibus
the-walls burned within with-arms defended Reichenau also with-ships
subductis armatis multis in circuitu fulgida, hostes sevos
drawn-up with-armed-men many in circuit gleaming the-enemies savage
cis ultraque Rhenum omnia igne cedibusque pervadentes
on-this-side and-beyond the-Rhine all-things with-fire and-slaughters overrunning
transisse. Ausi tandem monasterium secure intrare oratoria
to-have-crossed daring at-last the-monastery safely to-enter the-oratories
purgant, officinas perscopant, episcopo Notingo tunc accito
they-cleanse the-workshops they-sweep-out with-the-bishop Noting then summoned
aqua benedicta cuncta spargi rogantes vim demonum
with-water blessed all-things to-be-sprinkled asking the-force of-demons
omnem eliminant. Atque sic Engilbertus armis relictis
all they-drive-out and so Engilbert with-arms left
militiæ cælesti se suosque iterum assuefaciens in utrisque
to-the-soldiery heavenly himself and-his-people again accustoming in both-things
frugi hominem se exhibuit. Oves enim dispersas velud
a-thrifty man himself showed the-sheep for scattered as-if
humeris reportans ad gregem regulæ eas redocuit tenorem,
on-shoulders carrying-back to the-flock of-the-rule them re-taught the-tenor
pabula eis, quæ cara tunc quidem omnibus erant, omni
fodder for-them which dear then indeed to-all were with-all

industria undequaque corradere sollicita curavit sollercia;
industry from-everywhere to-scrape-together anxious took-care with-skill
neque enim erat emere, omnibus profligatis, neque spes
nor for was-it-possible to-buy with-all ruined nor hope
verni fructus, hostibus arare vetantibus. Sic ille octo post
of-spring fruit with-the-enemies to-plow forbidding thus he for-eight after
hanc tempestatem annis loci sui provisor, Hartmanni decessoris
this storm years of-place his the-provider of-Hartmann predecessor
sui disciplinam deintus tenuit, protervam deforis servorum
his the-discipline within held the-insolent outside of-the-servants
naturam frangens emendavit. Tandemque infirmans fatigatus
nature breaking he-amended and-at-last falling-sick wearied
corporis malis Thietoni venerando abbati electo a fratribus
of-body by-ills to-Thieto venerable abbot elected by the-brothers
regimen suum regi supplicans reliquit. Ipse autem
rule his to-the-king supplicating left he-himself moreover
loca abbatum, quæ diximus, non diu supervivens tenuit.
the-places of-the-abbots which we-mentioned not long surviving held
De Ungrorum quoque infortuniis tragedie nostre non
about of-the-Hungarians also the-misfortunes to-tragedy our not
piget ascribere. Erat ea tempestate in pago, quem
it-irks to-add there-was in-that season in the-district which
Friccouve dicunt, Hirminger quidam, vir non adeo præpotens,
Frickgau they-call Irminger a-certain man not so very-powerful
sed manu et animo validus filiorumque Machabeorum sex,
but in-hand and in-mind strong and-of-sons Maccabees of-six
sicut Mathathias quondam, pater fortissimus. Iste enim
as Mattathias once a-father most-brave he for
turmam illam, quæ cis Rhenum nos quoque a
that troop which on-this-side-of the-Rhine us also from
sociis, qui ultra Renum erant, disjuncta invaserat, ita
the-comrades who beyond the-Rhine were separated had-invaded so

circumvenerat. Enimvero cum Secchingensem sanctæ crucis
had-surrounded indeed when of-Säckingen of-the-holy cross
locum illi invasuri in arto Rheni pontem parantes
the-place they about-to-invade in the-narrow of-the-Rhine a-bridge preparing
inspectivi sociis consedissent seque invicem super
in-sight to-the-comrades had-sat-down and-themselves in-turn across
flumen allocuti securius jam agerent, ipse istos cum
the-river having-addressed more-securely now acted he these with
filiis, copiis pro tempore undecumque corrasis, intempesta
sons with-forces for the-time from-wherever scraped-together in-the-dead
noctis somno vinoque sepultos tribus partibus impetu
of-the-night in-sleep and-wine buried in-three parts with-an-onset
facto inprovisos invaserat et pene omnes, præter qui Rhenum
made unforeseen had-attacked and almost all except who the-Rhine
fuga transnataverant, aut occiderat, aut merserat. Nam et
by-flight had-swum-across either had-killed or had-drowned for also
villani quidam prædocti ollas, prunas in proximo monte
villagers certain forewarned pots embers on the-nearest hill
paratas habentes, tumultu audito faces accensas levabant,
prepared having with-the-uproar heard torches lit raised
et ut discretionem sociorum et hostium nossent, quasi
and that the-distinction of-comrades and of-enemies they-might-know as-if
perlustrium fecerant. Spectabant sociorum internecionem
an-illumination they-had-made watched of-the-comrades the-slaughter
transfluminales hostes otiosi, iraque armati accurrunt
the-across-the-river enemies idle and-with-anger armed run-up
ad profluentis litus rabidi; missilia furori satisfacientes
to of-the-flowing the-shore rabid missiles to-fury satisfying
plurima jaciunt caninoque ululatu voces horridas miscent.
very-many they-throw and-with-dog-like howling voices horrid mix
At Irminger cum suis spolia in facie hostium collecta
but Irminger with his-men the-spoils in the-face of-the-enemies gathered

basilicæ triumphans intulit et per omnes circumquaque
into-the-basilica triumphing brought and among all round-about
munitiones dispertivit. Et quia naves præter ejus urbis
the-fortifications distributed and because ships except of-that city
defensaculo subductas nullas in Rheni viciniis sciverat,
for-the-defense drawn-up none in of-the-Rhine the-neighborhoods he-had-known
suadebat urbanis navibus ipsis pontibus junctis armatas
he-urged the-townsfolk with-ships themselves as-bridges joined armed
legiones transponere, se duce, qui illorum mores in
legions to-carry-across with-himself as-leader who of-them the-manners in
armis jam nosset, quantocius confligere. Dum hæc
arms already knew as-quickly-as-possible to-engage while these-things
sataguntur, navibus Ungri de Swarzwalde multis paratis
are-busied-with with-ships the-Hungarians from the-Black-Forest many prepared
in Alsatiam ipsi priores suas legiones transponunt et
into Alsace they-themselves first their legions carry-across and
a Liutfrido quodam, terræ illius potentissimo, bello suscepti
by Liutfrid a-certain of-land that most-powerful in-war received
plurimo dampno sui tandem cruentam victoriam sunt adepti.
with-much loss of-their at-last a-bloody victory have obtained
Senserant jam mitius sibi agendum inter Teutones
they-had-perceived already more-gently for-themselves to-be-acted among the-Germans
et in terra illorum minus fore tardandum. Alsatia tandem,
and in the-land of-them less to-be to-be-delayed with-Alsace at-last
qua ierant, vastata et cremata, Hohfeldi montem
through-which they-had-gone laid-waste and burned of-the-Hochfeld mountain
Jurisque silvam festinanter transeuntes Vesontium veniunt.
and-of-the-Jura the-forest hastily crossing to-Besançon they-come

Capitula 65–67

THE SARACENS AND THE FIRE

King Conrad of Burgundy sets the Saracens of Fraxinet and the Hungarians against each other, falls on both, and sells the survivors at Arles. At Saint Gall under Thieto the workshops go unblessed on a Sunday of the Greater Litany, and the writer praises the school's discipline, recalling a Saint Gall monk honored by three bishops, his old pupils, before Emperor Conrad at Ingelheim. A schoolboy sent for the rods sets the roof on fire to save himself and his comrades from a beating; the flames reach the church tower, and the brothers carry out bells, furnishings, and Othmar's body.

Erat tunc Burgundionum rex Chuonradus, adolescens floridus,
there-was then of-the-Burgundians king Conrad a-youth blooming
sanctæ Adelheidæ quidem frater. Venerant quondam Saraceni
of-Saint Adelaide indeed the-brother had-come once the-Saracens
navibus in Burgundiam belloque omnia disturbantes, tandem
in-ships into Burgundy and-in-war all-things disturbing at-last
victi in valle Fraxnith angustiis tutissima, invito qui
conquered in the-valley of-Fraxinet by-(its)-narrows most-safe with-unwilling who
tunc erat rege, consederant, paceque petita uxores filias
then was king had-settled and-with-peace sought wives the-daughters
gentis ducunt; vallem maximæ ubertatis parvis regi
of-the-race they-marry the-valley of-greatest fertility with-small to-the-king
reditibus datis incolunt. Ad quorum ducem Chuonradus nobili
revenues given they-inhabit to whose leader Conrad noble
astucia usus legatos dirigit his verbis: Ecce Ungri,
cunning using envoys directs with-these words lo the-Hungarians
fillones illi fugitivi, nuntiis me fatigant, ut sibi pace
rascals those fugitives with-messages me weary that to-them with-peace
mea vos quidem a tantæ ubertatis terra armis expellere
my you indeed from of-so-great fertility the-land with-arms to-expel

liceat. Sed vos, si viri estis, obviam illis me juvante
it-be-allowed but you if men you-are to-meet them with-me helping
quantocius pergite! Enimvero si vos eos in faciem invaditis,
as-quickly-as-possible proceed indeed if you them in the-face attack
ego eos a latere involabo, sicque illos, ut confido, profligatos
I them from the-flank shall-fly-upon and-so them as I-trust routed
exterminabimus. Misit autem et ad Ungros, qui dicerent:
we-shall-exterminate he-sent moreover also to the-Hungarians men-who should-say
Quare, viri fortissimi, mecum armis agere vultis? Expedit
why men most-brave with-me in-arms to-deal do-you-wish it-is-expedient
enim utrisque nostrum magis, ut pacifici simus. Venite ergo
for for-both of-us more that peaceful we-be come therefore
mecum et hostes meos illos eradamus de terra uberrima,
with-me and enemies my those let-us-root-out from the-land most-fertile
vosque ibi considite! Sed et insuper provinciam proximam
and-you there settle but also besides the-province nearest
terræ illi, si mecum in fide senseritis, libens vobis
to-the-land that if with-me in faith you-shall-have-sided willingly to-you
tribuam. Consenserant utrimque legationi regiæ. Erumpunt
I-shall-grant had-consented on-both-sides to-the-embassy royal burst-out
Saraceni e valle Fraxnith confertissimi; die et
the-Saracens from the-valley of-Fraxinet most-crowded on-the-day and
loco condictis occurrere parant Ungri; rex suis
in-the-place appointed to-meet prepare the-Hungarians the-king with-his-men
undecumque collectis aciem ordinat, specie velut his
from-wherever gathered the-battle-line orders in-appearance as-if to-these
et his futurus subsidiis. Quam acute, inquit, incidant
and to-those about-to-be for-aids how sharply he-says cut
lanceæ et gladii, hodie ostendite, socii mei fortissimi! Tam
the-lances and swords today show comrades my most-brave so
diversorum demonum utra pars vicerit, nemini sit
of-different demons which part shall-have-conquered to-no-one be

curæ! Victores esse qui cœperint, tribus vos partibus insilite;
of-care victors to-be who shall-have-begun on-three you sides leap-upon
parmis rejectis ferro utimini; nullo discrimine trucidetur
with-bucklers thrown-back the-sword use with-no distinction let-be-slaughtered
Saracenus et Ungar! Neminis illorum misereri certum est,
Saracen and Hungarian on-none of-them to-have-mercy certain it-is
quia mei quidem ipsorum miseret nemo. Confligunt tandem
because on-me indeed of-them has-pity no-one engage at-last
in conspectu regis in acie prospectantis electissimi
in the-sight of-the-king in the-battle-line looking-on the-most-chosen
satanæ milites et filii. Neutris cedentibus trucidantur
of-Satan soldiers and sons with-neither yielding are-slaughtered
utrimque ut victimæ. Tandemque rex animose pugnantibus
on-both-sides like victims and-at-last the-king spiritedly with-them-fighting
veritus, ne utra pars ad ultimum aufugeret, signo dato
fearing lest either part at the-last should-flee with-a-sign given
gradatim velud subsidians supervenit et undique ad hos et
step-by-step as-if supporting came-upon and on-all-sides for these and
illos prosternendos turmatim omnes circumdedit, fugæque
those to-be-laid-low in-troops all surrounded and-of-flight
locum non habentes, quos non occidit, captos Arelato
a-place not having whom not he-killed captured at-Arles
vendidit. Ipse vero paucis amissis Deo et sancto Mauricio,
he-sold he-himself but with-few lost to-God and to-Saint Maurice
in cujus ense et lancea ita pugnabat, laudibus triumphabat.
in whose sword and lance so he-fought with-praises triumphed
Et ut ad nos redeamus, Thieto tandem fratribus ad
and that to us we-may-return Thieto at-last with-the-brothers to
prospera et adversa æquanimiter ferenda in prædictis
prosperous and adverse-things calmly to-be-borne in the-aforesaid
tempestatibus acerrime præduratis et ad spiritalia ab
storms most-keenly hardened and to spiritual-things by

Engilberto reformatis initio gubernaculi sui facile præfuit.
Engilbert reformed at-the-beginning of-rule his easily presided
Sed infortuniis maxime dolendis in processu temporum
but by-misfortunes most to-be-grieved in the-course of-times
suorum prosecutus lacrimandæ tragediæ materiam posteris
his attended of-a-tearful tragedy the-matter to-posterity
reliquit. Nam monasterium sub illo crematum est ita.
left for the-monastery under him burned was thus
Lætania major dominicam incidit; fratribus cruces alias
the-Litany greater on-the-Sunday fell with-the-brothers the-crosses elsewhere
sequentibus, officinæ loci, ut moris est, non sunt
following the-workshops of-the-place as of-custom it-is not were
benedictæ. Et abinde morem patres statuunt, ut quocumque
blessed and from-then the-custom the-fathers establish that to-whatever
loci cruces sequamur, prespiter diei, si dominica sit,
of-place the-crosses we-follow the-priest of-the-day if Sunday it-be
claustrum circuiens benedicat. — Erant disciplinæ loci,
the-cloister going-round should-bless there-were the-disciplines of-the-place
ut semper, et tunc severe non modo in claustro, sed et
as always also then severe not only in the-cloister but also
in scolis exterius. Unde ætiam præter clericos, qui apud
in the-schools outside whence also besides clerics who among
nos sepe nutriti sunt, clarissimos ækclesiis variis multoties
us often nourished were most-illustrious to-churches various many-times
dedimus et episcopos. Et ut tragediam, quam dicturus
we-gave also bishops and that the-tragedy which about-to-tell
sum, consoler, vidi egomet ipse, Chuonrado imperatore in
I-am I-may-console I-saw I myself with-Conrad the-emperor at
Ingilinheim pascha agente, sancti Galli monacho scolas
Ingelheim Easter keeping of-Saint Gall a-monk the-schools
Magontiæ curante, officium, ut solitum est, in medio
of-Mainz in-charge-of the-office as wonted it-is in the-middle

chori crebro coronati inspectu agere. Cumque manum
of-the-choir often of-the-crowned-one in-sight to-perform and-when the-hand
ille ad modulos sequentiæ pingendos rite levasset, tres
he for the-measures of-the-sequence to-be-painted duly had-raised three
episcopi, hominis quondam discipuli, imperatori in throno
bishops of-the-man formerly disciples to-the-emperor on the-throne
proximi: Ibimus, ajunt, domine, et magistrum in eo, quod
nearest we-shall-go they-say lord and the-master in that which
ipse nos docuit, juvabimus. Illo hoc gratum fore dicente,
he-himself us taught we-shall-help with-him this pleasing to-be saying
descendentes sotiantur sancti Galli monacho inclinantes
descending they-join of-Saint Gall the-monk bowing
inclinato, opus Dei, quod docuit, reverenter cum eo
with-the-bowed the-work of-God which he-taught reverently with him
perficiunt. Flebat homo cum gaudio gratias referens sancto
complete wept the-man with joy thanks rendering to-Saint
Gallo. Post missas peractas vix ille coactus pedes imperii,
Gall after the-masses completed scarcely he compelled the-feet of-the-emperor
ut moris est, petere, auri uncias in eis positas sustulit. Ad
as of-custom it-is to-seek of-gold ounces on them placed took-up to
imperatricem autem ridente imperatore per vim tractus,
the-empress moreover with-the-emperor laughing by force drawn
et ibi aurum ejus sumpsit e pedibus. Mahthilda quoque,
and there gold her he-took from (her)-feet Matilda also
soror ejus, anulum illi in digitum, vellet nollet, inseruit.
sister his a-ring to-him onto the-finger willing unwilling put
Hæc ergo nequaquam aurium inflationi satagens
these-things therefore by-no-means of-the-ears to-the-inflation busying-myself
dixerim, sed ut honorem doctrinæ et disciplinæ loci nostri
I-would-say but that the-honor of-the-teaching and discipline of-place our

præmemorans dampna, quæ a scolaribus pro disciplinis
recalling the-losses which from the-scholars for disciplines
pertulimus, quamvis inportabilia fuerint, portabilius audiantur.
we-have-borne although unbearable they-were more-bearably may-be-heard
Erat, ut diximus, dies sancto Marco solemnis, et ut
it-was as we-said the-day to-Saint Mark solemn and as
solent scolasticuli diebus festis, ut cras vapulent,
are-wont the-little-scholars on-days festive so-that tomorrow they-may-be-beaten
sepe mereri, veniam per præcatores vel inducias, ut
often to-earn pardon through intercessors or a-truce that
verius scribam, secunda feria habuerant. At tercia feria
more-truly I-may-write on-the-second weekday they-had but on-the-third weekday
exactoribus, quos circatores vocamus, culpas eorum magistro
with-the-exacters whom circators we-call the-faults their to-the-master
rememorantibus, omnes exuere jubentur. Mittitur unus
recalling all to-strip are-bidden is-sent one
vapulatorum in superiora domus pro virgis ibi repositis
of-those-to-be-beaten into the-upper-parts of-the-house for the-rods there stored
deferendis. At ille, ut se et socios liberaret, titionem
to-be-brought but he that himself and (his)-comrades he-might-free a-brand
de fornacula quadam citissime rapiens aridis lignis tecto
from a-little-furnace certain most-quickly snatching into-dry timbers to-the-roof
proximis infixit, et quantum ocii erat, conflavit. At
nearest stuck and as-much-as of-leisure there-was blew but
exactoribus illum, cur tardaret, inclamantibus, domum ardere
with-the-exacters him why he-delayed calling the-house to-burn
vociferans reclamavit, sicque tegulis aridis, aquilone
shouting cried-back and-so with-the-shingles dry with-the-north-wind
quoque flante, incendia rapientibus domus tota flammis
also blowing the-fires catching the-house whole with-flames
conluxit. Revestiti dicto citius omnes magistro spreto
blazed reclothed than-said quicker all with-the-master scorned

prosiliunt, tecta conscendunt. Tegulas disjectas cum igne
leap-forth the-roofs they-climb the-shingles scattered with fire
aquilo rapuit et in turris cujusdam culmina æcclesiæ
the-north-wind snatched and onto of-a-tower certain the-tops of-the-church
sancti Galli proxime volantes portavit. Erat turris ipsa ab
of-Saint Gall nearest flying carried was tower that by
Hartmoto quondam ad hoc ipsum ignis discrimen tribus
Hartmut once for this very of-fire danger with-three
muri obvoluta tegminibus, ut thesaurus æcclesiæ, si casu
of-wall wrapped coverings that the-treasure of-the-church if by-chance
locus ardescat, in hanc per criptam pervium illac usum
the-place should-catch-fire into this through the-crypt passable that-way use
habentem raptim portetur. Hæc vero tegulis ligneis super
having hastily might-be-carried this but with-shingles wooden above
lapideas tecta ignem, ut diximus, rapuit apsideque sanctarum
the-stone-ones roofed fire as we-said caught and-the-apse of-the-holy
virginum imminens eam, ut adhuc videre est, mordacius igne
virgins overhanging it as still to-see it-is more-bitingly with-fire
cremavit. Mira, ut a senibus, qui tunc juvenes aderant,
burned wonderful as from the-old-men who then young were-present
audivimus, mora erat incendii, priusquam superius tectum
we-have-heard the-delay was of-the-fire before the-upper roof
ignesceret. Campanas enim omnes depositas cum universo
caught-fire the-bells for all taken-down with all
æcclesiæ suppellectili evehunt. Cancellos confractos circa et
of-the-church furniture they-carry-out the-chancel-rails broken around and
super aram sancti Galli convolvunt, ne ossa ejus quidem
over the-altar of-Saint Gall they-pile lest the-bones his indeed
igne solverentur. Sancti Otmari tandem corpus exportant,
by-fire should-be-dissolved of-Saint Othmar at-last the-body they-carry-out
cunctaque, quæ exportant, in domiciliis curtis abbatis, quæ
and-all which they-carry-out in the-dwellings of-the-court of-the-abbot which

incendium vix evaserant, sub custodibus locant. In talibus
the-fire scarcely had-escaped under guards they-place in such
miseriis et infortuniis Thieto spectator anxius circumcursabat.
miseries and misfortunes Thieto a-watcher anxious ran-about

Capitula 68–72

CRALOH, VICTOR, AND ENZELIN

Gold is washed from the ashes, books are stolen, and the brothers scatter. The dean Craloh, Thieto's brother, is threatened by the insolent Rhaetian Victor, who leaves; Thieto has Craloh elected abbot in his place. Victor's kinsmen, refused Pfäfers, swear revenge, and Craloh deposes Victor's uncle Enzelin, provost of Pfäfers. When Liudolf rebels and comes to Saint Gall, Craloh flees to King Otto, and the brothers elect his brother Anno, who begins the town walls and dies. At court Enzelin wins Otto with elegies and is promised reconciliation with his abbot.

Incendio postea finito cineres parietibus æcclesiæ proximi
with-the-fire afterward finished the-ashes to-the-walls of-the-church nearest
caute collecti in profluente purgantur, Hartmuotique aurea
carefully gathered in the-flowing-water are-cleansed and-of-Hartmut the-golden
talenta guttatim micantia eruuntur. Varietas hominum de
talents drop-by-drop glittering are-dug-out the-variety of-men from
viciniis, ut fit, concurrentium multa fraudibus
the-neighborhoods as happens running-together many-things by-frauds
auferunt. Enimvero, ut ajebant, nec ipsi custodes rerum
carry-off indeed as they-said not-even the-very guards of-the-things
fidem tenebant. Libri multi rapiuntur, tum cætera. Post talia
faith kept books many are-snatched then the-rest after such
ambustorum infortunia fratribus nec tecta, nec victualia
of-the-burned misfortunes with-the-brothers neither roofs nor victuals
per spatia aliqua temporum habentibus, fit occasio
for spaces some of-time having there-is-made occasion

temptationibus. Per montes enim et valles proximasque
for-temptations through the-mountains for and valleys and-the-nearest
villas, quaqua poterant, fratres dum loca manendi querere
villages wherever they-could the-brothers while places of-staying to-seek
non erat inhiberi, tum vere, tum false, ut fit, oriuntur
not it-was to-be-forbidden now truly now falsely as happens arise
infamiæ. Thieto enim, ut necessitas erat, tum per se, tum
ill-reports Thieto for as the-necessity was now by himself now
per nuntios de fratribus idoneos, si quos conpati
through messengers from-among the-brothers suitable if any to-have-compassion
sperabat, miseriis loci consulere rogabat. Relicti sunt
he-hoped on-the-miseries of-the-place to-consult asked left were
circa ambusta et cineres Galli senes cum junioribus
around the-burned-things and the-ashes of-Gall the-old-men with the-younger
non adeo ad imperia parentibus. Conveniunt, qui et quando
not very to the-commands obeying gather who and when
volunt, ad tuguria in ambustis ad hoc ipsum contexta;
they-wish at the-huts in the-burned-ruins for this very-purpose woven
fiunt disciplinæ per concordes, refelluntur per discordes.
are-made the-disciplines by the-agreeing are-refuted by the-disagreeing
Quidam enim disciplinas detrectantium, in quibus in tali
some for the-disciplines of-those-shirking in whom in such
tempestate et spes utique esset, excusso jugo recalcitrant.
a-storm also hope surely there-was with-shaken-off yoke kick-back
In quibus erat Victor quidam Retianus doctus præ ceteris,
among whom was Victor a-certain Rhaetian learned before the-rest
sed juvenis insolens et minus obœdiens. Erat tunc Craloh,
but a-youth insolent and less obedient there-was then Craloh
abbatis quidem frater, decanus, homo antique disciplinæ et
of-the-abbot indeed the-brother dean a-man of-ancient discipline and
severitatis et, ut ajebant, interdum pernimie, et rigidus in
severity and as they-said sometimes too-much also rigid in

ultionibus. Fit Victor reus; invehitur Craloh in hominem
punishments becomes Victor guilty inveighs Craloh against the-man
severius. Victor autem rebellio factus inter convitia illum
more-severely Victor but rebellious made amid insults him
insilire parans alapam minatur. At ille pertinacem devitans
to-leap-upon preparing a-slap threatens but he the-stubborn-one avoiding
equo ascenso fratri foras agenti turbam nuntiat. At
with-a-horse mounted to-the-brother outside dwelling the-turmoil announces but
Anno frater, et ipse quidem homo mitissimus, Victori et
Anno the-brother also himself indeed a-man most-mild to-Victor both
propter generis, et propter ingenii nobilitatem semper
on-account-of of-race and on-account-of of-wit the-nobility always
amicus, in gratiam eum reducere frustra parat. Nam abbatem
friendly into favor him to-bring-back in-vain prepares for the-abbot
animosum supervenire Victor audiens loco cessit. At
spirited to-come-up Victor hearing from-the-place withdrew but
Thieto ætate jam gravescens laborumque perthesus, veritus
Thieto in-age now growing-heavy and-of-labors weary fearing
ætiam, ne juventus soluta licentia insolesceret, æcclesia
also lest the-youth with-loosened license might-grow-insolent with-the-church
et claustro vicinorum juvamine tectis, quosque fratrum
and the-cloister of-neighbors by-help roofed whomever of-the-brothers
valuit, ut Cralohum abbatem pro se eligerent,
he-could that Craloh as-abbot in-place-of himself they-should-elect
sollicitavit idque Victore avulso proclivius effecit. Ottonem
urged and-that with-Victor torn-away more-readily brought-about Otto
adiit; germanum ipse pro se abbatem fecit.
approached the-brother he-himself in-place-of himself abbot made
Jussum quidem, ut, si Victor ad se supplex venerit,
bidden indeed that if Victor to him as-a-suppliant shall-have-come
suscipiatur; nam propinquorum ejus quidam per regem,
he-should-be-received for of-the-kinsmen his some through the-king

quæ vellent, effecerant. Quibus ille versus et epistolas,
what they-wished had-brought-about to-whom he verses and letters
quibus se imperio innotescerent, conquestivas dabat.
by-which themselves to-the-empire they-might-make-known complaining gave
Rediit Craloh domum; quo festive suscepto Thieto caminatam
returned Craloh home whom festively received Thieto a-heated-room
quandam, veterum seniorum angulum vocatam, introiit; loca,
certain of-the-old elders the-corner called entered the-places
quæ abbatibus supra diximus dicata, in finem vitæ retinuit.
which to-the-abbots above we-said dedicated to the-end of-life he-retained
Tandem Victor cum propinquis suis, viris potentibus, venit;
at-last Victor with kinsmen his men powerful came
supplex, ut jussum est, recipitur. Ipsi tamen propinqui
a-suppliant as bidden it-was is-received they-themselves however the-kinsmen
hominis, ut ei abbatiam Favariensem traderet, precia
of-the-man that to-him the-abbey of-Pfäfers he-might-hand-over prices
et prædia Craloho porrigentes frustrati sunt, iratique recedunt
and estates to-Craloh holding-out frustrated were and-angry withdraw
minati, si unquam copia fuerit, ultionem. Compulit
threatening if ever opportunity shall-have-been vengeance compelled
tandem Craloh fratres, errovagari post arsuram solitos,
at-last Craloh the-brothers to-wander-about after the-burning accustomed
claustro stabiles vivere, silere et loqui pro tempore,
in-the-cloister stable to-live to-be-silent and to-speak for the-time
regulam cottidie audire et facere, licentias interdum, quæ
the-rule daily to-hear and to-give leaves sometimes which
etiam irregulares essent, tanquam novitiis dare, arcum tendere
even irregular were as-if to-novices to-give the-bow to-bend
et laxare, tandem vero et acrius, quoniam sic homo erat,
and to-slacken at-last but also more-sharply since so the-man was
in aliquibus conmissa punire, unde ætiam, ut fit, odio
in some-things offenses to-punish whence also as happens to-hatred

patuit. Cujus scintillas, quaqua potuit, Victor inflammavit,
he-lay-open of-which the-sparks wherever he-could Victor inflamed
propter quod et ipsi in scolis, quas ei commiserat,
on-account-of which also to-him-himself in the-schools which to-him he-had-entrusted
plura incommodasset, severius inconsulto eo cum
many-things he-had-inconvenienced more-severely without-consulting him with
pueris agendo. Sed et prima utrisque discordia manet alta
the-boys acting but also the-first of-both the-discord remains deep
mente reposta. Surgit tandem in abbatem pluralis querela
in-mind laid-up rises at-last against the-abbot manifold complaint
tum a familia, tum a fratribus jugum ejus propter
both from the-household and from the-brothers the-yoke his on-account-of
insolentiam detrectantibus. Nam et Enzilinum quendam,
insolence shirking for also Enzelin a-certain
Victoris patruum, Favariensium præpositum, ad se accitum,
of-Victor the-uncle of-those-of-Pfäfers the-provost to himself summoned
cum reum fecisset, verberatum deposuit. Qui tamen, cum
when guilty he-had-made beaten he-deposed who however since
esset astute acutus, ultioni se, quam loco suo dicere
he-was cunningly sharp for-vengeance himself which in-place its to-tell
habebimus, nepote acuente præparavit.
we-shall-have with-(his)-nephew sharpening prepared
Erat his temporibus tempestas illa pluribus nota inter
there-was in-these times storm that to-many known between
Ottonem quidem et Liutolfum, patrem et filium. Sed
Otto indeed and Liudolf father and son but
Liutolfus per Suevos secum tum sentientes Italiam petens
Liudolf through the-Swabians with-him then siding Italy seeking
locum sancti Galli minax abbati propter insolentiæ
the-place of-Saint Gall threatening to-the-abbot on-account-of of-insolence
querelas adiit. Craloh autem, audito adventu ejus, clam
the-complaints approached Craloh moreover with-heard the-arrival his secretly

assumpto Waningo fratre et paucis servitoribus ad Ottonem
taking-along Waning the-brother and a-few servants to Otto
in Franciam profugus venit. Paraturas vero sanctuarii ille,
into Franconia a-fugitive came the-vestments but of-the-sanctuary he
quas secum inconsiderate carissimas sumpsit, furto amisit.
which with-him inconsiderately dearest took by-theft lost
Cum autem et ipse rex de eo non bene sentiret,
when moreover also himself the-king about him not well thought
pro fide tamen, qua fugiens venit, sancto Uodalrico
for the-faith however with-which fleeing he-came with-Saint Ulrich
condiscipulo quondam suo, qui tunc aulæ aderat, pro eo
fellow-student formerly his who then at-the-court was-present for him
loquente, cum gratia receptus est. Et cum de privato
speaking with favor received he-was and when from the-privy-purse
regis interea pasci juberetur, magnam cum suis pœnuriam
of-the-king meanwhile to-be-fed he-was-bidden great with his-men want
pertulit, propinquis Enzelini et Victoris, mensæ regiæ et
he-bore with-the-kinsmen of-Enzelin and of-Victor of-the-table royal and
victualium yconomis, qui ei et in hoc et in aliis, quaqua
of-victuals stewards who to-him both in this and in others wherever
poterant, gravi inconmodo erant. Liutolfus igitur monasterio
they-could a-heavy inconvenience were Liudolf therefore at-the-monastery
biduum immoratus electione fratrum Cralohum detestantium
two-days having-stayed by-the-election of-the-brothers Craloh detesting
Annonem quidem, fratrem ejus, abbatem eis posuit,
Anno indeed brother his as-abbot over-them set
pluraque gratiæ et dilectionis signa ostendens fausta
and-many of-grace and of-love signs showing auspicious-things
sibi clamantium vocibus prosecutus recessit. Anno vero,
for-him of-those-shouting by-the-voices attended withdrew Anno but
homo dignissimus, si digne esset electus, frugi abbatis
a-man most-worthy if worthily he-were elected of-a-thrifty abbot

egerat opera et virtutes apud Deum et homines, et
had-performed the-works and virtues before God and men and
anno regiminis sui uno et fere dimidio, quibus advixerat,
in-a-year of-rule his one and almost a-half which he-lived
inter præclara, quæ passim accelerans effecerat opera,
among illustrious which everywhere hastening he-had-accomplished works
vallos urbis, sicut per secula videre est, miro
the-ramparts of-the-town as through the-ages to-see it-is with-wonderful
conatu effoderat; muros ipsos cum turribus tredecim
effort he-had-dug-out the-walls themselves with towers thirteen
fundans supra terram ultra genu altos obiens reliquit.
founding above the-ground beyond the-knee high dying he-left
At Craloh cum rege duos fere annos exul ducens ab
but Craloh with the-king two almost years exile spending by
yconomis, quos diximus, frequenter turbatus, infortunia
the-stewards whom we-mentioned often troubled misfortunes
multa perpessus est. Venit interea et Enzelinus in aulam,
many suffered has came meanwhile also Enzelin into the-court
quem diximus, cœpitque cum propinquis suis yconomis et
whom we-mentioned and-began with kinsmen his stewards and
aliis, quos plurimo, ut ajebant, auro oberaverat, amicis,
others whom with-very-much as they-said gold he-had-indebted friends
ubi ociose versari, vitabundus tamen, ne Craloh se videret,
where at-leisure to-dwell avoiding-notice however lest Craloh him should-see
sollicite agere, versibus ætiam regi se per amicos
anxiously to-act with-verses also to-the-king himself through friends
conqueri; nam et ipse utique, velud apud sanctum Gallum
to-complain for also he-himself surely as-if at Saint Gall
educatus, admodum erat literatus. Et cum elegos ejus rex
brought-up very was lettered and when the-elegies his the-king
legisset, flosculis verborum delectatus querelis
had-read with-the-little-flowers of-words delighted with-the-complaints

compassus est. Tandem vero aliquandiu bene cælatus casu
sympathized has at-last but for-some-time well concealed by-chance
Cralohum incurrit. Cui ille: Ve tibi, Enzeline, ait, quid
Craloh ran-into to-whom he woe to-you Enzelin says what
tibi hic negotii? Per coronam meam istam, inquit, malo
to-you here of-business by crown my this he-says to-evil
tuo venisti. Econtra ille, quod risum multis moverat,
your you-have-come in-return he which laughter in-many had-moved
Rhetianus et minus Teutonus: Cotilf, erro! respondit, id est:
a-Rhaetian and less a-German Cotilf erro answered that is
Deus adjuvat, domne! locoque quantocius cedens
God helps lord and-from-the-place as-quickly-as-possible withdrawing
minas ipsas in lacrimabiles elegos transtulit et regi
the-threats themselves into tearful elegies he-turned and to-the-king
eos ipse ostendit. Quibus item ille delectatus hominemque
them himself showed by-which likewise he delighted and-the-man
intuitus osculari se jubet, regratiandum pro versibus,
having-looked-at to-kiss himself bids to-be-thanked for the-verses
si ambo viverent, pollicitus. Cum abbate tuo te, inquit,
if both should-live promised with abbot your you he-says
quem jam domum regredi pace reddita volo, ubi primum
whom now home to-return with-peace restored I-wish when first
copia fuerit, pacificabo; et si quid rei tuæ cum
opportunity shall-have-been I-shall-reconcile and if anything of-affair your with
ipso moliri potero, libens agam. Nam Liutolfus in Italia
him to-contrive I-shall-be-able willing I-shall-do for Liudolf in Italy
mortuus erat; sed et Anno lacrimandus suis obierat.
dead was but also Anno to-be-wept-for by-his-people had-died

Capitula 73–75

THE LOSS OF PFÄFERS AND THE BISHOP AT THE DOOR

Otto offers Craloh a sheep to carry home, Enzelin, not lost; when Craloh refuses, Bishop Hartbert of Chur claims Pfäfers for himself, the bribed courtiers declare it the king's, and Otto gives it to Enzelin. Saint Ulrich reconciles Otto with Craloh and brings him home, but Victor throws the gospel book back at Ulrich, and the brothers shut themselves in. At the church door Ulrich asks to speak with his old schoolfellows Ekkehard, Notker Peppercorn, Gerald, and Burchard, who ask him to bring the layman Amalung alone; the dean Walto sets out the brothers' grievance against a deserter abbot, and Ulrich begs Victor's pardon and gives him a costly purple.

Mane sequente Craloh in alloquium regis vocatus
in-the-morning following Craloh to a-talk with-the-king called
assedit; sed et Hartperto Curiensi episcopo assedente, rex
sat-by but also with-Hartbert of-Chur the-bishop sitting-by the-king
ait: Quoniam quidem, abba mi, ad caulas redire paras,
says since indeed abbot my to the-sheepfolds to-return you-prepare
ovem tibi quandam, non tamen perditam, in humeris pono
a-sheep for-you certain not however lost on (your)-shoulders I-place
reportandam. Enimvero non dubito, quin noveris, quem dico.
to-be-carried-back indeed not I-doubt but-that you-know whom I-mean
Cum autem ille aliquandiu sederet ovemque tandem recipere
when moreover he for-some-time sat and-the-sheep at-last to-receive
nollet, motus est rex; sed episcopus ita est quasi pro nobis
was-unwilling moved was the-king but the-bishop thus has as-if for us
locutus: Vide, rex, animum subditis non ferendum, qui et
spoken see king a-mind in-subjects not to-be-borne which also
tibi post gratiam clementer exhibitam resultare non metuit.
to-you after grace clemently shown to-spring-back not fears
Et acute subjunxit: Neque enim, si justitiam, mi rex, ipse
and sharply added nor for if justice my king yourself

mihi feceris, ejus est ovis illa, quoniam meæ semper erat
to-me you-shall-have-done his is sheep that since mine always was
illa abbatia, quousque Salomonis episcopi tegnis inde est
that abbey until of-Salomon the-bishop by-the-tricks thence it-was
subducta. At yconomi astantes: In fide, inquiunt, qua tibi,
withdrawn but the-stewards standing-by by the-faith they-say which to-you
rex, juravimus, neminis est justius Favariensis abbatia, quam
king we-have-sworn of-no-one is more-justly of-Pfäfers the-abbey than
fiscaliter tua. Quibus dictis aulici omnes attestando assultant.
fiscally yours with-which said the-courtiers all by-attesting leap-up
Rex vero in ira consurgens consessum diremit. Craloh
the-king but in anger rising the-session broke-up Craloh
autem in veniam frustra cecidit, vehementer frustratus gratia
moreover into pardon in-vain fell vehemently frustrated of-the-favor
domini. Sanctum autem Uodalricum audiens supervenientem,
of-(his)-lord Saint moreover Ulrich hearing coming-up
nocte in occursum ejus, qui ei infortunia sua panderent,
by-night to meet him men-who to-him misfortunes his should-lay-open
misit, ita mandans: Adjutor in oportunitatibus accelera
he-sent thus bidding helper in opportunities hasten
quantocius, quia famulus ego tuus sum in tribulatione. At
as-quickly-as-possible because servant I your am in tribulation but
aulici adventum sancti ut prævenirent, regem mane
the-courtiers the-arrival of-the-saint that they-might-forestall the-king in-the-morning
primo, ut conventu edicto de abbatia decerneret, rogant
early that with-an-assembly proclaimed about the-abbey he-might-decide ask
timentes, quia Ottoni intimus erat, sancti hominis præsentiam.
fearing since to-Otto intimate he-was of-the-holy man the-presence
Capita autem conventus, ut abbatiam fisco regio attestando
the-heads moreover of-the-assembly that the-abbey to-the-fisc royal by-attesting
addicerent, præstruunt, aurum Enzilini, quod plurimum, ut dixi,
they-might-assign prepare the-gold of-Enzelin which very-much as I-said

attulerat, oberando eis dilapidantes. Rege tum assidente,
he-had-brought by-indebting them squandering with-the-king then sitting-by
pari consessus testimonio fisco ejus addicitur abbatia,
with-equal of-the-session testimony to-the-fisc his is-assigned the-abbey
quam ipse ilico Enzilino ferula tradidit. Venit tandem
which he-himself at-once to-Enzelin with-the-staff handed-over came at-last
episcopus sanctus nil contradicere valens sancti Galli dampnis
the-bishop holy nothing to-gainsay able of-Saint Gall to-the-losses
optimumque ducens, si vel in gratiam amicum reducere
and-best thinking if at-least into favor (his)-friend to-bring-back
posset; quod tamen tandem consiliorum artificio sollicite
he-could which however at-last of-counsels by-artifice carefully
perfecit, rege quidem ante datam gratiam jurante, nisi
he-accomplished with-the-king indeed before the-given favor swearing unless
quod sibimet in tempestate bellica fidei specie advenerit, tam
that to-himself in storm warlike of-faith in-appearance he-had-come so
immitis animi abbas jam non foret. Conmissusque ipsi
harsh of-mind an-abbot now not he-would-be and-entrusted to-the-very
Dei viro redeunti, ut eum in sedem suam auctorabiliter
of-God man returning that him into seat his authoritatively
reponeret, fratres quoque, quibus invisus erat, reconciliaret.
he-might-replace the-brothers also to-whom hateful he-was he-might-reconcile
Craloh cum illo domum revertitur. Sed in monasterio
Craloh with him home returns but in the-monastery
in adventu illorum acerba fuit confusio. Ad recipiendum
at the-arrival their bitter was the-confusion for receiving
enim episcopum cum ewangelio, ætiamsi frater conscriptus
for the-bishop with the-gospel-book even-if brother enrolled
non fuerit, equum esse ut pariter occurrant, omnes
not he-be right to-be that together they-should-go-to-meet all
concordant, sed non sic quidem invisam Cralohi quidem
agree but not so indeed the-hated of-Craloh indeed

insolentiam. Suscipitur episcopus; Victor ewangelium optulit
insolence is-received the-bishop Victor the-gospel-book offered
ipsi; quod ubi ille osculatur, Victor revertitur. At episcopus
to-him which when he kisses Victor turns-back but the-bishop
currax post illum veniens, a capillo hominem capiens
running after him coming by the-hair the-man seizing
regiravit. At ille ewangelium in episcopum reiciens
turned-around but he the-gospel-book at the-bishop throwing-back
furibundus abscessit. Sed ipse codice suscepto abbati
raging went-off but he-himself with-the-book received to-the-abbot
porrigit, quem abbas osculatum suscipiens per se ipsum
holds-out which the-abbot kissed receiving by him himself
usque ad altare gestavit. Victor autem — sonore enim
all-the-way to the-altar carried Victor moreover sonorous for
vocis erat — responsorium: Deus qui sedes levat; quod
of-voice he-was the-responsory Deus qui sedes strikes-up which
fratres cæteri, quoniam ipse inter eos magni momenti
the-brothers other since he-himself among them of-great weight
erat, lugubriter percantantes claustrum spretis illis introeunt,
was mournfully singing-through the-cloister with-scorned them enter
et totum illud super se quidam claudentes partim de
and whole it upon themselves some closing partly by
nocte, partim palam recessuri oportunitatem exspectant.
night partly openly about-to-withdraw an-opportunity await
Erat autem, ut a patribus, qui intererant, audivimus, inter
was moreover as from the-fathers who were-present we-have-heard between
primam et terciam confusio ista. Venit episcopus cum suis
prime and terce confusion that comes the-bishop with his-men
et abbatis militibus ad hostium æcclesiæ, quod claustri est
and of-the-abbot soldiers to the-door of-the-church which of-the-cloister is
introitus. Pulsans vero nominatim condiscipulorum quondam
the-entrance knocking but by-name of-fellow-students once

postulat alloquium, hominum, qui, quaqua opus foret,
he-asks a-talk of-men who wherever need should-be
singulares loci sui columnæ quidem essent; inter quos erant,
singular of-place their pillars indeed were among whom were
de quibus loco suo Deo dante dicturi sumus magnalia:
about whom in-place its with-God granting about-to-tell we-are great-things
Ekkehardus post doctrinas decanus, Notkerus, quem pro
Ekkehard after the-teachings dean Notker whom for
severitate disciplinarum Piperis-Granum cognominabant, doctor,
the-severity of-the-disciplines Pepper-Corn they-surnamed a-doctor
pictor, medicus, Geraldus ab adolescentia usque senilem vitæ
painter physician Gerald from youth to aged of-life
finem semper scolarum magister, Burchardus post abbas,
the-end always of-the-schools master Burchard afterward abbot
præter singulares scientiæ et virtutum dotes nobilitate,
besides singular of-knowledge and of-virtues the-gifts by-nobility
qua et cæteri pollebant, regalis. Hi quatuor prælecti a
in-which also the-rest were-strong royal these four chosen by
fratribus januæ æcclesiæ clausæ appropiant et episcopum,
the-brothers to-the-door of-the-church closed approach and the-bishop
si ad se intrare dignetur, Amalungum ut secum solum
if to them to-enter he-deign Amalung that with-him alone
sumeret, rogant. Erat autem hic Ekkehardi frater, laicus
he-should-take ask was moreover this-one of-Ekkehard the-brother a-layman
admodum literatus, orator in conciliis facundissimus, consilio
very lettered an-orator in councils most-eloquent in-counsel
magnus, religione pene monachus, qui et dulcis ad omnia
great in-religion almost a-monk who also sweet toward all-things
erat et jocundus, in quodcumque rem, ut ajebant, vertere
was and pleasant into whatever the-thing as they-said to-turn

vellet, potentissimus. Huic soli, ut audivimus, laico
he-might-wish most-powerful to-this-one alone as we-have-heard a-layman
ab ullius memoria capituli domum intrare permissum est.
from of-anyone the-memory of-the-chapter the-house to-enter allowed was
Opere precium erat dicere, si memor sim, quæ a
of-the-work worth it-were to-tell if mindful I-be what-things from
diversis diversa audivi, quantus utique Dei spiritus die
different-men different-things I-heard how-greatly surely of-God the-spirit on-day
illa tonuerit, quæ ratio et confessionis fratrum humilitas:
that thundered what reason and of-the-confession of-the-brothers humility
reos se quidem esse, quod dominum insolentem minus
guilty themselves indeed to-be that a-lord insolent less
perpeti possint, et quod is, quem liberi patrem elegerint,
to-endure they-can and that he whom free-men as-father they-chose
pro liberis se servos fecerit, equanimius non tolerarint;
for free-men themselves slaves has-made more-calmly not they-have-tolerated
ewangelicæ patientiæ esse, usque ad mortem obœdire: sed
of-gospel patience it-is all-the-way to death to-obey but
hoc, si in persecutione tyrannus infestet, carnifex laniet;
this if in persecution a-tyrant should-attack an-executioner should-tear
se quidem in pace æcclesiæ patrem, qui filios diligere,
themselves indeed in the-peace of-the-church a-father who sons to-love
non odire, pastorem, quem oves tondere, non glutire libeat,
not to-hate a-shepherd whom the-sheep to-shear not to-swallow it-pleases
privilegii jure elegisse; illum vero, lupo veniente
by-right of-privilege to-have-chosen him but with-the-wolf coming
noctu, nemini ovium verbum dantem fugiisse, se
by-night to-none of-the-sheep a-word giving to-have-fled themselves
lupis reliquisse; insuper thesauros æcclesiæ clam se
to-the-wolves to-have-left besides the-treasures of-the-church secretly by-him
raptos perdidisse; tandemque, postquam abbatiam sancto Gallo
snatched to-have-lost and-at-last after the-abbey for-Saint Gall

honoram in cautela sui amisit, quasi re bene gesta,
honorable in caution his he-lost as-if with-the-thing well done
super nos tanquam pastor et pater, ajunt, venit, quibus
over us as shepherd and father they-say he-has-come to-whom
utique nec amicus est; post et quam nos desertor aufugit
surely not a-friend he-is after also that us a-deserter fled
neque per literas, neque per nuntium unquam uno verbo
neither by letters nor by messenger ever with-one word
consolatus est. Et Walto decanus: Sed, o sancte Dei frater
consoled has and Walto the-dean but O holy-one of-God brother
noster tanto tempore, quoniam per te nobis desertorem
our for-so-long a-time since through you upon-us the-deserter
ipsum imperii jussu iterum inponendum audivimus,
himself of-the-empire by-the-command again to-be-imposed we-heard
tibi episcopo et fratri honorem debitum impendere non
to-you bishop and brother the-honor owed to-pay not
dubitavimus, sed illi non ita. Tu quoque insolentia, qua
we-hesitated but to-him not so you also the-insolence which
volebas, usus es in fratrem nostrum et tuum. Scias autem,
you-wished used have against brother our and yours know moreover
nobis animo firmissime sedisse, reo aperto claustro,
to-us in-mind most-firmly to-have-settled for-the-guilty with-opened the-cloister
quod quidam inconsultius clauserunt, quoniam quidem nostrum
which some too-rashly shut since indeed ours
est nemini manu resistere, introitum non vetare, domicilium
it-is to-no-one with-hand to-resist entrance not to-forbid the-dwelling
autem, quod per sanctum Gallum nidus noster est, usque
moreover which through Saint Gall nest our is all-the-way
ad querelas regi dirigendas, quoquo modo illum patiamur,
to complaints to-the-king to-be-directed in-whatever way him we-may-endure
etiam si alapas incusserit, velle fovere. Quorundam autem
even if slaps he-shall-have-struck to-wish to-cherish of-certain-ones moreover

animos, qui eum fugere et, ut ipsi ajebant, tyranno
the-minds who him to-flee and as they-themselves said to-the-tyrant
cedere cogitabant, egre sedavimus, et quicquid Deus de
to-yield were-thinking hardly we-calmed and whatever God concerning
nobis fieri pro peccatis permiserit, nobiscum pati
us to-be-done for sins shall-have-permitted with-us to-suffer
persuasimus. Postquam sic per Waltonem decanum, hominem
we-persuaded after thus through Walto the-dean a-man
preter dotes generis et virtutum verbo potentem, omnium
besides gifts of-birth and of-virtues in-word powerful with-the-assent
assensu peroratum est, episcopus lacrimatur. Et Amalunch:
of-all pleaded it-was the-bishop weeps and Amalung
Nobis duobus, inquit, qui ad tantæ molis causam introducti
for-us two he-says who to of-so-great weight a-cause brought-in
sumus, nunc non est flendum, sed solatiis, si quæ
have-been now not it-is to-be-wept but with-consolations if any
possumus, et consiliis in articulo hoc commodis, sancte pater,
we-can and with-counsels at moment this suitable holy father
agendum. Optimum autem videri in aurem dixit, ut ipsum
to-be-acted best moreover to-seem into the-ear he-said that he-himself
primum fratris, in quem manum misit, animum, nec non
first of-the-brother on whom a-hand he-laid the-mind and also
et omnium fratrum, quantum posset, leniret, ne tristiciam
and of-all the-brothers as-much-as he-could should-soothe lest sadness
hanc super tristiciam habentes minus parerent consiliis.
this upon sadness having less they-should-obey the-counsels
Surgens vero episcopus, veniam quidem ab omnibus sibi
rising but the-bishop pardon indeed from all to-him
quidem assurgentibus petens, Victori per se prosternitur. A
indeed rising seeking to-Victor by himself prostrates-himself by
quo sublevatus pacem, decano monente, viro sanctus
whom raised-up peace with-the-dean advising to-the-man the-holy-one

obtulit et recepit; purpuram vero magni precii, quam ipse
offered and received the-purple but of-great price which he-himself
protinus sancto Gallo dedit, fratri læso postea tradidit.
straightway to-Saint Gall gave to-the-brother hurt afterward handed-over

Capitula 76–78

THE RECONCILIATION AND VICTOR BLINDED

Ulrich and Amalung counsel Craloh to bend a little and make peace with the brothers' leaders; after Amalung's dry jest about blessings, both sides kiss, the abbot is set on Benedict's throne, and Amalung leads the sequence Laus tibi sit. *Only Victor storms out. Later, leaving secretly for Enzelin, Victor is stopped by the abbot's soldier, strikes him down, and is blinded by the soldier's men; the soldier is killed and his squire hanged. The dean Walto refuses to nurse the victim at the abbot's bidding, and Craloh wastes away at his answer. Notker heals Victor's wounds; he teaches at Strasbourg under Bishop Erchinbald and dies a hermit in the Hochfeld mountains, honored as a saint.*

Consilio tum breviter habito, concordiæ cedere omnibus
with-counsel then briefly held to-concord to-yield with-all
persuasis, Victor tantum solus conditiones quasdam cum
persuaded Victor only alone conditions certain with
abbate agendas instrepitat, cui animo saniores resultant;
the-abbot to-be-arranged clamors to-whom in-mind the-saner rebound
introductoque in claustrum abbate, episcopus cum Amalungo
and-with-brought into the-cloister the-abbot the-bishop with Amalung
in partem illum sumentes tragediam fratrum pandunt,
into a-part him taking the-tragedy of-the-brothers disclose
qualemque se inter eos veniens exhibeat, præmonent.
and-of-what-sort himself among them coming he-should-show forewarn
Enimvero nisi rigori solito verbis et gestu, prout tempus
indeed unless to-rigor wonted in-words and in-gesture as the-time

tunc erat, aliquantulum cederet, novissima pejora prioribus
then was a-little he-should-yield the-last worse than-the-first
futura præsagant. At ille, quæcumque duo illi suadeant —
about-to-be they-foresee but he whatever-things the-two those might-urge
tamen, ne abbatis nomen in se vilesceret, videant —
provided-only lest of-the-abbot the-name in him should-grow-cheap they-see
facere spondet. Et episcopus: Sunt, inquit, inter ipsos viri,
to-do promises and the-bishop there-are he-says among them men
ut nosti, quibus hoc regnum majoris consilium non habet,
as you-know than-whom this kingdom of-greater counsel not has
regi ipsi noti et grati, quibus te placet primitus
to-the-king himself known and pleasing with-whom you it-pleases first
pacificari et eorum consulto rem aggredi. — Bene,
to-be-reconciled and their by-counsel the-thing to-approach well
ait, sanctissime, monuisti; id ambo ut agatis, postulo.
he-says most-holy-one you-have-warned that both that you-may-do I-ask
Ingreditur tunc solus persuasor fratrum episcopus; quibus
enters then alone the-persuader of-the-brothers the-bishop with-whom
lenitis, cum decanum assumere regrediens vellet, sine
softened when the-dean to-take returning he-wished without
capite se inveniri nolle cæteri inquiunt. Quatuor
a-head themselves to-be-found to-be-unwilling the-others say four
autem illos, quos diximus, cum illo progredi sanxerunt,
moreover those whom we-mentioned with him to-go-forward they-decreed
quibus ille in aurem consulto quedam locutus cum ipsis
to-whom he into the-ear by-design certain-things having-spoken with them
egreditur, abbatem dux talibus aggressurus conmilitonibus.
goes-out the-abbot as-leader with-such about-to-attack fellow-soldiers
Et subridens dixit: Prima conjunctio acerrima est. Amalunch
and smiling he-said the-first encounter most-fierce is Amalung
autem, ubi germanum vidit cum illis, surgens occurrit viris,
moreover when (his)-brother he-saw with them rising ran-to-meet the-men

et silentio: Benedictionem ab illo, ait, non adhuc petatis;
and in-silence a-blessing from him he-says not yet seek
sed patientes estote et confirmate corda, et taciti usque
but patient be and strengthen (your)-hearts and silent all-the-way
dum, quid sentiat, ab ipso audiatis, consistite. Sicut
until what he-may-think from him you-may-hear stand as
silva, inquit, personet, sic echo resultet. Appropiantibus
the-forest he-says may-resound so the-echo may-rebound to-those-approaching
vero abbas assurgens: Benedicite! prætulit. Quibus tacitis,
but the-abbot rising Benedicite set-forth with-them silent
Amalunch: Quantum mihi, inquit, de regula innotuit,
Amalung as-much-as to-me he-says from the-rule has-become-known
minores a majore benedictionem habent pro tempore petere.
the-lesser from the-greater a-blessing have for the-time to-seek
Et episcopus: Magna, inquit, donaria tibi, frater, offerimus. Et
and the-bishop great he-says gifts to-you brother we-offer and
ille: Utinam mihi, inquid, ut ego ipsis offerar, Dominus
he would-that to-me he-says that I to-them may-be-offered the-Lord
donet. Factum est utrimque silentium; parantur alloquia. Quæ
may-grant made it-was on-both-sides silence are-prepared addresses which
Amalunch, ne forte commotionem parerent, pertimescens:
Amalung lest perhaps commotion they-should-beget fearing
Eia, inquit, domini, consilium meum facessere utrimque
come-now he-says lords counsel my to-carry-out on-both-sides
dignamini! De simultatibus, rogo, nullum jam verbum hinc
deign about the-quarrels I-ask no now word hence
inde loquamini; sed in pace Domini, omni fastu deposito,
thence speak but in the-peace of-the-Lord with-all pride laid-aside
utrimque veniam petentes osculemini! Placuit episcopo et
on-both-sides pardon seeking kiss it-pleased to-the-bishop and
utrisque consilium; in venias et in oscula ruendo post pauca
both the-counsel into pardons and into kisses by-rushing after a-few

paucis verba utrimque semet anticipantes considunt unanimes.
in-few words on-both-sides each-other anticipating they-sit-down of-one-mind
Conferuntur consilia, qualiter totum corpus capiti et caput
are-brought-together counsels how the-whole body to-the-head and the-head
corpori restituatur. Stat consilium, patrem filiis oblatum in
to-the-body may-be-restored stands the-counsel the-father to-the-sons offered in
sancti Benedicti, cujus imago appicta sedebat, ponere solium.
of-Saint Benedict whose image painted sat to-place the-throne
Inducitur manu episcopi locatusque parumper residet.
he-is-led-in by-the-hand of-the-bishop and-placed for-a-little sits
Tandemque assurgens lacrimando in veniam corruit; sed
and-at-last rising weeping into pardon falls but
et episcopo secum ruente, fratres omnes econtra ruebant.
also with-the-bishop with-him rushing the-brothers all in-turn rushed
Erat facietenus videre, spiritum sanctum opus suum ibimet
it-was face-to-face to-see the-spirit holy work its there-itself
agere. Osculatis singulis, unanimitas in domo solidatur.
to-do with-kissed each unanimity in the-house is-made-solid
Amalunch vero, homo jocunditatis gratæque vox dulcedinis,
Amalung but a-man of-pleasantness and-of-pleasing voice of-sweetness
sequentiam: Laus tibi sit, o fidelis Deus! gratulanter incipiens,
the-sequence Laus tibi sit o fidelis Deus joyfully beginning
episcopo et abbate cunctisque juvantibus, consummavit.
with-the-bishop and the-abbot and-all helping completed
Agitur dies in læticia; longos rancores caritas fregit. Non
is-spent the-day in gladness long rancors charity broke not
tulit hanc speciem furiato pectore Victor. Abbatem quippe
bore this sight with-raging breast Victor the-abbot indeed
in sede sua cum vidisset, turbidus exiliit et, quasi
in the-seat his when he-had-seen troubled he-leapt-out and as-if
loco cessurus, capituli domo exivit. Quem
from-the-place about-to-withdraw of-the-chapter from-the-house went-out whom

tamen episcopus, prout potuit, revocatum delinivit et in
however the-bishop as he-could recalled soothed and into
abbatis gratiam reductum ad tempus compescuit, quod
of-the-abbot favor brought-back for a-time restrained which
tamen post abscessum ejus minus quidem profuit. Egreditur
however after the-departure his less indeed profited goes-out
post aliquot dies loco episcopus ad suos iturus,
after some days from-the-place the-bishop to his-people about-to-go
Victoremque, ut putabat, in gratia stabilitum reliquerat.
and-Victor as he-thought in favor established he-had-left
Accidit autem tempore labente, ut ad amicos foras eundi
it-happened moreover with-time slipping that to friends outside of-going
a decano licentiam Victor peteret, re vera Enzelinum,
from the-dean leave Victor sought in-thing truly Enzelin
modernum Fabarie abbatem, ut Cralohi dampnis insultaret
the-present of-Pfäfers abbot that of-Craloh on-the-losses he-might-insult
vel ætiam cum illo penitus persisteret, petiturus. Insinuatur
or even with him wholly he-might-remain about-to-seek it-is-made-known
abbati deforis tunc agenti, Victorem quidem abscessum non
to-the-abbot outside then dwelling that-Victor indeed a-departure not
parvis impensis se cælato parare. Mittit ille secrecius
with-small expenses himself in-concealment to-prepare sends he more-secretly
ad militem suum quendam viæ ejus contiguum, ut
to soldier his a-certain to-the-road his adjacent that
eum custodiret claustroque suo invitum reduceret. Nemo
him he-might-guard and-to-cloister his unwilling might-lead-back no-one
enim de familia Galli tanti generis viro vim inferre
for of the-household of-Gall of-so-great birth on-a-man force to-bring
auderet. Custoditus invaditur; ut redeat, primo rogatur;
would-dare guarded he-is-attacked that he-should-return first he-is-asked
tandem, cum nollet, astarum impulsibus compellitur. At
at-last when he-was-unwilling of-spears by-thrusts he-is-compelled but

ille robur quoddam e proximo rapiens, militem ipsum
he an-oak-cudgel certain from the-nearest snatching the-soldier himself
capite incutiens, equo cadere fecit seminecem. Eo
on-the-head striking from-the-horse to-fall made half-dead with-him
autem cadente, omnes pariter sui Victorem invadentes
moreover falling all together his-men Victor attacking
equo deiciunt oculosque illi, proh dolor! furibundi eruunt.
from-the-horse throw-down and-the-eyes of-him oh grief raging tear-out
Miles autem ille cum refocilatus, illo jam cecato, ad
the-soldier moreover that when revived with-him already blinded to
se rediret, multum doluit, quoniam sibimet deinceps domo
himself returned much grieved since for-himself henceforth from-house
propria exulandum non dubitavit. Nam aliquanto post hæc
own to-be-exiled not he-doubted for some-while after these-things
elapso tempore, amicis viri obvius occiditur; armiger
elapsed time by-the-friends of-the-man met is-killed the-squire
quoque ejus, qui facinori intererat, in arbore suspenditur.
also his who in-the-crime had-taken-part on a-tree is-hanged
Deportatus per silvam ad proxima armentariorum cœnobii
carried through the-forest to the-nearest of-the-herdsmen of-the-monastery
magalia, cecus intimatur in claustro fratribus, fitque
huts the-blind-one is-made-known in the-cloister to-the-brothers and-there-is-made
in monasterio non ferenda confusio, pene omnibus in
in the-monastery not to-be-borne confusion with-almost all to
abbatis insolentiam facinus vergentibus. At discipuli hominis
of-the-abbot the-insolence the-crime turning but the-disciples of-the-man
pluresque de fratribus celeres ad illum venientes luctus, tali
and-many of the-brothers swift to him coming grief at-such
orbo inspecto, miscent et in cælum ejulatus. Re
bereaved-one seen mingle and to heaven wailings with-the-thing
tandem abbas audita monasterium in tali confusione ingredi
at-last the-abbot heard the-monastery in such confusion to-enter

distulit; sine armis autem non esse fidelium consilio
delayed without arms moreover not to-be of-the-faithful by-counsel
curavit, quoniam propinquorum ceci minas sævas
he-took-care since of-the-kinsmen of-the-blind-one the-threats savage
audiverant. Misit tandem nuntium decano Waltoni, uti
they-had-heard he-sent at-last a-messenger to-the-dean Walto that
fratrem illum sollicite curaret. At ille severus ætiam et
brother that carefully he-should-care-for but he severe also even
ipse: Alius, inquit, dum ego decanus sum, curet. Dic
he-himself another he-says while I dean am let-care-for tell
ergo illi, quod ante me decani semper infirmos curabant
therefore to-him that before me deans always the-sick cared-for
non jussi, sed talem nunquam. Raroque quisquam abbatum
not bidden but such never and-rarely anyone of-the-abbots
monachum, quem cecari fecerit, decano curandum commisit.
a-monk whom blinded he-had-made to-the-dean to-be-cared-for entrusted
Talibus ille responsis tanti viri auditis, ut Waningum, in
with-such he answers of-so-great a-man heard as Waning in
omnibus tempestatibus suis capellanum ejus, dicere audivimus,
all storms his chaplain his to-say we-have-heard
tantum contabuit, ut vix loqui residens valeret.
so-much wasted-away that scarcely to-speak sitting he-was-able
Victor dein per Notkerum medicum orbibus in brevi sanatus,
Victor then through Notker the-physician in-(his)-eyes in brief healed
in bonis postea operibus semet exercuit. Et ut ea, quæ
in good afterward works himself exercised and that those-things which
de eo audiveram, brevi perstringam, Argentinensis quidam,
about him I-had-heard brief I-may-touch-on of-Strasbourg a-certain
Erchinbaldus nomine, sanguinis sui episcopus sub Burchardo
Erchinbald by-name of-blood his the-bishop under Burchard
abbate propter doctrinas et miseriæ consolationem permisso
the-abbot on-account-of teachings and of-misery consolation with-permission

ipsius ad se hominem traxit et urbem suam doctrinis
his to himself the-man drew and city his with-teachings
ejus floridam fecit. Tandem autem, episcopo defuncto,
his flowering made at-last moreover with-the-bishop dead
cellam quandam heremiticam intra Hohfeldinos montes,
a-cell certain hermitic within the-Hochfeld mountains
Longum Mare vocatam, solitario defuncto, ingressus per
Long Lake called with-the-solitary dead having-entered through
multos annos tenuit multasque virtutes, ut ibi celebre est, in
many years held and-many miracles as there famous it-is in
extremis suis faciens, sanctissimus circumquaque habitus diem
last-days his doing most-holy round-about held the-day
senex obiit. Veni autem et ego ipse in locum ad quendam
old met came moreover also I myself into the-place to a-certain
tunc temporis magni nominis solitarium, vidensque inter
at-that of-time of-great name solitary and-seeing amid
colloquia sepulchrum quoddam plus cæteris honoratum,
talks a-tomb certain more than-the-others honored
cujusnam id esset, quæsiveram: sancti Victoris esse, ait.
whose it might-be I-had-asked of-Saint Victor to-be he-says
Et cum breviter mihi vitam ejus et casus utique plus
and when briefly to-me the-life his and misfortunes surely more
notos panderet, nihil venenatum super illum tumulum vivens
known he-disclosed nothing venomous over that tomb living
progredi posse asseruit; serpentes autem enormes ibi videre
to-go-forward to-be-able he-asserted serpents moreover enormous there to-see
est plures et reptilia informia. Usque huc de Victore.
it-is many and reptiles shapeless up-to here about Victor

Capitula 79–81

EKKEHARD THE DEAN AND CRALOH'S DEATH

Craloh, ailing and threatened with deposition, offers to swear his innocence of Victor's blinding, but no one believes him. Notker's niece Kerhild is enclosed near Wiborada's cell; the recluse Rachild had died before her, and the widow Perhterat had been enclosed by the wall of Saint George's and lived there many years. Walto dies; Burchard and then Ekkehard become dean, and Ekkehard, healed at Rome by the Baptist's relics, writes sequences, antiphons, and as a boy a Waltharius *later corrected at Mainz; his four nephews become monks. Craloh dies at Herisau, and Ekkehard, chosen to succeed him, breaks his leg on the ice and passes the election to Burchard.*

At Craloh quasi corpore tristicia effeto et doloribus incedere
but Craloh as-if in-body by-sadness exhausted and by-pains to-walk
cœpit in dies amplius languidulo. Nam et fama erat, venturos
began by days more languid for also rumor was about-to-come
quantocius ab imperio, qui eum ob vindictam facinoris
as-quickly-as-possible from the-empire those-who him for vengeance of-the-crime
deposituri erant a regiminis solio; nam regem procul
about-to-depose were from of-rule the-throne for the-king far
contra Danos Sleswic agentem factum non latuit. Ingresso
against the-Danes at-Schleswig acting the-deed not escaped having-entered
tandem monasterium variæ ei res erant cum variis.
at-last the-monastery various to-him affairs were with various-men
Quadam autem die quorundam quasi fidelium consilio,
on-a-certain moreover day of-certain as-if faithful-men by-counsel
fratribus sed et Victore præsentibus, rogat licere sibi
with-the-brothers but also with-Victor present he-asks to-be-allowed to-him
conscientiam in ara sancti Galli juramento purgare de
(his)-conscience at the-altar of-Saint Gall with-an-oath to-purge of
eo, quod in Victore patratum est, facinore, ita: uti sic sibi
that which on Victor perpetrated was crime so that thus to-him

Deus lumen æternum daturus sit, sicut ipse in privatione
God the-light eternal about-to-give be as he-himself in the-deprivation
luminum ejus hominis reus fuerit. Ad que Gerhaldus, ad
of-the-lights of-that man guilty has-been to which Gerald for
responsa, ut ajebant, semper paratissimus: Pretermisso, inquit,
answers as they-said always most-ready passing-over he-says
quod manus in illum mittere, domine mi, jusseras, ne
that hands on him to-lay lord my you-had-bidden not
sic quidem tanti facinoris, ut ajunt, causa fueris.
so even of-so-great crime as they-say the-cause you-should-have-been
Tandem vero nemini jam fratrum animo sedit, illum
at-last but to-no-one now of-the-brothers in-mind it-sat him
jurejurando reatum ipsum a cervice sua excutere posse.
by-oath the-guilt itself from neck his to-shake-off to-be-able
Differtur tamen causa propter honorem ejus in posterum,
is-deferred however the-case on-account-of the-honor his into the-future
propter quod etiam ipsa die virginem Kerhildam,
on-account-of which also on-that-very day the-virgin Kerhild
Notkeri Balbuli neptim, apud sanctum Magnum circa
of-Notker the-Stammerer the-niece at Saint Magnus near
Wiboradæ clausulam includere ipse condixerat. Nam et
of-Wiborada the-cell to-enclose he-himself had-agreed for also
antea quidem, Rachilda post Wiboradæ passionem vigesimo
before indeed with-Rachild after of-Wiborada the-martyrdom in-the-twentieth
primo anno ad Deum assumpta, Perhterat, quædam vidua
first year to God taken-up Perhterat a-certain widow
sancta, cum et ipsa includi apud nos optasset et
holy when also she-herself to-be-enclosed among us had-wished and
clausula ejus sibi oblata pene annum in probatione laudabilis
the-cell her to-her offered almost a-year in probation praiseworthy
appareret, vulgi visitationes crebras et inanes devitans
she-appeared of-the-crowd the-visits frequent and empty avoiding

in cella Salamonis circa parietem tituli sancti Georgii
in the-cell of-Salomon near the-wall of-the-church of-Saint George
includi rogaverat, magnarum virtutum operatrix plures inibi
to-be-enclosed had-asked of-great miracles a-worker many there
annos exegerat. Obiit quoque cum omnium dolore Walto
years had-spent died also with of-all grief Walto
decanus, et in locum ejus subrogatur Purchardus. Et anno
the-dean and into place his is-substituted Burchard and with-a-year
elapso velud comitiis post illum fit Ekkehardus decanus;
elapsed as-if at-elections after him becomes Ekkehard dean
in quo tandem Craloh plus, quam in semet, confisus,
on whom at-last Craloh more than on himself trusting
loco, quoniam imbecillior in dies erat, interdum cedens
from-the-place since weaker by days he-was sometimes withdrawing
Herginisouvam pro pausatione creber adierat, fratribusque
Herisau for rest often had-approached and-with-the-brothers
absentiam ejus non egre ferentibus ibi manebat.
absence his not reluctantly bearing there he-stayed
Nam in Ekkehardo, natura et studio caritatis dulcedine
for in Ekkehard by-nature and by-zeal of-charity with-sweetness
pleno, spiritus cunctorum quieverat. Qui de Joniswilare,
full the-spirit of-all had-rested who from Jonschwil
quod, ut diximus, ipse requisivit et tenuit, ebdomadam
which as we-said he-himself sought-back and held for-a-week
septem cottidie victualium statuit cum pane habundo et
seven daily victuals established with bread abundant and
quinque mensuris de cervisia, quarum quintam nonalem
five measures of beer of-which the-fifth at-None
quidem vino conparari voluit. Hic aliquando Romam pro
indeed with-wine to-be-matched he-wished this-one sometime to-Rome for
voto pergens, papæ intimus factus aliquandiuque apud illum
a-vow proceeding to-the-pope intimate made and-for-some-time with him

propter doctrinam detentus, aëris terræ vitio morbo
on-account-of learning detained of-the-air of-the-land by-the-fault by-sickness
corripitur perque sex ebdomadas lecto tenetur. Papa vero
is-seized and-through six weeks in-bed is-held the-pope but
sepe eum visitans impensorum copiam dabat. At ille quadam
often him visiting of-expenses plenty gave but he on-a-certain
die satis jam tarde quidem eum rogat, ut quando proxime
day enough now late indeed him asks that when next
se visitet, Johannis Baptistæ reliquias secum ferat.
himself he-should-visit of-John the-Baptist the-relics with-him he-should-bring
Erat enim semper assertor ejus et amator validus. At ille
he-was for always asserter his and lover strong but he
mane proxima ad eum cum reliquiis cum accederet,
in-the-morning next to him with the-relics when he-approached
eger in amplexus ipsarum et papæ assurgens, ex illa
the-sick-one into the-embraces of-them and of-the-pope rising from that
hora melius habere cœpit. Et cum in brevi convalesceret,
hour better to-fare began and when in brief he-recovered
reliquiis Baptistæ et multorum ab apostolico donatus
with-relics of-the-Baptist and of-many by the-apostolic presented
sanctorum sospes domum rediit, et permisso Burchardi,
saints safe home returned and with-permission of-Burchard
tunc abbatis, et dote æcclesiam illis decoram paravit.
then abbot and with-endowment a-church for-them becoming prepared
Multa de eo post dicenda sunt; sed prius, a quo spiritu
many-things about him afterward to-be-said are but first by what spirit
ductus sit, ex verbis ipsius nosci licet. Scripsit enim
led he-was from the-words his to-be-known it-is-allowed wrote for
doctus ille sequentias: Prompta mente canamus, Summum
learned that-one the-sequences Prompta mente canamus Summum
præconem Christi, Qui benedici cupitis, A solis occasu. De
præconem Christi Qui benedici cupitis A solis occasu about

sancta Afra antiphonas, ut reliquias ejus mereretur, Liutoldo
Saint Afra antiphons that the-relics her he-might-merit for-Liutold
episcopo et sequentiam dictavit. Ymnum: O martyr æterni
the-bishop and the-sequence composed the-hymn O martyr æterni
patris, Ambulans Hiesus, Adoremus gloriosissimum scripsit
patris Ambulans Hiesus Adoremus gloriosissimum wrote
et in scolis metrice magistro, vacillanter quidem, quia in
and in the-schools in-meter for-the-master haltingly indeed because in
affectione, non in habitu erat puer, vitam Waltharii manu
affection not in habit he-was a-boy the-life of-Waltharius in-hand
fortis, quam Magontiæ positi, Aribone archiepiscopo jubente,
strong which at-Mainz placed with-Aribo the-archbishop bidding
pro posse et nosse nostro correximus; barbaries
according-to the-power and the-knowing our we-corrected the-barbarisms
enim et idiomata ejus Teutonem adhuc affectantem repente
for and idioms its a-German still affecting suddenly
Latinum fieri non patiuntur. Unde male docere solent
Latin to-become not allow whence badly to-teach are-wont
discipulos semimagistri dicentes: Videte, quomodo disertissime
the-disciples half-masters saying see how most-eloquently
coram Teutone aliquo proloqui deceat, et eadem serie
before a-German some to-speak-out it-befits and in-the-same order
in Latinum verba vertite! Quæ deceptio Ekkehardum in
into Latin the-words turn which deception Ekkehard in
opere illo adhuc puerum fefellit, sed postea non sic, ut in
work that still a-boy deceived but afterward not so as in
lidio Charromannico: Mole ut vincendi ipse quoque
the-song of-Charles by-the-weight that of-conquering he-himself also
oppeteret. Obtulit autem ille sancto Gallo ad monachatum
should-meet-death offered moreover he to-Saint Gall for monkhood
quatuor ex fratribus vel sororibus nepotes suos, duos sibi
four from brothers or sisters nephews his two to-himself

equivocos, Burchardum quoque post abbatem, Notkerum
namesakes Burchard also afterward abbot Notker
magistrum nostrum, quorum quisque æcclesiæ dicendus sit
master our of-whom each of-the-church to-be-called be
speculum, de quibus loco suo memoralia sua dicemus;
a-mirror about whom in-place its records their we-shall-tell
unusquisque enim ipsorum libro suo sufficeret. Tales
each for of-them for-a-book his-own would-suffice such
palmites dum vitis illa jam mitteret, bene matura in die
shoots while vine that already sent-forth well ripe on the-day
Felicis in Pincis vindemiata est ipsa. Talis autem luctus
of-Felix in Pincis gathered was itself such moreover grief
de obitu hominis erat, ut decanus post illum Ymmo
at the-death of-the-man was that the-dean after him Immo
postque abbas ipse ad sanctum Michahelem, ubi liberius
and-afterward abbot himself to Saint Michael where more-freely
ejulare posset, corpore ejus in feretro posito secederet, ita
to-wail he-could with-the-body his on the-bier placed withdrew thus
vociferans: Vide, Domine, et considera, quem vindemiaveris
crying see Lord and consider whom you-have-harvested
ita!
so

Et his quidem per digressionem dictis, ad Cralohum
and these-things indeed through digression said to Craloh
redeamus; enimvero Ekkehardum hic defunctum ad facta
let-us-return indeed Ekkehard here dead to deeds
sua insignia mox resuscitabimus. Craloh autem cum in dies
his notable soon we-shall-revive Craloh moreover when by days
viribus deficeret et jam sepe Victoris amicis milites
in-strength he-failed and already often of-Victor to-the-friends soldiers
sui securitatem frustra pro eo porrigerent, armis infra
his security in-vain for him held-out with-arms inside

forisque commanens custoditur. Tandem vero communi
and-outside dwelling is-guarded at-last but by-common
consilio responsa totius abbatiæ committit Ekkehardo.
counsel the-answers of-the-whole abbey he-commits to-Ekkehard
Ipse autem in Herginisouvam exercicii gratia equitans
he-himself moreover to Herisau of-exercise for-the-sake riding
ibi in lectum decidit. Videns autem, finem vitæ adesse,
there into bed fell seeing moreover the-end of-life to-be-present
Ekkehardum cum fratribus sanioris consilii evocans disposuit
Ekkehard with the-brothers of-sounder counsel summoning he-set-in-order
domui et ipse pro se abbatem eligere. Facile
for-the-house and himself in-place-of himself abbot to-elect easily
omnibus persuasis, viam omnium ingressus est reportatusque
with-all persuaded the-way of-all entered has and-carried-back
cœnobium honorifice sepelitur. At Ekkehardus, Ottone apud
to-the-monastery honorably is-buried but Ekkehard with-Otto among
Anglos cum Adaltage rege ipsorum, socero suo, aliquandiu
the-English with Æthelstan king of-them father-in-law his for-some-time
agente, ut junctis viribus Chnutonem Danorum debellaret
acting that with-joined forces Cnut of-the-Danes he-might-defeat
regem, habenas abbatiæ, sicut sub abbate vivo solebat,
king the-reins of-the-abbey as under the-abbot living he-was-wont
usque ad cognitionem imperii strenue regebat. Accidit
until to the-cognizance of-the-empire vigorously ruled it-happened
autem, ut quadam die foras iturus, ante portam equo
moreover that on-a-certain day out about-to-go before the-gate with-(his)-horse
in glacie lapso, tibiam pedemque confringeret hisque
on the-ice slipped the-shin and-foot he-broke and-with-these
non recte coagulatis postmodum claudicaret. Qua causa
not rightly set afterward he-limped for-which cause
electionem suam omnium fratrum concordia in Purchardum
the-election his of-all the-brothers with-concord onto Burchard

unanimem suum transtulit, de quo supra diximus.
of-one-mind-with-him his he-transferred about whom above we-spoke
De quo etiam adhuc altius quedam repetere habemus.
about whom also still more-deeply certain-things to-repeat we-have

Capitula 82–85

WENDILGARD AND ULRICH

Count Ulrich is captured by the Hungarians, and his wife Wendilgard, thinking him dead, lives beside Wiborada at Saint Gall, where the recluse cures her of sweetmeats with sour forest apples. She takes the veil and is enclosed. In the fourth year, as she gives alms at Buchhorn on his supposed anniversary, a ragged beggar seizes and kisses her: it is Ulrich, escaped. A synod returns her to him, she vows a son to Saint Gall, and she dies before the birth; the child, cut from her and kept in a pig's fat, is baptized Burchard, called the Unborn, and given to the monastery.

Uodalrich, quidam comes de Karoli prosapia, Wendilgartam,
Ulrich a-certain count of of-Charles the-lineage Wendilgard
Henrici regis de filia neptim, uxorem accipiens,
of-Henry the-king from the-daughter granddaughter as-wife receiving
Adalhardum, qui Gallo Altstetin post tradidit, de ea et
Adalhard who to-Gall Altstätten afterward handed-over from her and
filiam procreavit. Hic nuntio Puochorn, ubi habitavit,
a-daughter begot this-one with-the-news at-Buchhorn where he-dwelt
accepto, Ungros Noricum, ubi prædia ei erant, irruere,
received the-Hungarians into-Noricum where estates to-him were to-rush
hostes cum cæteris bello aggressus victus capitur et
the-enemies with the-others in-war having-attacked conquered is-captured and
in Ungariam captivus asportatur. Qui autem Ungros
into Hungary captive is-carried-off who moreover the-Hungarians
Agarenos putant, longa via errant. Wendilgarth vero quasi
Agarenes think by-a-long way err Wendilgard but as-if

viro, ut fama erat, occiso, vidua ad nuptias petita,
with-(her)-husband as the-rumor was killed a-widow for marriage sought
nutu Dei nubere noluit. Sed Salomone rogato ad sanctum
by-the-nod of-God to-marry would-not but with-Salomon asked to Saint
Gallum concessit, ubi sibi juxta Wiboradam caminata
Gall withdrew where for-herself beside Wiborada with-a-heated-room
constructa de suo vixit; fratribus et pauperibus pro
built from her-own she-lived to-the-brothers and to-the-poor for
anima viri quasi defuncti multa largitur. Dulciaminum
the-soul of-the-husband as-if dead many-things bestows of-sweetmeats
autem cum esset avida et novitatum semper appetens, uti
moreover since she-was greedy and of-novelties always desirous as
delicate nutrita et his assueta, increpata est a Wiborada,
delicately nourished and to-these accustomed rebuked she-was by Wiborada
quoniam non esset signum pudiciciæ in femina appetere varia
since not it-was a-sign of-modesty in a-woman to-seek varied
cibamina. Quadam autem die ante clausulam virginis cum
foods on-a-certain moreover day before the-cell of-the-virgin when
sedisset ad colloquia, poma sibi dari ad vescendum, si
she-had-sat for talks apples to-her to-be-given for eating if
dulcia ibi haberet, petiverat. Quibus pauperes utuntur, illa ait,
sweet there she-had she-had-asked which the-poor use she says
habeo pulcherrima — proferensque mala de silva acidissima
I-have most-beautiful and-bringing-forth apples from the-forest most-sour
inhianti et de manibus ei rapienti reliquerat. At illa
to-the-gaping-one and from the-hands her snatching she-had-left but she
vix unum dimidium ore et oculis contractis vorans
scarcely one half with-mouth and eyes contracted devouring
cætera proiciens: Austera es, ait; austera sunt et mala
the-rest throwing-away harsh you-are she-says harsh are also apples
tua. Et cum esset literata: Si omnia, inquit, mala factor talia
your and since she-was lettered if all she-says apples the-maker such

creasset, nunquam Aeva malum gustasset. — Bene, ait illa,
had-created never Eve an-apple would-have-tasted well says she
Aevam memorasti; enimvero, quomodo et tu, sic deliciarum
Eve you-have-mentioned indeed how also you so of-delights
avida erat, ideo in escula unius mali peccaverat.
greedy she-was therefore in the-little-eating of-one apple she-had-sinned
Abscessit femina nobilitatis rubore perfusa per virginem
withdrew the-woman of-nobility with-blush suffused through the-virgin
humilitatis, vimque post hec sibimet inferens dulciamina
of-humility and-force after these-things on-herself bringing sweetmeats
occursantia ligurrire abstinuit; tantaque monitrice in brevi
coming-in-her-way to-lick she-abstained and-with-so-great an-admonisher in brief
adeo excrevit, ut sacrum velamen, quod antea detrectavit, a
so-much grew that the-sacred veil which before she-refused by
jam dicto episcopo imponi sibi synodo favente
the-already mentioned bishop to-be-imposed on-herself with-the-synod favoring
rogaverit. Quo facto, laicali in tantum exuta est
she-asked with-which done of-the-lay in so-much stripped-off she-was
animo, ut virtutibus cum inclusis assuefacta post Rachildam,
mind that to-virtues with the-recluses accustomed after Rachild
quæ passim in corpore et maxime mamillis ulcerosa cottidie
who everywhere in body and most on-the-breasts ulcerous daily
emori visa est, includi optaverit. Et quia vere et ipsam
to-be-dying seen was to-be-enclosed she-wished and because truly also her
quidem martyrem incidimus, levius ei erat, cum magistra
indeed a-martyr we-have-come-upon lighter for-her it-was with (her)-mistress
semel cerebrum dispergendum optulisse, quam XXI post
once the-brain to-be-scattered to-have-offered than twenty-one after
illam annis testa saniem cum sancto Job inclusam
her years with-a-potsherd the-pus with holy Job enclosed
rasisse, cum tamen interea jejunare et orare — vigilias
to-have-scraped since however meanwhile to-fast and to-pray vigils

enim dolores dabant — et elemosinas dare non tederet,
for the-pains gave and alms to-give not it-wearied
ut de illa Ekkeharth, qui supra, consobrinus ejus, cecinit:
as about her Ekkehard who above cousin her sang

Hanc Satan, hanc lesit; cum Job saniem sibi rasit;
Her Satan her hurt when with-Job the-pus for-herself she-scraped
jejunans flevit; tormenta dolens vigilavit.
fasting she-wept torments grieving she-kept-vigil

Neque enim vitam vel passionem votivæ martyris lucidius
nor for the-life or the-passion of-the-votive martyr more-clearly
succingere potuit; ad cujus sepulchrum in repentinis
to-gird-up could at whose tomb in sudden
angustiarum motibus — experto credite! — multum
of-straits motions to-the-experienced believe much
valet orasse.
avails to-have-prayed
Venerat quarto anno initiante anniversarius, ut credebat,
had-come in-the-fourth year beginning the-anniversary as she-believed
viri sui amarus, et Wendilgarth Puochorn adiens
of-husband her bitter and Wendilgard Buchhorn approaching
dispersit, ut solebat, dedit pauperibus. Et ecce Uodalricus,
distributed as she-was-wont gave to-the-poor and lo Ulrich
captivitate fortuito elapsus, eam inter cæteros pannosos
from-captivity by-chance escaped her among the-other ragged-ones
clandestina arte se cælans, ut sibi vestem daret,
with-secret art himself concealing that to-him a-garment she-should-give
inclamat. Quem illa, quod improbe audaciusque mendicaret,
calls-out whom she because shamelessly and-more-boldly he-begged
increpitans vestem tamen ei velut indignans dedit. At
rebuking a-garment however to-him as-if indignant gave but

ille manum dantis cum veste stringens ad se
he the-hand of-the-giver with the-garment clasping to himself
tractam amplexatus, vellet nollet, osculatus est, capillisque
drawn embraced willing unwilling kissed has and-with-(his)-hair
prolixis in collum manu rejectis, cum ætiam aliqui alapas
long onto the-neck by-hand thrown-back when also some slaps
minitassent: Parcite, queso, ait, tandem alapis, quas multas
had-threatened spare I-pray he-says at-last the-slaps which many
pertuli, et Uodalricum vestrum recognoscite! Audita
I-have-endured and Ulrich your recognize heard
tandem voce domini milites, stupidi vultuque quondam
at-last the-voice of-(their)-lord the-soldiers stunned and-with-the-face formerly
noto inter crines recognito, clamose salutant; familia
known among the-hair recognized loudly greet the-household
gratulans vociferatur. Wendilgarth dum quasi dedecus ab
rejoicing shouts Wendilgard while as-if dishonor from
aliquo passa stupida residisset: Nunc demum, ait,
someone having-suffered stunned had-sat-down now at-last she-says
Uodalricum mortuum sentio, cum talem ab aliquo pertuli
Ulrich dead I-feel since such from someone I-have-borne
violentiam. Ille autem cum ei manum de vulnere aliquo
violence he moreover when to-her the-hand from a-wound certain
quondam notissimo ad allevandum porrigeret signabilem, quasi
formerly most-known for raising he-held-out marked as-if
de somno evigilans: Dominus meus, ait, omnium hominum
from sleep awaking lord my she-says of-all men
carissimus! Salve, ait, domine; salve, semper dulcissime! Et
dearest hail she-says lord hail ever sweetest and
inter oscula et amplexus: Induite, inquit, dominum vestrum,
amid kisses and embraces clothe she-says lord your
donec ei lavacrum ad horam acceleretis. Indutus vero:
until for-him a-bath within the-hour you-hasten clothed but

Eamus, inquit, ad æcclesiam! — et inter eundum: Queso,
let-us-go he-says to the-church and while going I-ask
ait, quis capiti tuo velum illud imposuit? Audito, quod in
he-says who on-head your veil that placed heard that in
sinodo episcopus, tacitus sibimet: Nec ego te jam, nisi ejus
synod the-bishop silent to-himself nor I you now except his
permisso amplecti, ait, habeo. Laudes a clericis tandem, qui
by-permission to-embrace he-says I-have praises by the-clerics at-last who
plures ad diem convenerant, inchoantur, a plebe persolvuntur.
many for the-day had-gathered are-begun by the-people are-completed
Missas pro vivo, non pro defuncto in gaudiis celebrant.
masses for the-living not for the-dead in joys they-celebrate
Itur lavatum. Fama volans, ut fit, multos adduxit.
there-is-going to-wash the-rumor flying as happens many brought
Convivio diei opipare peracto, dies multi lætificantur.
with-the-feast of-the-day sumptuously completed for-days many are-gladdened
In proximo fit sinodus. Repetit uxorem, quam Deo ille
in the-next there-is-held a-synod seeks-back the-wife whom to-God he
subarraverat, ab episcopo Uodalricus. Velum manu episcopi
had-betrothed from the-bishop Ulrich the-veil by-the-hand of-the-bishop
ablatum in scriniis æcclesiæ sinodi decreto servandum locatur,
removed in the-chests of-the-church of-the-synod by-decree to-be-kept is-placed
ut, si vir ejus prior obierit, vidua illud reinduat.
that if husband her first shall-have-died a-widow it she-should-put-on-again
Nuptiæ tandem aguntur a principio. Concœpit mulier,
the-nuptials at-last are-held from the-beginning conceived the-woman
Gallumque suum et inclusas sanctas viro comite
and-Gall her and the-recluses holy with-(her)-husband as-companion
votive adiens, si masculum pepererit, sancto Gallo
as-a-vow approaching if a-male she-shall-have-borne to-Saint Gall
monachum devovit. Abeunt igitur domum. At tempore
as-monk she-vowed they-go-away therefore home but with-time

labente, appropinquans partui pregnans periclitatur et ante
slipping approaching the-birth the-pregnant-woman is-imperiled and before
quatuordecim temporivi partus dies emoritur. Infans excisus et
fourteen of-the-timely birth days dies the-infant cut-out and
arvinæ porci recens erutæ, ubi incutesceret, involutus, bonæ
in-the-fat of-a-pig freshly torn-out where it-might-grow-a-skin wrapped of-good
indolis cum in brevi apparuisset, baptizatur et Purchardus
promise when in brief it-had-appeared is-baptized and Burchard
nominatur. Pater illum tandem nutricis sinu adductum
is-named the-father him at-last of-the-nurse from-the-bosom brought
Gallo, ut cum matre voverat, super aram ipsius ponens
to-Gall as with the-mother he-had-vowed upon the-altar his placing
cum terris in Hôsten et decimis, multum matrem plorans,
with lands in Höchst and tithes much the-mother lamenting
iniciaverat. Educatur puer in monasterio delicatæ pulcherrimus.
had-initiated is-brought-up the-boy in the-monastery delicately most-beautiful
Solebant autem fratres eum cognominare ingenitum, et
were-wont moreover the-brothers him to-surname the-unborn and
quoniam immature est editus nec musca illum sine
since prematurely he-was brought-forth not-even a-fly him without
sanguinis eruptione postea mordebat, ideoque et virgis in eo
of-blood outbreak afterward bit and-therefore also with-rods on him
magister parcebat. Vir quoque factus virtutes sibi ingenitas,
the-master spared a-man also made the-virtues to-him inborn
quamvis carne imbecillis fuerit, semper amabat et animo bene
although in-flesh weak he-was always he-loved and with-mind well
maturo immaturæ præerat carni. Tali ac tanto patri virtutes
ripe the-unripe he-ruled flesh to-such and so-great a-father virtues
longa consuetudine in naturam jam vertenti Ekkehardus
by-long habit into nature already turning Ekkehard
honores sibi oblatos omnium assensibus optulerat.
the-honors to-himself offered of-all with-assents had-offered

Capitula 86–88

BURCHARD MADE ABBOT

The brothers bring the boy Burchard to Otto the Great at Mainz, who kisses his young kinsman and makes him abbot, and Queen Edith defers his request for Pfäfers. Guided by Ekkehard, Burchard eats meat at the bishop's command and gives alms so freely that his chamberlain Richer complains and the dean secretly supplies him. Ekkehard has a servant wash and clothe the poor by night; a fat Gallic cripple cries "Cald!", Romance for hot, which the servant hears as the German for cold, so he scalds him until the cripple leaps up and runs, and Ekkehard rebukes them both.

Dirigitur tandem cum fratribus allectis magno Ottoni
he-is-directed at-last with brothers enlisted to-the-great Otto
Mogontiam, Chnutone rege victo, Sleswich revertenti. Qui
at-Mainz with-Cnut the-king conquered from-Schleswig returning who
illum ante notissimum ut eminus aspexit: Accelera, ait,
him before most-known as from-afar he-beheld hasten he-says
nepotule, et osculare! — pusillus quidem erat et pulcher
little-nephew and kiss small indeed he-was and beautiful
facie — stringensque illum sub clamide delicate tractavit.
in-face and-clasping him under (his)-cloak delicately handled
Videns autem ferulam: Estne mortuus, ait, monachorum
seeing moreover the-staff is dead he-says of-monks
suorum ille cecator? — Defunctus, inquiunt, abbas noster
his that blinder dead they-say abbot our
est, o rex! In Deo nunc solo est, quid fuerit. Dein singulos
is O king in God now alone is what he-was then each
osculatus: Quid velitis, ait, video; sed quem velitis, nescio.
having-kissed what you-wish he-says I-see but whom you-wish I-know-not
— Eum ipsum, ajunt, o rex, quem amplexaris, dominum
him himself they-say O king whom you-embrace lord

nostrum Purchardum. Quo dicto, procidebant pariter. Surgere
our Burchard which said they-fell-forward together to-rise
jussi: Sed et pater noster Ekkehardus præcator noster
bidden but also father our Ekkehard intercessor our
orationem vobis, ajunt, mandat et salutem, et promissorum
prayer to-you they-say sends and greeting and of-promises
frequentium in hoc uno vos memorem postulat. — Vereor,
frequent in this one you mindful asks I-fear
ait ille, ne disciplinarum severitates, quas patres vestri præ
says he lest of-disciplines the-severities which fathers your before
omnibus amaverant, exosi ad hunc tantillum, mitem quidem
all had-loved hating to this so-small-one mild indeed
vobis et consensibilem concesseritis. Et quare illum ipsum,
to-you and agreeable you-may-have-yielded and why him himself
quem dicitis, virum magnanimum, non elegeratis? Dein
whom you-mention a-man great-souled not had-you-elected then
omni serie electionis per ordinem propalata: Ad hoc ætiam
with-all the-series of-the-election in order made-public for this also
non adeo mitis, o rex!, inquiunt, hactenus fuit in disciplinis,
not so mild O king they-say until-now he-was in disciplines
ut earum neglector quidem ullo modo sit fore
that of-them a-neglecter indeed in-any way he-be to-be-about-to-be
putandus. Quibus auditis, dum quiesceret, conversus ad illum
to-be-thought which heard while he-was-silent turned to him
a mento virum manu tenuit et delicatis verbis: Tune eris,
by the-chin the-man with-hand held and with-delicate words will-you be
inquit, abbatulus meus? Si Domini voluntas sit, fiat et
he-says little-abbot my if of-the-Lord the-will be let-it-be-done also
mea. Deinde illum secum duxit in æcclesiam ad Otigebam
mine then him with-himself he-led into the-church to Edith
reginam. Nepotem meum hunc, inquit, mox abbatem te
the-queen nephew my this he-says soon abbot with-you

juvante futurum ad tuam offero gratiam. Collectaque continuo
helping about-to-be to your I-offer favor and-with-the-collect at-once
facta ferulam exigens, tribuit ei verbis, quibus solitum
said the-staff demanding he-granted to-him with-words with-which wonted
est, abbatiam. Ipse autem: Te Deum laudamus! inchoans,
it-is the-abbey he-himself moreover Te Deum laudamus beginning
omnes, qui aderant, laudibus instare monebat. Quibus ita
all who were-present on-the-praises to-press warned which so
finitis, cum abbatem novum regina in partem sumptum
finished when the-abbot new the-queen into a-part taken
amice haberet, calicem sancti Galli magni precii aureum
in-friendly-fashion held a-chalice of-Saint Gall of-great price golden
dare, si ei Favariensis abbatia reddi posset, pollicetur.
to-give if to-him of-Pfäfers the-abbey to-be-returned could he-promises
Regii juris, ait illa, ambo sunt, et calix et abbatia. Sed
of-royal right says she both are both the-chalice and the-abbey but
peticionem tuam oportunius forte alia, quam nunc vice, ego
petition your more-fittingly perhaps at-another than now turn I
quidem domino meo intimabo. Quapropter, quia nunc unam
indeed to-lord my shall-make-known wherefore since now one
accepisti, domum redito, et cum proxime adveneris, pro
you-have-received home return and when next you-shall-have-come for
altera, puto, commodius interpellare tunc habebis. Missione
the-other I-think more-conveniently to-plead then you-will-have with-leave
dein hilariter sibi ab imperatore data, domum rediit.
then cheerfully to-him by the-emperor given home he-returned
Qualem autem se consiliis Ekkehardi quantumque
what-sort moreover himself by-the-counsels of-Ekkehard and-how-great
exhibuerit, pauperes nec non fratrum et familiæ pars
he-showed the-poor and also of-the-brothers and of-the-household part
multa, quam videmus adhuc hodie, quidem interdum cum
great which we-see still today indeed sometimes with

lacrimis testari solet. Delicatus autem cum esset, ut diximus,
tears to-attest is-wont delicate moreover since he-was as we-said
episcopi, tunc quidem Chuonradi, jussu carnes edebat.
of-the-bishop then indeed of-Conrad by-the-command meats he-ate
Quod tamen pace novitatis monachorum, qui irritare nunc
which however by-the-leave of-the-novelty of-monks who to-provoke now
Deum solent in adinventionibus suis, ut multiplicetur in eis
God are-wont in inventions their that may-be-multiplied in them
ruina, nequaquam dixerim; quibus tamen licentius erat carnes
ruin by-no-means I-would-say for-whom however more-licitly it-was meats
crudas laniare, quam infanda plura, quæ quasi religiosi
raw to-tear than unspeakable more-things which as-if religious-men
supersticione quadam scismatica assolent facere. Nimia est, si
with-superstition a-certain schismatic are-wont to-do excessive is if
ausim dicere, varietas vestis æcclesiæ, qua scribitur
I-may-dare to-say the-variety of-the-garment of-the-church with-which it-is-written
induere, si utrosque, quos dicimus, suo quidem colore
to-clothe-herself if both whom we-mention in-its-own indeed color
in eam dignatur intexere aut deforis, ut interdum solet,
into it she-deigns to-weave or outside as sometimes she-is-wont
polimetare. Relinquamus necesse est Deo soli judicium suum,
to-embroider let-us-leave necessary it-is to-God alone judgment his
cum tamen id audenter et veraci argumento possimus
when however this boldly and with-true argument we-can
asserere. Si aliqui apud nos in his scismatum tempestatibus
to-assert if some among us in these of-schisms storms
cælum, ut vere quidem faciunt, adipisci nituntur, acrius quam
heaven as truly indeed they-do to-attain strive more-keenly than
in patrum serenitatibus, ut aciem satanæ perrumpant,
in of-the-fathers the-calms that the-battle-line of-Satan they-may-break-through
assurgere habent in clipeum, validius torquere spicula,
to-rise they-have into the-shield more-strongly to-hurl darts

acutius jacere tela. — At Purchardus elemosinas, ut ab
more-sharply to-throw weapons but Burchard alms as from
infantia solebat, quia nunc copia major foret, agere nimium
infancy he-was-wont because now plenty greater was to-do very
lætatus non egenis solum et peregrinis, sed passim tam
glad not to-the-needy only and to-pilgrims but everywhere both
fratrum, quam familiæ palam et clam dispersit, dedit
of-the-brothers and of-the-household openly and secretly he-dispersed he-gave
pauperibus. Cumque hoc sedulus dies et noctes agens
to-the-poor and-when this busy days and nights doing
subnudus interdum domum redisset vel nudipes, camerarius
half-naked sometimes home he-had-returned or barefoot chamberlain
suus Richere, fratris quidem filius, incusabat illum crebro
his Richer of-(his)-brother indeed the-son accused him often
secretius, quasi camera sua dispersiones ejus ferre non
more-secretly as-if chamber his the-dispersals his to-bear not
posset, cum unis distractis semper alia reposceret. Cumque
could since with-some disposed always others he-demanded and-when
ille aliquando nepotem, ne sibi molestus esset, secretius
he sometime (his)-nephew lest to-him troublesome he-should-be more-secretly
argueret: Enimvero, ait, si tu non dederis, quæ postulo,
reproved indeed he-says if you not shall-have-given what I-demand
alium scio — decanum dicens—, qui in quantiscunque
another I-know the-dean saying who in however-great-things
poterit, me quidem adjuvabit. Nam ille sepius, quæ
he-will-be-able me indeed will-help for he more-often what
egenis dem, quam tu, roccos videlicet, et camisias, caligas
to-the-needy I-may-give than you frocks namely and shirts boots
et calceos et cætera usque ad cingula mihi clam suggerit;
and shoes and the-rest all-the-way to belts to-me secretly supplies
sed et sub opertorio lectuli, ut ibi inveniam, abscondit.
but also under the-cover of-the-little-bed that there I-may-find hides

Cum autem ætiam Ekkehardus ipse per se esset
since moreover also Ekkehard himself by himself was
elemosinarius, jocundum quiddam de eo dicemus. Hominem
almsgiving pleasant something about him we-shall-tell a-man
quendam domesticum cum ad hoc quidem destinaverit, ut, si
certain of-the-household when for this indeed he-had-appointed that if
quos ei pauperes vel peregrinos diceret, clam in domo ad
any to-him poor or pilgrims he-told secretly in the-house for
hoc decreta lavaret, raderet, vestitos reficeret et noctibus,
this decreed he-should-wash should-shave clothed should-refresh and by-night
jussos ut nemini dicerent, a se emitteret, accidit
bidden that to-no-one they-should-tell from himself should-send-out it-happened
quadam die, ut ei contractum, Gallum genere, carruca
on-a-certain day that to-him a-cripple Gaul by-race in-a-cart
advectum, ut solebat, committeret. Quem ille grossum
brought as he-was-wont he-entrusted whom he bulky
quidem et crassum cum toto virtutum adnisu, clauso super
indeed and fat with all of-strengths effort shut over
se solos, ut jussus est, ostio, vix in vas lavacri
themselves alone as bidden he-was with-the-door scarcely into the-vessel of-the-bath
provolveret, maledicens — erat enim irascibilis: Vere, ait,
could-roll cursing he-was for irascible truly he-says
simpliciorem, quam dominum meum, hodie nescio hominem,
simpler than lord my today I-know-not a-man
qui, cui bene faciat, discernere nescit, mihi quoque
who to-whom well he-may-do to-discern knows-not to-me also
tam pinguem helluonem dorso sustollere injunxit. At
so fat a-glutton on-(my)-back to-lift he-has-enjoined but
contractus, cum aqua sibi lavacri nimis videretur calida,
the-cripple when the-water to-him of-the-bath too seemed hot
rustice: Cald, cald est! — ait. At ille, quoniam id
rustically cald cald it-is he-says but he since that

Teutonum lingua: „frigidum est“ sonat — Et ego, inquit,
of-the-Germans in-the-tongue cold is it-sounds and I he-says
calefaciam, haustamque de lebete ferventi lavacro infudit
shall-heat and-drawn from the-cauldron boiling into-the-bath poured
aquam. At ille cum clamore horrido: Ei mi! cald est, cald
water but he with a-cry horrid Ei mi cald it-is cald
est! — ait. Enimvero, ait ille, si adhuc frigidum est, ego
it-is says indeed says he if still cold it-is I
hodie, si vixero, tibi illud caleficabo, et hauriens adhuc
today if I-shall-have-lived for-you it shall-heat and drawing still
ardenciorem infudit. At ille bullientis aquæ fervorem ferre
hotter poured-in but he of-the-boiling water the-heat to-bear
non sustinens, oblitus contracturæ citus assurrexit, lavacro
not enduring forgetting (his)-crippledness quick rose from-the-bath
exilivit, ad ostium recludendum, ut fugeret, velociter currens
leapt-out to the-door to-be-unlocked that he-might-flee swiftly running
cum pessulo aliquandiu luctatur. Sed et hominem ubi
with the-bolt for-some-time wrestles but also the-man when
deceptorem vidit, titionem semiardentem ab igne dicto
the-deceiver he-saw a-brand half-burning from the-fire than-said
citius rapiens grandes sine numero nudo infregit. At
quicker snatching great-blows without number on-the-naked broke but
Ekkehardus turbam et voces in superiori domo audiens
Ekkehard the-uproar and the-voices in the-upper house hearing
acriter in utrumque, cum citius descenderet, Teutonice et
sharply against each when quickly he-came-down in-German and
Romanice invectus est, hunc, cur falleret, illum, cur sibi ad
in-Romance inveighed has this-one why he-deceived that-one why for-himself for
puniendum hominem non reservasset, increpitans. Eia, ille
punishing the-man not he-had-reserved rebuking come-now that-one
ait, mi domine severe, tute ei corniculum abmorderes
says my lord severe you-yourself from-him the-little-horn would-bite-off

et plures, quam ego nunc, illusori infringeres? Enimvero
and more than I now on-the-mocker would-break indeed
longe aliud ageres; scelestum hunc vestitum et saturum
far another-thing you-would-do the-wicked this clothed and sated
noctu a te deosculatum dimitteres, quod, ut te novi,
by-night by you kissed you-would-send-away which as you I-know
et hodie facturus es. Et ille: O servum, ait, furciferum!
also today about-to-do you-are and he O slave he-says gallows-bird
an non licet mihi facere, quod volo? Et cætera. His
whether not it-is-allowed to-me to-do what I-wish and the-rest with-these
peractis, castigatum quidem verbis hominem et, ne facinus
completed rebuked indeed in-words the-man and lest a-crime
tale unquam repeteret, jurare coactum abire permisit.
such ever he-should-repeat to-swear compelled to-go-away he-allowed

Capitula 89–91

EKKEHARD AND DUCHESS HADWIG

Ekkehard, the dean's nephew, is handsome, eloquent, and a stern master, and six of his pupils become bishops. Hadwig, widow of Duke Burchard of Swabia, who as a girl refused a Greek king, asks Abbot Burchard for Ekkehard as her teacher, and he goes to Hohentwiel, where her severity tries him. Ruodmann of Reichenau slanders the monks, and creeping into the cloister by night to spy, is found in the privy by Ekkehard, lit with the abbot's lantern, and led to the church's entrance.

Et quoniam hic locum aptum puto, de Ekkehardo, sororis
and since here the-place fit I-think about Ekkehard of-the-sister
ejus filio, quem et ipse et Geraldus docuerant severe,
his the-son whom both he-himself and Gerald had-taught severely
rem arduam aggredior, quoniam, cum tales viri aut nulli,
a-thing arduous I-undertake since since such men either none

aut nunc rarissimi sint, discredi mihi vereor. Erat hic
or now very-rare be to-be-disbelieved by-me I-fear he-was this-one
facie adeo decorus, ut inspicientes, sicut Josephus de Moyse
in-face so handsome that the-beholders as Josephus about Moses
scribit, gratia sui detineret — ut Otto Saxonicus Rufus
writes by-the-grace of-him he-detained as Otto the-Saxon the-Red
de illo: Nemini unquam, ait, Benedicti cuculla decentius
about him to-no-one ever he-says of-Benedict the-cowl more-becomingly
insederat—, statura procerus, forti assimilis, equaliter
had-sat in-stature tall to-a-strong-man like equally
grossus, oculis fulgurosus — ut quidam ad Augustum ait:
stout in-the-eyes flashing as a-certain-one to Augustus says
Quia fulmen oculorum tuorum ferre non possum—, sapientia
because the-lightning of-eyes your to-bear not I-can in-wisdom
et eloquentia, maxime autem consiliis, nemini id temporis
and in-eloquence most moreover in-counsels to-no-one that of-time
postponendus, in ætate florida gloriæ, ut talis facturæ vir,
to-be-placed-after in age blooming of-glory as of-such make a-man
humilitati proximior — sed postea non ita, quia disciplina,
to-humility nearer but afterward not so because discipline
cum qua nihil unquam participii superbia habuit, in ipso
with which nothing ever of-sharing pride had in him-himself
erat spectaculo digna—, doctor prosper et asper — nam
was of-spectacle worthy a-teacher prosperous and harsh for
cum apud suum Gallum ambas scolas suas teneret, nemo
when at his Gall both schools his he-held no-one
preter exiles pusiones quicquam alteri, nisi Latine, ausus
except little little-boys anything to-another unless in-Latin dared
est proloqui, et quos ad literarum studia tardiores vidisset,
has to-speak and whom for of-letters studies slower he-had-seen
ad scribendum occupaverat et lineandum; quorum amborum
for writing he-had-occupied and drawing of-which both

ipse erat potentissimus, maxime in capitularibus literis et
he-himself was most-powerful most in capital letters and
auro, ut apparet in versibus fornicis Galli, quos fecit:
gold as appears in the-verses of-the-arch of-Gall which he-made

Templum, quod Gallo Cozpertus struxerat almo,
The-temple which for-Gall Cozpert had-built kindly
hoc abbas Ymmo picturis compsit et auro.
this abbot Immo with-paintings adorned and with-gold

Has ille literas cultello concisas illic liniverat. In
these he letters with-a-little-knife cut there had-coated in
literis autem studiose mediocres et nobiles eque erudiverat;
letters moreover studiously the-middling and the-noble equally he-had-taught
quorum tamen numerosos Gallo et aliis ad summum
of-whom however numerous for-Gall and for-others to the-summit
evexerat. Eorum enim plures ipse vidit episcopos, ut
he-had-raised of-them for many he-himself saw as-bishops as
quondam Magontiæ in generali concilio, cum consessum
once at-Mainz in the-general council when the-session
adveniens intrasset, sex ei quondam discipuli, tunc
arriving he-had-entered six to-him once disciples then
episcopi, assurrexerant et magistrum salutabant. Et Wilegisus
bishops had-risen and the-master greeted and Willigis
archiepiscopus digito accitum osculatus: Digne fili mi, ait,
the-archbishop with-a-finger summoned kissed worthy son my he-says
et tu quandoque cum talibus inthronizaberis. Cujus pedes cum
also you sometime with such-men shall-be-enthroned whose feet when
peteret, manu eum delicate erexerat. Et quoniam præpostere
he-sought with-hand him delicately had-raised and since preposterously
fortunam hominis prælibavimus, ad altiora ejus acta veniemus.
the-fortune of-the-man we-have-foretasted to the-higher his deeds we-shall-come

Hadawiga, Henrici ducis filia, Suevorum post Purchardum
Hadwig of-Henry the-duke the-daughter of-the-Swabians after Burchard
virum dux vidua, cum Duellio habitaret, femina
(her)-husband duchess a-widow when at-Hohentwiel she-dwelt a-woman
admodum quidem pulchra, nimiæ severitatis cum esset
very indeed beautiful of-excessive severity since she-was
suis, longe lateque terris erat terribilis. Hæc quondam
to-her-people far and-wide in-the-lands she-was terrible this-one once
parvula Constantino Greco regi cum esset desponsata, per
little to-Constantine the-Greek king when she-was betrothed through
eunuchos ejus ad hoc missos literis Grecis adprime est
the-eunuchs his for this sent in-letters Greek especially was
erudita. Sed cum, imaginem virginis pictor eunuchus
instructed but when the-image of-the-virgin the-painter eunuch
domino mittendam uti simillime depingeret, sollicite eam
to-the-lord to-be-sent that most-like-to-life he-might-paint carefully her
inspiceret, ipsa nuptias exosa os divaricabat et oculos,
was-inspecting she-herself the-nuptials hating the-mouth was-distorting and the-eyes
sicque Greco pervicaciter repudiato, literis post Latinis
and-so with-the-Greek stubbornly repudiated in-letters afterward Latin
studentem Purchart illam dux multipliciter dotatam duxit,
studying Burchard her the-duke manifoldly endowed married
et cum jam esset decrepitus, thalamo, ut ajebant, secum
and when already he-was decrepit in-the-bedchamber as they-said with-him
nequicquam cubantem, in proximo moriens, quamvis non
in-vain lying in the-near dying although not
intactam, incognitam, ut celebre est, cum dotibus et ducatu
untouched unknown as famous it-is with dowries and the-duchy
reliquit puellam. Hæc sanctum Gallum vidua orandi aliquando
left the-girl this-one Saint Gall a-widow of-praying sometime
petiverat causa. Quam Purchardus abbas festive susceptam
had-sought for-the-sake whom Burchard the-abbot festively received

utique neptim donis cum prosequi pararet, ipsa se
surely (his)-niece with-gifts when to-attend he-prepared she-herself herself
alia dona nolle, ait, præter Ekkehardum sibi doctorem,
other gifts to-wish-not says except Ekkehard for-herself as-teacher
si Duellium ad tempus concederet. Nam cum portanarius
if to-Hohentwiel for a-time he-would-grant for since doorkeeper
esset, de voluntate ipsius ipsa cum eo pridie secreta
he-was of the-will his she-herself with him the-day-before secret-things
condixerat. Quod dum abbas ingrate quidem concederet et
had-arranged which while the-abbot reluctantly indeed granted and
avunculus dissuaderet, ille tamen nihilominus, quæ petitus est
the-uncle dissuaded he however nevertheless what asked he-was
facere, pertenderat. Duellium die condicto cum egre
to-do persisted to-Hohentwiel on-the-day agreed when impatiently
exspectatus veniret, ultra, quam ipse vellet, susceptum in
awaited he-came beyond than he-himself wished received into
conclave suo proximum suum, ut ipsa ait, manu duxit
chamber her nearest her-own as she-herself says by-the-hand she-led
magistrum. Ibi nocte et die cum familiari aliqua intrare
the-master there by-night and by-day with familiar some to-enter
solebat ad legendum pedissequa, foribus tamen semper
she-was-wont for reading a-handmaid with-the-doors however always
apertis, ut, si quis etiam ausus, quid esset, nihil, quod diceret,
open that if anyone also dared what it-was nothing which he-might-say
sinistrum haberet. Illic quoque crebro ambos ministri et
sinister he-might-have there also often both the-servants and
milites, principes etiam terræ lectioni aut consiliis invenerant
soldiers the-princes also of-the-land at-reading or at-counsels had-found
agentes. Moribus tamen illa suis severis et efferis sepe virum
acting with-manners however she her severe and wild often the-man
exasperans domi interdum, quam secum, mansisse multo
exasperating at-home sometimes than with-her to-have-stayed much

malle fecerat. Ut in dorsi pallio et cortina lecti sui, quæ
to-prefer had-made as in of-the-back the-hanging and the-curtain of-bed her which
humilia sentiens ipse jussit deponi, deponentem illa
humble-things feeling he-himself bade to-be-taken-down the-one-taking-down she
jussit verberari, et magistro multa rogante, vix concessit
bade to-be-beaten and with-the-master much asking scarcely granted
non decapillari. Domum ille aut festis, aut quando libet
not to-be-shorn home he or for-feasts or when it-pleased
visere, iret, opinabile erat, quantas homini impensas navibus
to-visit went to-be-believed it-was how-great for-the-man expenses by-ships
Steinaham præmiserit, novum illi semper aliquid in paraturis
to-Steinach she-sent-ahead new for-him always something in vestments
aut sibimet utendum, aut Gallo offerendum acutissima ipsa
either for-himself to-be-used or for-Gall to-be-offered most-sharp she-herself
Minerva præstrui faciens. Inter quæ præter casulas sericas,
Minerva to-be-prepared making among which besides chasubles silken
cappas et stolas alba est illa philologiæ nuptiis auro
copes and stoles the-alb is that of-philology with-the-marriage with-gold
insignis, preter quæ dalmaticam et subtile pene aurea, quæ
notable besides which a-dalmatic and a-tunicle almost golden which
postmodum, Ymmone abbate sibi antiphonarium quendam
afterward with-Immo abbot to-her an-antiphonary certain
petitum denegante, acutia sua versipelli resumpserat.
asked-for refusing by-cunning her crafty she-had-taken-back
Patuerant his temporibus ora invidorum, ut semper in
had-lain-open in-these times the-mouths of-the-envious as always against
monachos, quasi pro libitu viventes. Positus est, ut ceteros
monks as-if at pleasure living set was that the-others
relinquamus et nostra fortunia tangamus, Augensibus
we-may-leave and our fortunes we-may-touch for-those-of-Reichenau
abbas de fratribus ipsorum, nomine Ruodmannus. Qui cum
as-abbot from the-brothers their by-name Ruodmann who when

suis tyrannice præesset, pellem vellicare nesciens percinderet,
over-his tyrannically he-presided the-skin to-pluck not-knowing he-cut-through
linguam quoque malignam in sancti Galli monachos, quasi
the-tongue also malicious against of-Saint Gall the-monks as-if
minus regulares, quaqua poterat, dilatabat. Erant adhuc sancto
less regular wherever he-could spread there-were still for-Saint
Gallo præter Ekkehardum hunc, quem dicimus, junioresque,
Gall besides Ekkehard this whom we-mention and-the-younger-ones
quos patres nutriverant, multos, Ekkehardus decanus bene
whom the-fathers had-nourished many Ekkehard the-dean well
validus, Gerhaldus, Notkerus, Chunibertus Altaha post abbas,
strong Gerald Notker Chunibert of-Altaich afterward abbot
Walto secundus, qui jussu abbatis sui Ruodmannum per
Walto the-second who by-the-command of-abbot his Ruodmann through
Ekkehardum internuntium convenientes, linguæ parceret
Ekkehard as-go-between approaching the-tongue he-should-spare
fraternæ, rogabant. Quod ille cum minimi penderet, nuntium
fraternal asked which he when of-the-least he-weighed the-messenger
tamen et personæ honore, et ducis severe, ad quam
however both of-the-person by-the-honor and of-the-duchess severe to whom
etiam ille tunc ibat, timore tractabat condigne. Ipse vero
also he then was-going by-fear treated worthily he-himself but
Ekkehardus cum hominem ad omnia aversativum prudenti
Ekkehard when the-man to all-things averse with-prudent
facundia crebro inter agendum frustra convinceret, minis ejus
eloquence often during acting in-vain he-convinced by-threats his
validissimis motus, ad monasterium clam rediit, et qui
most-mighty moved to the-monastery secretly returned and one-who
obstaculum adventus sui duci rediceret, in montem
the-obstacle of-the-arrival his to-the-duchess should-report-back to the-hill
propinquum remisit, et missionem Ruodmanni dedignans abivit.
nearby sent-back and the-dismissal of-Ruodmann scorning went-off

At Ruodmannus ad ducem eum abisse arbitratus, equite
but Ruodmann to the-duchess him to-have-gone thinking with-a-horse
ascenso sanctum Gallum noctu invadens claustrum clandestinus
mounted Saint Gall by-night invading the-cloister secretly
introiit, ut si quid reatui proximum invenire posset, furtive
entered that if anything to-guilt near to-find he-could stealthily
perspiceret; et cum claustrum sibi notissimum circuiens
he-might-see-through and when the-cloister to-him most-known going-round
undique speculatus fuisset, nichil voti sui inveniens, e
on-all-sides spied he-had-been nothing of-wish his finding from
parte æcclesiæ dormitorium ascendit secessumque fratrum
the-side of-the-church the-dormitory climbed and-the-privy of-the-brothers
pedetemptivus ascendit et occulte resedit. E vestigio illum
stepping-carefully climbed and secretly sat-down from the-track him
Ekkehardus, homo ad omnia circumspectus, strato surgens
Ekkehard a-man for all-things circumspect from-the-bed rising
consequitur, nescius ejus, solumque hominem nactus
follows not-knowing him and-alone the-man having-found
miratur, quisnam fratrum noctibus nobis insolitam ita
wonders which of-the-brothers by-nights to-us unaccustomed so
iret viam illam vitabundus; lumine enim ille officinæ
might-go way that avoiding-notice with-light for he of-the-workshop
obscuro sedebat occultus. Aliquandiu autem cum, quis sit,
dim sat hidden for-some-time moreover when who he-was
hesitasset, runcore narium, quo commotus solebat,
he-had-hesitated by-the-snort of-the-nostrils with-which aroused he-was-wont
Ruodmannum esse persenserat, illicoque accensa, quam
Ruodmann to-be he-perceived and-at-once lit which
fratrum quendam clam afferre monuit, abbatis laterna,
of-the-brothers a-certain-one secretly to-bring he-warned of-the-abbot the-lantern
coram illo statuit, et stramina apponens pro capellano procul
before him he-placed and straws placing as a-chaplain far

constitit, accedentesque solito fratres silentium nutibus
stood and-those-approaching as-wonted the-brothers to-silence with-nods
monuit miratos, cui laterna steterit; nam abbas, cui
warned wondering for-whom the-lantern stood for the-abbot for-whom
soli laterna geri solita est, loco abfuit. Tandem diu
alone the-lantern to-be-borne wonted it-is from-the-place was-absent at-last long
exspectatus cum nescius ille, quidnam facere posset, surgeret,
awaited when not-knowing he what to-do he-could rose
Ekkehardus, laterna levata, abeuntem eadem, qua
Ekkehard with-the-lantern raised the-one-going-away by-the-same by-which
eum venisse senserat, prævit via. Et cum ad introitum
him to-have-come he-had-perceived went-before road and when to the-entrance
æcclesiæ, ubi locus auditorii est, venissent, sedere ibi,
of-the-church where the-place of-the-auditorium is they-had-come to-sit there
quoad eum decano avunculo et fratribus intimaret,
until him to-the-dean the-uncle and to-the-brothers he-should-make-known
ut hospitem tantum non ignorarent, silenter monuit.
that the-guest so-great not they-should-ignore silently he-warned

Capitula 92–95

RUODMANN CAUGHT, AND HADWIG'S GREEK

A young monk rushes at Ruodmann with a whip, but the brothers hold him back; Ruodmann begs pardon and on Ekkehard's advice is reconciled with all. At Reichenau he gives Ekkehard a horse and whispers a gibe about his beautiful pupil; Ekkehard answers in kind about the nun Kotelinda. Hadwig kisses the boy Burchard for his verses and teaches him Greek. Ekkehard will not accuse Ruodmann to her, but she calls an assembly at Wahlwies, and Ruodmann writes asking whether Ekkehard told her the gibe; he denies it.

Et ecce fratrum pars, maxime juvenum, novitate rei
and lo of-the-brothers part most of-the-young at-the-novelty of-the-thing
stupidi cum appropiassent, quidam ipsorum re agnita,
stunned when they-had-approached some of-them with-the-thing recognized
flagello de pirali rapto, scelestum illum incurrens
with-the-whip from the-warming-room snatched wicked that-one rushing-at
clamitat, et nisi animis saniores ei erecto ad ictum brachio
shouts and unless in-mind the-saner to-him with-raised for the-blow arm
occurrissent, grandes incussissent. At ille se in angustia
had-run-up great-blows they-would-have-struck but he himself in a-strait
esse tandem sentiens: Si fuge, inquit, copiam haberem,
to-be at-last perceiving if of-flight he-says opportunity I-had
juvenum optimi, profecto fugerem; nunc autem in vestris
of-youths best surely I-would-flee now moreover in your
quia, velim nolim, sum manibus, mitius mecum quidem
because willing unwilling I-am hands more-gently with-me indeed
vos condecet agere, sed et decanum vestrum et cæteros
you it-befits to-deal but also dean your and the-other
patres exspectare. Decanus tandem, consilio in brevi petito,
fathers to-await the-dean at-last with-counsel in brief sought
supervenit cum patribus. At Notker medicus, Piperis-Granum,
came-up with the-fathers but Notker the-physician Pepper-Corn

animosior in illum: Malo tuo, versutissime hominum, leo
more-spirited against him to-evil your most-crafty of-men lion
quærens, quos devores, fratrum, quos alter satanas accusas,
seeking whom you-may-devour of-the-brothers whom another Satan you-accuse
manus incideras. Ille vero tanti viri verbis tremefactus,
into-the-hands you-had-fallen he but of-so-great a-man by-the-words terrified
decanum animi piissimi non ignarus: Vide, ait illi, pater
the-dean of-mind most-pious not ignorant see he-says to-him father
prudentissime, ne me equivocæ tuæ artibus circumventum
most-prudent lest me of-namesake your by-the-arts circumvented
dehonestari sinas et te postea intemporive peniteat.
to-be-dishonored you-allow and you afterward untimely it-repent
Tandemque procidens: Ecce, ait, veniam ab omnibus peto,
and-at-last falling-forward lo he-says pardon from all I-seek
ut in gratiam vobiscum rediens deinceps talibus quidem
that into favor with-you returning henceforth from-such-things indeed
abstineam. Moverat animis saniores repentina rerum in tam
I-may-abstain had-moved in-minds the-saner the-sudden of-things in so
potente mutatio. At alii, ut fit, aliud fremebant. Tandem
a-powerful-man change but others as happens otherwise were-roaring at-last
consulto Ekkehardi lenitis patribus, et per ipsos omnibus
by-the-advice of-Ekkehard soothed the-fathers and through them to-all
reconciliatus, ipso comite ad suos, ubi jussi exspectabant,
reconciled with-him as-companion to his-people where bidden they-were-waiting
est egressus lætaque coram suis locutus abibat, obnixe
he-has gone-out and-glad before his-people having-spoken went-away earnestly
Ekkehardum, ut, quando proxime Duellium pergeret, se
Ekkehard that when next to-Hohentwiel he-should-proceed himself
non præteriret, inter cætera rogans; fratribus vero duo vasa
not he-should-pass-by among other-things asking to-the-brothers but two vessels
vini per ipsum pollicitus nave Steinaham in proximo misit.
of-wine through him promised by-ship to-Steinach in the-near he-sent

Sed Purchardus foris turbam audiens nimis, cum adveniret,
but Burchard outside the-uproar hearing very when he-arrived
doluit, quod tam securus et liber abivit, querelasque
grieved that so secure and free he-went-away and-complaints
inauditæ rei episcopo mandat. Et ecce Ekkehardus,
of-the-unheard-of thing to-the-bishop sends and lo Ekkehard
æquivoco diacono, post decano, et Purchardo puero,
by-(his)-namesake the-deacon afterward dean and by-Burchard the-boy
post abbate, consobrinis, comitatus Duellium pergens item
afterward abbot cousins accompanied to-Hohentwiel proceeding likewise
Augie Ruodmannum, ut condixerant, alloquitur. Inter
at-Reichenau Ruodmann as they-had-agreed addresses among
colloquia versutus ille artibus suis abusus imparem
talks crafty that-one arts his abusing an-unequal-match
non invenit. Nam festinantem, ne serus feminæ severæ
not found for the-one-hastening lest late to-the-woman severe
adveniret, equo decoro donat. Quem ille parte comitatus
he-should-arrive with-a-horse handsome he-presents which he with-part of-the-retinue
cum præmitteret, paulisper inter verba læticiæ et familiares
when he-sent-ahead for-a-little among words of-gladness and familiar
astutiæ ictus sciolus tardat, tandemque cum inter amplexus
of-cunning blows knowing he-delays and-at-last when among embraces
et oscula dimitteretur, subplantator ille hospiti suo in aurem:
and kisses he-was-dismissed supplanter that to-guest his into the-ear
Fortunate, ait, qui tam pulchram discipulam docere habes
fortunate he-says who so beautiful a-pupil to-teach you-have
grammaticam. Ad quod ille, quasi caro assensu subridens,
grammar to which he as-if with-dear assent smiling
talia in aurem adversario reddit amico: Sicut et tu, sancte
such-things into the-ear to-the-adversary returns friend as also you holy-one
Domini, Kotelindam monialem pulchram discipulam caram
of-the-Lord Kotelinda the-nun a-beautiful pupil dear

docuisti quidem dialecticam. Dictoque cicius, cum ille nescio
have-taught indeed dialectic and-than-said quicker when he I-know-not
quid resibilare vellet, ab eo divertens equo ascenso
what to-hiss-back wished from him turning-away with-the-horse mounted
indignanter abivit. At Otkerus, frater et miles abbatis, cum
indignantly went-off but Otker brother and soldier of-the-abbot when
motum sensisset: Illum equum, domine mi, ut mihi videtur,
the-motion he-had-perceived that horse lord my as to-me it-seems
penitus perdidisti. Fratres autem, quos diximus, duo illi,
wholly you-have-lost the-brothers moreover whom we-mentioned two those
sicut ab ipsis audivimus, cum missionem peterent inclinati,
as from them we-have-heard when dismissal they-sought bowed
aversus ab illis ait fratri: Utinam, inquit, post illum
turned-away from them he-says to-the-brother would-that he-says after him
celeres, qui equum illum nobilem mihi reducant, mittere
swift-men who the-horse that noble to-me might-bring-back to-send
velles. Et ille: Enimvero, ait, illam petit ille cum suis
you-would-wish and he indeed he-says her seeks he with his-men
nunc feminam, ut cuiquam meorum quicquam illius tangere
now the-woman that to-any of-mine anything of-him to-touch
jubere non præsumam. Sic illi duo, equis ascensis, post
to-bid not I-should-presume thus those two with-horses mounted after
magistrum modeste perrexerant. Ascendentes autem montem
the-master modestly had-proceeded climbing moreover the-hill
apparuerunt duci ad vesperas eunti. Quibus salutatis —
they-appeared to-the-duchess to vespers going who greeted
nam turbam Ruodmanni jam priorem audiverat—: Enimvero,
for the-uproar of-Ruodmann already earlier she-had-heard indeed
ait, ut audio, magister mi, non percommodus laternifer
she-says as I-hear master my not very-handy lantern-bearer
fuisti lupo illi aliunde caulas intranti. Cumque ille
you-were for-wolf that from-elsewhere the-sheepfolds entering and-when he

quidem subrisisset: Per Hadewigæ, illa ait, vitam — sic
indeed had-smiled by of-Hadwig she says the-life so
enim jurare solebat — si imperitorum aliquis claustri
for to-swear she-was-wont if of-the-unskilled any of-cloister
illius invasori grandes infregisset, non ego curassem.
that on-the-invader great-blows had-broken not I would-have-cared
Altera dein die, cum diluculo, ut ibi solebant, silentium
on-the-other then day when at-dawn as there they-were-wont the-silence
regulæ, cujus et ipsa exactrix erat sollicita, de more
of-the-rule of-which also she-herself enforcer was anxious by custom
persolvisset — nam jam monasterium in monte statuere
she-had-paid for already a-monastery on the-hill to-establish
cœperat — magistrum lectura adiit. Et cum sedisset,
she-had-begun the-master about-to-read approached and when she-had-sat
ad quid puer ille venerit, ipso astante inter cætera
for what boy that had-come with-him standing-by among other-things
quesivit. Propter Grecismum, ille ait, domina mi! Ut ab
she-asked for Greekness he says lady my that from
ore vestro aliquid raperet, alias sciolum vobis illum
mouth your something he-might-snatch otherwise knowing to-you him
attuli. Puer autem ipse pulcher aspectu, metro cum
I-have-brought the-boy moreover himself beautiful in-appearance in-meter since
esset paratissimus, sic intulit:
he-was most-ready thus brought-in

Esse velim Grecus, cum sim vix, domna, Latinus.
To-be I-would-wish Greek since I-am scarcely lady Latin

In quo illa, sicut novarum rerum cupida, adeo est delectata,
in which she as of-new things desirous so-much was delighted
ut ad se tractum osculata scabello pedum proximius
that to herself drawn kissed on-the-footstool of-the-feet nearer

locaret. A quo, ut repentinos sibi adhuc versus faceret,
she-placed from whom that sudden for-her still verses he-might-make
curiosa exegerat. Puer vero magistros ambos intuitus
curious she-had-demanded the-boy but the-masters both having-looked-at
quasi talis osculi insuetus hæc intulit:
as-if to-such a-kiss unaccustomed these-things brought-in

Non possum prorsus dignos componere versus;
Not I-can at-all worthy to-compose verses
nam nimis expavi, duce me libante suavi.
for too-much I-took-fright with-the-duchess me tasting with-a-kiss

Illa vero extra solitam severitatem in chachinnos versa, tandem
she but beyond (her)-wonted severity into laughter turned at-last
puerum coram se statuit et eum antiphonam: Maria et
the-boy before herself set and him the-antiphon Maria et
flumina, quam ipsa in Grecum transtulit, canere docuit ita:
flumina which she-herself into Greek translated to-sing taught thus

Thalassi ke potami, eulogiton kyrion;
Seas and rivers bless the-Lord
ymnite pigonton kyrion alleluja.
hymn springs the-Lord alleluia

Crebroque illum postea, cum vacasset, ad se vocatum
and-often him afterward when she-was-at-leisure to herself called
repentinis ab eo versibus exactis grecissare docuit et unice
with-sudden from him verses demanded to-speak-Greek taught and uniquely
dilexit. Tandem quoque abeuntem Oratio et quibusdam
loved at-last also on-departing with-Horace and certain
aliis, quos hodie armarium nostrum habet, donavit libris.
others which today book-chest our has presented books

At Ekkehardus minor ille interea cum puero ad alios,
but Ekkehard the-younger that meanwhile with the-boy to others
ut solebat, quosdam ducis capellanos, quos illa nullo
as he-was-wont certain of-the-duchess chaplains whom she in-no
modo in curte sua otia tenere est passa, erudiendos
way in court her leisure to-keep has suffered to-be-instructed
secesserat; nam et ipse erat idonee literatus. Remanserant
had-withdrawn for also he-himself was suitably lettered had-remained
solito soli ad legendum illi. Virgilius erat in manibus,
as-wonted alone for reading they Vergil was in hands
sed et locus ille: Timeo Danaos et dona ferentes. —
but also place that I-fear the-Greeks even gifts bearing
Locum hunc, Ekkehardus ait, commode heri ego, domna
place this Ekkehard says conveniently yesterday I lady
mi, memorare habui. Et cum ei, quomodo se abbas
my to-recall had and when to-her how him the-abbot
Augiam invitatum equo honorabili donaverit, versutis
to-Reichenau invited with-a-horse honorable had-presented with-crafty
tamen sermonibus inter dona non abstinuerit, insinuasset,
however speeches among the-gifts not had-abstained he-had-insinuated
ultima tamen utrimque in aures susurria cælavisset:
the-last however on-both-sides into the-ears whispers he-had-concealed
Vellem, ait illa, omnem illam, quæ nuperrime inter vos
I-would-wish says she all that which most-lately between you
accidit, a principio audire tragediam, quoniam, si eam
happened from the-beginning to-hear tragedy since whether it
vere quidem audierim, ignoro. Miror ætiam, me imperii
truly indeed I-have-heard I-know-not I-wonder also me of-the-empire
vicaria tam prope assidente, duo mei ducatus monasteria,
the-vicar so near sitting-by two of-my duchy monasteries
me equidem spreta, tanta miscuisse infortunia. Enimvero
me indeed scorned so-great to-have-mixed misfortunes indeed

nisi consiliarii dissuaserint, ubi reatum invenero, juste
unless the-counselors shall-have-dissuaded where guilt I-shall-have-found justly
vindicare habebo. Et ille: Infidum est, ait, serena
to-avenge I-shall-have and he faithless it-is he-says serene-one
mi, ut ego quidem, qui reconciliationis post avunculum
my that I indeed who of-the-reconciliation after (my)-uncle
pars maxima fui, accusative tibi quicquam, quia aliter
part greatest I-was accusingly to-you anything because otherwise
non potero, post pacis oscula dicam. Quamvis enim
not I-shall-be-able after of-peace the-kisses should-say although for
me ille heri in multis, ut ipsa hominem nosti,
me he yesterday in many-things as you-yourself the-man you-know
cum et dona steterint, clam stimulaverit, meum tamen
when also the-gifts had-stood secretly goaded mine however
nequaquam est, tantorum virorum pactam pacem scindere,
by-no-means it-is of-so-great men pledged peace to-tear
cum et ego propter hoc non omittam, quin paci,
since also I on-account-of this not shall-omit but-that to-peace
prout ipse quidem vult, cum illo assentiam. Placuit
as he-himself indeed wishes with him I-may-assent pleased
mulieri ratio et rectilinium magistri. Colloquium tamen
the-woman the-reasoning and straightness of-the-master a-colloquy however
publicum postea pro his et pro aliis regiminis causis
public afterward for these-things and for other of-rule causes
Walewis villa edixit. Illuc quoque episcopum et abbates
at-Wahlwies the-estate she-proclaimed thither also the-bishop and the-abbots
venire jusserat. Ruodman autem Ekkehardum verba illa
to-come she-had-bidden Ruodmann moreover Ekkehard words those
in aures dicta duci propalasse suspicatus animo
into the-ears spoken to-the-duchess to-have-made-public suspecting in-mind
contabuit, literasque in montem ei per peregrinum
wasted-away and-a-letter onto the-hill to-him through a-pilgrim

sagacem quendam direxit. Hæc post reparandæ inter
shrewd certain directed these-things after of-to-be-repaired between
se gratiæ literas verba: Miror enim amicum meum
themselves of-grace the-letter the-words I-wonder for friend my
ad omnia acutissimum, si novissima illa in aures susurria
for all-things most-sharp if the-last those into the-ears whispers
domnæ ductrici effuderat, quod si forte feceras,
to-the-lady duchess he-had-poured-out which if perhaps you-had-done
renunties, rogo. Ejus autem econtra per eundem
you-should-report I-ask his moreover in-turn through the-same
gerulum hæc post aliqua verba: Neque enim tantæ
bearer these-things after some words nor for of-so-great
apud formosissimam meam unquam fui fiduciæ, ut
with most-beautiful my ever I-was confidence that
severitatis ejus auribus hæc ausim ingerere. Hæc
of-the-severity her into-the-ears these-things I-should-dare to-pour these-things
de mediis amborum brevitatis ego gratia excerpseram
from the-middles of-both of-brevity I for-the-sake had-excerpted
brevibus.
briefly

Capitula 96–99

RUODMANN'S FINE AND THE KINGS' ENVOYS

Ruodmann pacifies the bishop with gifts and is fined by Hadwig a hundred pounds, fifty remitted for the bishop's sake. Her gift of a horse throws Abbot Burchard against a post and lames him, and Richer and the dean govern for him. Ekkehard rises at the court of the Ottos, where the queen and the duchess keep him for a great bishopric. Ruodmann tells the kings that Ekkehard and a few monks live richly while the rest starve, and proposes Sandrat of Cologne to reform them; Ekkehard asks only that Ruodmann be excluded, and sixteen bishops and abbots are sent.

Absolutus tandem timore maximo ejus, quam maxime
released at-last from-the-fear greatest of-her whom most
timuisset, ad Kaminoldum tunc episcopum se primo per
he-had-feared to Kaminold then the-bishop himself first through
nuntios vertit. Qui cum et ipse ei pro fraude claustri
messengers turned who since also he-himself to-him for the-fraud of-the-cloister
invasi infestus fuerit, ratis donariis eum pacificavit. Dein
invaded hostile had-been with-fixed gifts him he-pacified then
ipsum in montem duosque cum eo ad ducem de suis
him onto the-hill and-two with him to the-duchess of his-people
misit causidicos. Episcopus quidem, quod in se peccasset,
he-sent advocates the-bishop indeed what against himself he-had-sinned
dimissum coram ea pronuntiat; causidici vero: Si ab episcopo
forgiven before her pronounces the-advocates but if from the-bishop
liber est, gratia vestri, ajunt, immerito, dux optima, caret.
free he-is with-favor of-you they-say undeservedly duchess best lacks
Quibus illa: Sancti Galli, inquit, locus imperialis libertatis
to-whom she of-Saint Gall she-says the-place of-imperial liberty
cum sit meique regiminis, immunitatis privilegio pollet, quam
since it-is and-of-my rule of-immunity by-the-privilege is-strong which
ei præ illo sub abbatis nomine vere tyranno obtinebo, si
for-it before that-one under of-the-abbot the-name truly a-tyrant I-shall-obtain if

potero. Legatur mulcta immunitatis inscripta, et quoniam,
I-shall-be-able let-be-read the-fine of-the-immunity inscribed and since
episcope mi, pro eo venisti, sicut jus postulat, sancto Gallo
bishop my for him you-have-come as right demands to-Saint Gall
eam et abbati resolvat. Et quoniam mei juris est, si laicus
it and to-the-abbot he-should-pay and since of-my right it-is if a-layman
laicum, ut id ipsum juridicialiter proloquar, involaverit, coram
a-layman that this very juridically I-may-speak-out shall-have-attacked before
comite meo lege multetur; multo magis, si regiæ libertatis
count my by-law he-is-fined much more if of-royal liberty
abbatem tyrannicus abbas nocturnus invaserit, regali coram
an-abbot a-tyrannical abbot nocturnal shall-have-invaded to-royal before
me sententiæ subjacebit. Attamen majestatis reo, nisi
me sentence he-will-lie-subject nevertheless of-majesty to-the-guilty except
quod tanti viri vos quidem, qui pro illo loquimini, estis,
that of-so-great a-man you indeed who for him speak are
si vel respondere jam absque præsentia imperii me deceat,
whether even to-answer now without the-presence of-the-empire me it-befits
nescio. Tandem post plura, cum consiliarios, inter quos et
I-know-not at-last after more-things when counselors among whom also
Ekkehardum, adhibuisset, vix actum est, ut, abbate nostro
Ekkehard she-had-applied scarcely done it-was that with-abbot our
per mulctam immunitatis prius in præsentia suorum, quos
through the-fine of-the-immunity first in the-presence of-his-men whom
ad hoc direxerat, pro invasione illa nunquam inter monachos
for this she-had-directed for invasion that never among monks
audita reconciliato, die dato centum libras ante portas
heard reconciled with-a-day given a-hundred pounds before the-gates
Duellii, ut se deceret, Ruodmannus ostenderet, tandemque
of-Hohentwiel as himself it-befitted Ruodmann should-show and-at-last

tunc gratiam suam haberet, dieque dato, quinquaginta
then favor her he-should-have and-with-a-day given fifty
abbati episcopi gratia remissis, cætera recipi jussit.
to-the-abbot of-the-bishop for-the-sake remitted the-rest to-be-received she-bade
Misitque post dies istos dux ipsa Purchardo nostro,
and-sent after days these the-duchess herself to-Burchard our
cognato videlicet et amabili suo, ambulatorem valde decibilem
kinsman namely and beloved her a-pacer very becoming
et alacrem, ut animum suum lesum et ipsa leniret —
and lively that the-mind his hurt also she-herself might-soothe
audivit enim, eum delicatis equis delectari nimium—, sed et
she-had-heard for him in-delicate horses to-be-delighted too-much but also
ne pro se pigeret quidem orare. Ricchunbach invento equus
lest for herself it-should-irk indeed to-pray at-Rickenbach found the-horse
præsentatur lætanter se continens, quem ille continuo amore
is-presented gladly itself containing which he at-once out-of-love
tantæ datricis sellari sibi jubens abiturus ascendit.
of-so-great a-giver to-be-saddled for-himself bidding about-to-go-away mounted
At equus exaltanter eum gestans in postem valvarum curtis
but the-horse exultingly him carrying against the-post of-the-doors of-the-court
hominem teneritudinis, ingeniti tamen ardoris et alacritatis,
the-man of-tenderness inborn however of-ardor and liveliness
impegit, et femur ei disjungens vertibulo coxæ evulsit.
dashed and the-thigh his disjoining from-the-socket of-the-hip wrenched
Qua plaga cum per Notkerum pro posse sanaretur,
with-which wound when through Notker as-far-as possible he-was-healed
postea tamen absque geminis sustentaculis ingredi non potuit.
afterward however without twin supports to-walk not he-could
Et cum talia diu sit passus, Richero, jam dicto curtis suæ
and since such-things long has suffered to-Richer already mentioned of-court his
camerario, homini pro virtutibus vix comparando, Ekkehardi
the-chamberlain to-a-man for virtues scarcely to-be-compared of-Ekkehard

decani jam senescentis ut ageret consiliis et abbatiam
the-dean now growing-old that he-should-act by-the-counsels and the-abbey
pro se regeret, communi fratrum injunxit consensu,
for himself should-rule by-common of-the-brothers he-enjoined consent
raroque cœnobium aliud jocundius, quam Galli, tunc floruit.
and-rarely monastery another more-pleasant than of-Gall then flourished
Assumptus est interea in aulam Ottonum patris et filii,
taken-up was meanwhile into the-court of-the-Ottos father and son
Hadewiga agente, Ekkehardus, ut capellæ semper immanens
with-Hadwig acting Ekkehard that to-the-chapel always remaining
doctrinæ adolescentis regis nec non et summis dexter
of-the-teaching of-the-young king and also and in-the-highest skilled
esset consiliis, ibique in brevi tantus apparuit, ut in
he-might-be counsels and-there in brief so-great he-appeared that in
ore omnium esset, summum eum aliquem exspectare
the-mouth of-all it-was the-highest him some to-await
pontificatum. Nam et Adalheida regina illum, nunc sancta,
bishopric for also Adelaide the-queen him now holy
per se diligebat, cumque ei ita aliquandiu agenti
by herself loved and-when to-him so for-some-time acting
abbatia Elewangensis, quasi ad exspectandum, ut ajebant,
the-abbey of-Ellwangen as-if for awaiting as they-said
offerretur a regibus et ipse eam suscipere ingratus
was-offered by the-kings and he-himself it to-receive ungrateful
non esset, regina cum duce, quoniam adhuc aulæ
not would-be the-queen with the-duchess since still to-the-court
præ omnibus esset necessarius, fortunam distulerant, usque
before all he-was necessary the-fortune had-deferred until
illum episcopio magno donarent. At Ruodman, cum
him with-a-bishopric great they-should-present but Ruodmann when
et ipse quidem multa dando aulicis esset intimus et
also he-himself indeed much by-giving to-the-courtiers was intimate and

Ekkehardus aliquando, fratres suos ut inviseret, palatio
Ekkehard sometime brothers his that he-might-visit from-the-palace
ad tempus cessisset, susurrabat contra eum, sed et
for a-time had-withdrawn whispered against him but also
adversus cæteros, ut solebat, sancti Galli monachos, quasi
against the-other as he-was-wont of-Saint Gall monks as-if
ipse et quidam alii ex ipsis multa possidentes
he-himself and certain others of them many-things possessing
delicatius viverent, cæteri autem famelici inediam paterentur,
more-delicately lived the-rest moreover hungry starvation suffered
abbas vero in infirmitate detentus minus eis consulere
the-abbot but in sickness detained less for-them to-provide
posset; se vero Coloniæ monachum regularissimum
could he-himself but at-Cologne a-monk most-regular
nosse, Sandratum nomine, cui si copia daretur,
to-know Sandrat by-name to-whom if opportunity were-given
tam potentes viros humiliando Benedicti viam ingredi
so powerful men by-humbling of-Benedict the-way to-enter
cogeret.
he-would-compel
Perveniunt ad aures imperii verba, et ecce Ekkehardus
reach to the-ears of-the-empire the-words and lo Ekkehard
reversus supervenit. Secreto Ottones illi infamiam narrant
returned came-up secretly the-Ottos to-him the-ill-report tell
ab ipsoque, quidnam videatur, querunt. At ille amborum
from and-him what might-seem ask but he of-both
provolutus pedibus, privilegii nostri modo memores sint,
falling-forward at-the-feet of-privilege our only mindful they-might-be
rogat; de cætero, quoscumque velint, ad perspiciendum,
asks for the-rest whomever they-might-wish for inspecting
quæ religio in loco sit, dirigant, et si quid ibi
what religion in the-place there-be they-should-direct and if anything there

devium reperiatur, consilio perspicientium tunc quidem
astray should-be-found by-the-counsel of-the-inspectors then indeed
emendent. Otto vero pater: Neque enim, ait, ut
they-might-amend Otto but the-father nor for he-says that
nepotem meum privilegii vestri abbatem deponam, facile,
nephew my of-privilege your the-abbot I-should-depose easily
etsi etiam clinicus fiat, animo erit. Infamiam tamen,
even-if also bedridden he-become in-mind it-will-be the-ill-report however
quam audio, aboleri vobis ipsis petendum erat. Rogat
which I-hear to-be-abolished by-you yourselves to-be-sought it-was asks
ille tandem, uti, quoscumque præter Ruotmannum solum
he at-last that whomever except Ruodmann alone
vellent, in locum dirigerent, quoniam hæc ipsa,
they-might-wish into the-place they-should-direct since this very
inquiens, infamia teknis ipsius est in aula vestra. Audita
he-saying ill-report by-the-tricks of-him is in court your heard
quoque et ipsius odii causa, nihilominus tamen consilio
also also of-his hatred the-cause nevertheless however with-counsel
inito, inter episcopos et abbates ad hoc electos sedecim
entered among bishops and abbots for this chosen sixteen
in locum Galli dirigunt, et Otto filius in consessum
into the-place of-Gall they-direct and Otto the-son into the-session
eorum a patre missus: Ite, inquit, vos nominati episcopi
their by (his)-father sent go he-says you named bishops
cum abbatibus, cenobii sancti Galli monachos, qui
with the-abbots of-the-monastery of-Saint Gall the-monks who
infamantur, correcturi, et quia repentina rerum mutatio
are-ill-reported about-to-correct and because sudden of-things change
sepe novissimum errorem priori facit pejorem, ideo
often the-last error than-the-former makes worse therefore
tot magni consilii angelos, pater meus dicit, dirigemus,
so-many of-great counsel angels father my says we-shall-direct

ut prudentia omnium vestrum collata, si qua
that with-the-prudence of-all of-you brought-together if any-things
nimis ibi contra Deum senserit esse, manere non
too there against God it-shall-have-perceived to-be to-remain not
sinat; si qua autem portabilia viderit, ipsis quidem
it-may-allow if any moreover bearable it-shall-have-seen for-them indeed
cum ratione vos monentibus stare patiamini. Scimus
with reason you warning to-stand you-should-allow we-know
enim, quocumque modo vivant, virtutum tamen sancto
for in-whatever way they-may-live of-virtues however to-Saint
Gallo non defore viros. Si autem scientia, quæ inflat,
Gall not to-be-lacking men if moreover knowledge which puffs-up
elatos ibi senseritis et nuntii vestri, ut fit, in
the-proud there you-shall-have-perceived and of-message your as happens in
aliquo contradictores, nobis tales in aulam adducite, ut
something gainsayers to-us such into the-court bring that
ex eis, si idonei sint, scolis aliquibus, quæ in regno
from them if fit they-be over-schools some which in the-kingdom
vacillant, præponamus, sin autem, in regularia claustra
totter we-may-set if-not moreover in regular cloisters
includamus.
we-may-enclose

Capitula 100–102

THE INSPECTORS ARRIVE

Bishop Arnulf of Toul and Bishop Hiltebald of Chur defend Saint Gall's charity and its use of meat by the abbots' leave, and Otto tells the inspectors to treat the sick abbot as friends. Burchard writes to the kings that so many guests will eat a year's stores, and Ruodmann is charged with feeding the envoys on their road; when he urges the kings to make Bishop Conrad a partner in it, he is answered that he alone crumbled the bread and he alone must eat it. On the Tuesday of the third week after Easter the envoys arrive; Henry of Trier praises the house, Gebo of Lorsch asks to hear the abbot first, and Gerho of Weissenburg advises the monks; Ekkehard leads them through the half-roofed workshops and the empty cellars.

Huic edicto Ekkehardus consulto cum non interesset, sed
at-this decree Ekkehard by-design when not he-was-present but
nec Ruodmannus quidem, Arnolfus Tullo episcopus: Rem
nor Ruodmann indeed Arnulf of-Toul the-bishop a-thing
arduam, domine mi rex, inquit, aggredi habebimus, et, ut
arduous lord my king he-says to-undertake we-shall-have and as
ego suspicor, infamia talis invidiæ fonte orta est. Ego
I suspect ill-report such of-envy from-the-fount arisen has I
enim nuperrime votivus quidem locum illum adiveram,
for most-lately as-a-votary indeed place that had-approached
et similem caritatem in regno patris tui nescio, si
and like charity in the-kingdom of-father your I-know-not if
invenerim; sed et cætera in opere Dei, quæ videram,
I-have-found but also the-rest in the-work of-God which I-had-seen
incomparanda dicebam. Quapropter quantum in me est, sine
incomparable I-called wherefore as-much-as in me is without
magnæ causæ occasione tanti meriti et nominis viros non
of-great cause occasion of-so-great merit and of-name men not
ajo impetendos. Neque enim unius tramitis et regulæ viæ
I-say to-be-attacked nor for by-one path and of-rule road

cælum et regnum Dei scanditur, quod, quia intra nos est,
heaven and the-kingdom of-God is-climbed which because within us it-is
aliis sic, aliis vero sic ascendere conceditur. Novit enim
to-some so to-others but so to-ascend is-granted knows for
Deus in omni ordine hominum, qui sunt ejus, et quot
God in every order of-men who are his and as-many-as
mansiones in regno patris quidem sunt, tot viæ in
mansions in the-kingdom of-the-father indeed are so-many roads into
eam, mi rex, ni fallor, ducunt. At Hiltebaldus Curiensis
it my king unless I-am-deceived lead but Hiltebald of-Chur
episcopus: Omnia quæ ibi noscuntur, pie rex, laude digna
the-bishop all-things which there are-known pious king of-praise worthy
sunt, ait, præter quod habent ibi quedam sua et
are he-says except that they-have there certain-things their-own and
carnium aliqui illorum utuntur eduliis. Et hæc ipsa quidem
of-meats some of-them use foods and these very indeed
abbatum suorum, ne deficerent, semper egerunt permissis.
of-abbots their lest they-should-fail always they-did by-the-permissions
Quod autem proprietates habent, tale est, ait: idonei, qui
what moreover properties they-have such it-is he-says the-fit who
inter eos semper fuerunt, semet ipsos, sed et reliquos
among them always were themselves very but also the-rest
minus lingua vel manu validos, sub disciplinæ severitate
less in-tongue or in-hand strong under of-discipline the-severity
a patribus stringunt inolita; in refectorio autem minus, ut
by the-fathers bind ingrained in the-refectory moreover less as
loci penuria est, curatos in locis ab abbate infra claustri
of-the-place the-want is cared-for in places by the-abbot within of-the-cloister
septa destinatis, quibuscumque possunt, indigos cibariis
the-enclosures appointed with-whatever they-can the-needy foods
pascunt. Si autem id habentibus habere inhibebitur et
feed if moreover it to-those-having to-have it-shall-be-forbidden and

interdum labore manuum, qui inibi semper preciosissimus
sometimes by-the-labor of-hands which there always most-precious
erat et est, recipere vetabitur vel etiam a cognatis
was and is to-receive it-shall-be-forbidden or also from kinsmen
et amicis emendicata contrahere, locus ille semper nutritor
and friends begged-things to-collect place that always nourisher
virtutis virorum in nihilum redigetur. Et si de memet ipso
of-virtue of-men to nothing will-be-reduced and if about me myself
pace imperii quicquam, inquit, adicere audebo, hoc
with-the-peace of-the-empire anything he-says to-add I-shall-dare this
veraciter inferre potero: quoniam si justus ipse sibimet est
truly to-bring-in I-shall-be-able since if just he to-himself is
lex, magis regulares in vestro regno monachos non habetis.
a-law more regular in your kingdom monks not you-have
Ego enim inter illos nutritus et propter virtutes adhuc
I for among them nourished and on-account-of virtues still
eos interdum visitans scio, quod assero. — Enimvero si de
them sometimes visiting know what I-assert indeed if from
suo, ut asseritis, rex ait, vivunt, id ipsum secundum
their-own as you-assert the-king says they-live that very according-to
regulam Benedicti ut faciant, quantum potissime poteritis,
the-rule of-Benedict that they-may-do as-much-as most-strongly you-will-be-able
ut agatis, vobis omnibus injungimus. Et quoniam et nos
that you-may-act on-you all we-enjoin and since also we
quidem aliquos de ipsis venerabiles agnoscimus, non hostiliter
indeed some of them venerable recognize not hostilely
eos aggredi libet; sed tot consultores amicissimos quidem
them to-attack it-pleases but so-many counselors most-friendly indeed
dirigimus, ut infirmo fratri meo abbati, quoniam pater meus
we-direct that to-sick brother my the-abbot since father my

filium eum vocat, adminiculo sitis, ut bona multa,
son him calls a-support you-may-be that the-good many-things
quæ faciunt, ad Benedicti regulam deinceps, inquit, vergant.
which they-do to of-Benedict the-rule henceforth he-says may-turn
Præmittitur tandem Ekkehardus nimis pro patria anxius,
is-sent-ahead at-last Ekkehard very for (his)-homeland anxious
qui abbati nostro adventus tot hospitum diem et
who to-abbot our of-the-arrival of-so-many guests the-day and
causam denuntiet, multum a patre et filio, ut, quæ
the-cause should-announce much by the-father and the-son that what
regulæ sint, sentiant, adjuratus. Cui cum Ruodmannum,
of-the-rule are they-should-feel adjured to-whom when Ruodmann
ut petiverat, legationis exsortem relictum dicerent, gaudentior
as he-had-sought of-the-embassy without-share left they-said more-gladly
ibat, permitti tamen sibimet ab ambobus postulans, ut, si
he-went to-be-permitted however to-himself by both asking that if
quid pro loci qualitate consulere nosset, liceret. Abbas
anything for of-the-place the-quality to-advise he-knew it-be-allowed the-abbot
autem et saniores consilii patres audito nuntio primo
moreover and the-saner of-counsel fathers with-heard the-message first
stupent; postmodum vero orationum instantia roborati erant
are-stunned afterward but of-prayers by-the-urgency strengthened were
confidentissimi. Pro impensis tandem receptionis illorum
most-confident for the-expenses at-last of-the-reception of-them
cum fluctuasset; literas abbas regibus dirigit in hæc
when he-had-wavered a-letter the-abbot to-the-kings directs in these
verba: Dominis meis terrarum potentissimis Purchardus suus
words to-lords my of-the-lands most-powerful Burchard their
cælorum sine fine potenciam. Scio, domini mei, sepe me
of-the-heavens without end power I-know lords my often me
sanguinis vestri abjectum et degenerem delicatius, quam
of-blood your outcast and degenerate more-delicately than

optare habuerim, ab utroque vestrum tractatum. Nunc autem
to-wish I-might-have by each of-you treated now moreover
cum in manu Domini summi plagatus quidem affligar,
since in the-hand of-the-Lord highest stricken indeed I-am-afflicted
insuper a vobis tam repentinis motibus concuti nunquam
besides by you so by-sudden motions to-be-shaken never
speraverim. Et post pauca de Ruodmanni prius inimica
I-would-have-hoped and after a-few-things about of-Ruodmann the-earlier hostile
invasione et de hac ipsa teknis ejus in se tot
invasion and about this very by-the-tricks his on himself of-so-many
hospitum immissione: Acuat, ait, oro, spiritus sanctus
guests the-sending-in may-sharpen he-says I-pray the-spirit holy
ferulam meam sibi in gladium et, memet Ruodmanni
staff my for-itself into a-sword and with-me of-Ruodmann
jacula retundere non valente, ipse retundat. Videat tandem
the-darts to-blunt not being-able itself may-blunt may-see at-last
super omnia majestas vestra, si in immissione illa mihi
above all majesty your if in sending-in that me
parcere noluerit, quibus tantus populus apud nos vivat
to-spare he-would-not with-what so-great a-people with us may-live
obsoniis. Enimvero si victualia ipsa, quæ in regularibus meis
provisions indeed if the-victuals themselves which in regulars my
vix in annum reposueram, fuerint absumpta, non aliam
scarcely for a-year I-had-stored shall-have-been consumed not other
quam penuriam postea habebunt regulam, tandemque necesse
than want afterward they-will-have rule and-at-last necessary
erit, ut coacti male vivant. Inito tandem consilio,
it-will-be that compelled badly they-live with-entered at-last counsel
injungitur Ruodmanno, velud annuorum fructuum repositori
is-enjoined on-Ruodmann as-if of-annual fruits a-storer
quidem questuoso, legatos regios in locis nominatis euntes
indeed profitable the-envoys royal in places named going

procurare et redeuntes; in cœnobio autem nostro octo sibi
to-provide-for and returning in monastery but our eight to-him
nominatos Purchardus susciperet, octo Ruodmannus. Cum
named Burchard should-receive eight Ruodmann when
autem Chuonradum, episcopum nostrum, in præsentia ipsius
moreover Conrad bishop our in the-presence of-him
sui in talibus participem fore; ipse regibus suaderet,
his in such-things a-partaker to-be he-himself to-the-kings should-urge
raucosa voce, ut erat, ille reclamabat: — Nequaquam,
with-hoarse voice as he-was he cried-back by-no-means
inquiens, tu solus intrivisti; tibi soli edendum est.
saying you alone have-crumbled for-you alone it-is to-be-eaten
Omnibus autem in risum motis: Neque enim, ait, cum
with-all moreover into laughter moved nor for he-says with
accusatore fratrum in cælis nec in terris participari libet.
the-accuser of-the-brothers in the-heavens nor on earth to-share it-pleases
Indicta tandem die, quæ erat feria tercia dominicæ
with-proclaimed at-last the-day which was the-weekday third of-Sunday
terciæ post pascha, Desiderio tunc, propter quod Gallus
third after Easter to-Desiderius then on-account-of that Gall
ejus reliquias loco ipse intulerit, apud nos celeberrima,
his relics to-the-place himself brought among us most-thronged
adveniunt omnes. Festive receptis, Cives apostolorum
arrive all festively received Cives apostolorum
responsorium canitur; abbas in auditorio debilis residens
the-responsory is-sung the-abbot in the-auditorium weak sitting
introductis quidem eis assurgit. Legitur consedentibus
with-brought-in indeed them rises is-read to-those-sitting-together
lectio de caritate et de pedissequa ejus discretione; qua
a-reading on charity and on handmaid its discretion which
finita, assurgunt omnes in abbatis et fratrum oscula.
finished rise all into of-the-abbot and of-the-brothers kisses

Deinde abbas: Benedicti vos Domino, et fratres: Qui fecit
then the-abbot blessed you to-the-Lord and the-brothers who made
cælum et terram. At Henricus Treverensis, cui summa
heaven and earth but Henry of-Trier to-whom the-sum
rerum commissa erat, circumspecto claustro: Enimvero, ait,
of-things entrusted was with-looked-around the-cloister indeed he-says
talis nidus bonas aves decet. Et Kebo, Lorisham abbas,
such a-nest good birds befits and Gebo of-Lorsch abbot
vir nominis reverendi præ multis et eo die pro nobis
a-man of-name reverend before many and on-that day for us
plus ceteris sentiens, sed et crebro nos postea donis et
more than-the-rest feeling but also often us afterward with-gifts and
consiliis juvans: Si placet, ait, ipsarum avium hunc nidum,
counsels helping if it-pleases he-says of-the-very birds this nest
qualis per omnia sit, primitus ab abbate audiamus, ut de
what-sort through all-things it-be first from the-abbot let-us-hear that about
ceteris, quid agamus, integrius scire valeamus. Et Kerho
the-rest what we-may-do more-wholly to-know we-may-be-able and Gerho
Wizzinburgensis abbas, magni nominis et ipse, qui nos post
of-Weissenburg abbot of-great name also himself who us after
hanc tempestatem ad aquæductum, quem ipse primus
this storm for the-aqueduct which he-himself first
nobis excogitavit, fistulas terebrare docuit, et semper amavit,
for-us devised the-pipes to-bore taught and always loved
episcopum nostrum interea et abbatem cum fratribus, quorum
bishop our meanwhile and the-abbot with the-brothers of-whom
reverentia illum, ut post asseruit, vehementer movebat,
the-reverence him as afterward he-asserted vehemently moved
in capituli domum comitatus, quæ congrua nosset,
into of-the-chapter the-house accompanied what-things fitting he-knew
præmonuit. At illi pervagatis Ekkehardo duce officinis
forewarned but they with-wandered-through with-Ekkehard as-leader the-workshops

adhuc post arsuram vix quidem quibusdam vel tectis,
still after the-burning scarcely indeed with-certain-ones even roofed
penu fratrum pene vino vacuum mirantur. Aperiri
the-pantry of-the-brothers almost of-wine empty they-wonder-at to-be-opened
autem sibi etiam privata repositoria, cum Ekkehardus ductor
moreover to-them also the-private storerooms when Ekkehard the-guide
eos jurejurando nihil celaturum jubere moneret, cuncta
them by-oath nothing about-to-conceal to-bid warned all-things
perspiciendo sollicite peragrant. Quærentibus autem etiam
in-inspecting carefully they-traverse to-those-asking moreover also
de abbatis proprio penu: Hæc, ait, quæ monstravi,
about of-the-abbot own pantry these-things he-says which I-have-shown
fratrum privata ejus semper sunt ad nutum parata. Neque
of-the-brothers private his always are at nod ready nor
enim ipse, quia sic homo est, alio cellario assolet. Nam
for he-himself since so a-man he-is other cellar is-wont-to-use for
debitum in fratrum quotannis congerit cellarium.
the-due into of-the-brothers yearly he-gathers the-cellar

Capitula 103–106

THE SESSION

Poppo of Würzburg and Balzo of Speyer judge the monks' common life sound despite their want. Archbishop Henry opens the session, after Thietrich of Metz has been rebuked by his old master Gerald for bringing in the rule. The dean Ekkehard and Notker the physician set out the house's day from prime to prime; the abbots find it Benedict's except that the monks labor by the rule and are not fed by it, and judge what they seek and store by the abbot's leave no breach of it, and Milo of Ellwangen would rather his monk ate horse at his abbot's bidding than refused the rule. The brothers agree to bring their private goods into common, give up meat but where the rule allows it, and change their customs as the abbots urge.

Et Poppo, Wirziburgensis episcopus, conversus ad ceteros:
and Poppo of-Würzburg the-bishop turned to the-others
Enimvero, ait, si ita se res inter monachos et abbatem
indeed he-says if so itself the-matter between the-monks and the-abbot
habet, non nos hodie meliorem regulam neque vitam plus
has not we today a-better rule nor a-life more
communem, etiam si in loco pleno sit copia cornu, statuere
common even if in the-place with-full be plenty the-horn to-establish
poterimus. Abbas, ut audivimus, congerit fratribus; fratres
shall-be-able the-abbot as we-have-heard gathers for-the-brothers the-brothers
ad hoc idonei congerunt abbati, et nihil sine ejus
for this fit gather for-the-abbot and nothing without his
permisso sibi. Omnis autem ab utrisque congestio neutris
permission for-themselves all moreover by both gathering for-neither
sufficere posse videre est. Et Palzo, Spirensis episcopus, in
to-suffice to-be-able to-see it-is and Balzo of-Speyer the-bishop in
loco nutritus, quo nemo fama ferente tunc erudicior:
the-place nourished than-whom no-one with-fame reporting then more-learned
Si sciretis, inquit, mores et vim disciplinæ illorum
if you-knew he-says the-manners and the-force of-discipline their

districtam, experto credite, ultra omnes, qui in regno
strict to-the-experienced believe beyond all who in the-kingdom
sunt regulares sub copia, eos laudaretis sub inopia. Dein
are regulars under plenty them you-would-praise under want then
Henricus archiepiscopus, cui summa rei hujus commissa
Henry the-archbishop to-whom the-sum of-matter this entrusted
est, ut diximus, assumptis consortibus, prælium se initurum
was as we-said taken-along the-colleagues battle himself about-to-enter
dicens, consessum collegii nostri signifer aggressus est.
saying the-session of-college our as-standard-bearer approached has
Thietericus vero Metensis episcopus adolescens, Kerhaldi nuper
Thietrich but of-Metz the-bishop a-youth of-Gerald lately
in loco discipulus, regulæ librum manu gerens apertum, cum
in the-place the-disciple of-the-rule the-book in-hand carrying open when
magistrum suo loco stantem transiens præteriret, his ille
the-master his in-place standing passing he-went-by with-these he
velut discipulum silentio hominem invehitur: Tune librum, ait,
as-if a-disciple in-silence the-man inveighs do-you the-book he-says
contra me infers, quem ego clausum, quam tu apertum, melius
against me bring-in which I shut than you open better
novi? Claude illum! At juvenis voce magistri coloratus
I-know close it but the-youth at-the-voice of-the-master colored
inclinans librum ocius clausit et residens juxta se reposuit. Et
bowing the-book quickly shut and sitting beside himself laid-down and
hæc quidem, ut vim disciplinæ nostræ panderem, dixi.
these-things indeed that the-force of-discipline our I-might-disclose I-have-said
Cunctis tandem residentibus, primas quem dixi, ita
with-all at-last sitting-down the-primate whom I-mentioned thus
inchoavit: Benedictus Domino iste sancti Galli cætus, ait,
began blessed to-the-Lord this of-Saint Gall assembly he-says
pater cum filiis; et abbati: Nostis, ait, tu fratresque tui
the-father with the-sons and the-abbot you-know he-says you and-brothers your

carissimi nostri, quare rerum domini pro vobis solliciti tot
dearest our why of-things the-lords for you anxious so-many
dilectos suos ad vos direxerunt. Nisi enim vos diligerent,
beloved their to you have-directed unless for you they-loved
tot electos ad consulendum vobis nunquam dirigerent. Et
so-many chosen for advising you never they-would-direct and
ille: Scimus enim, quod ad consulendum nobis peccatoribus
he we-know for that for advising us sinners
directi estis, ideoque sancto spiritui summo hodie consultori
directed you-are and-therefore to-the-holy spirit highest today counselor
utrimque nostro acceptissimi sitis. Sed tamen unum me
of-both our most-acceptable may-you-be but however one-thing me
maximum movet inter alia miracula, quod unus ex vobis non
most moves among other wonders that one of you not
est missus vel episcopus vel abbas, cui non minus, quam
is sent either bishop or abbot to-whom not less than
vobis omnibus, ad omnia, quæ ratio possibilia posceret,
to-you all in all-things which reason possible might-demand
obediremus. Et Erpho Wormatiensis: Tot sancti spiritus, ut
we-would-obey and Erpho of-Worms so-many of-the-holy spirit as
hic, abba sancte, videmus, athletis concertare, uni nimium
here abbot holy we-see with-athletes to-contend for-one too-much
fuerit; sed jam aliquam viam id efficiendi, pro quo missi
it-would-have-been but now some way this of-accomplishing for which sent
sumus, mihi placet, aggrediamur. Monuit tandem Henricus,
we-are to-me it-pleases let-us-undertake warned at-last Henry
ceteris id suadentibus, abbatem, ut aliquem fratrum viam
with-the-others it urging the-abbot that some of-the-brothers the-way
vitæ nostræ, qua tunc degeremus, juberet edicere. Jubet ille
of-life our by-which then we-lived he-should-bid to-set-forth bids he
Ekkehardum decanum nec non Notkerum medicum plerisque
Ekkehard the-dean and also Notker the-physician to-very-many

illis notissimos surgere et a prima usque ad primam viam
of-them most-known to-rise and from prime all-the-way to prime the-way
vitæ nostræ edicere. Quam cum decanus fratre juvante
of-life our to-set-forth which when the-dean with-(his)-brother helping
verissime absolveret, Kebo et abbates episcopis: Enimvero,
most-truly completed Gebo and the-abbots to-the-bishops indeed
ajunt, hæc omnia quæ audivimus, Benedicti sunt regulæ
they-say these all-things which we-have-heard of-Benedict are of-the-rule
præter hoc solum, quod secundum illam laborant, secundum
except this alone that according-to it they-labor according-to
illam autem non vegetantur. Sed et hoc ipsum eis causa
it moreover not they-are-nourished but also this very to-them a-cause
est, ut undecunque quærant, quo vitam sustentent. Quæ
is that from-wherever they-may-seek by-which life they-may-sustain which
quia abbatis permisso quæsita, ubi jusserit, reponunt
because of-the-abbot by-the-permission sought where he-shall-have-bidden they-store
et ad ejus nutum et arbitrium his, quæcumque sunt,
and at his nod and choice these whatever-things are
utuntur, contra regulam non esse veraciter affirmare valebimus.
they-use against the-rule not to-be truly to-affirm we-shall-be-able
Et Milo Elewangensis: Si de carnium esu, inquit,
and Milo of-Ellwangen if about of-meats the-eating he-says
hesitatis, ego, quod sentio, audentissime dico. Quoniam,
you-hesitate I what I-feel most-boldly say since
quamvis equus in cibo non sit licitus, ambulatorem meum
although a-horse in food not be lawful pacer my
prius vellem monachus meus ederet obediendo, quam cetera
rather I-would-wish monk my should-eat by-obeying than other
quædam, quæ regulæ sunt, declinaret. Ideoque Benedicti
certain-things which of-the-rule are he-should-decline and-therefore of-Benedict
ego vice judicio decerno: quæ abbatis arbitrium jubeat,
I in-place by-judgment decree what-things of-the-abbot the-choice may-bid

monachus manducet et bibat; abbas videat, quo arbitrio
the-monk may-eat and drink the-abbot let-see by-what choice
suo quid jubeat. Cum autem ad verba ejus quidam riderent,
his what he-may-bid when moreover at the-words his some laughed
Henricus intulit: Mirum, ait, tam latum lacum hic patere
Henry brought-in wonderful he-says so broad a-lake here to-lie-open
et hic piscium copiam non esse. — Neque totus noster
and here of-fish plenty not to-be nor wholly ours
est, Ekkehardus ait, neque piscium adeo largus, ut interdum
is Ekkehard says nor of-fish so lavish that sometimes
domino nostro abbati, quod parce dat, vel soli sufficiat.
for-lord our the-abbot what sparingly it-gives even for-him-alone it-suffices
Si autem emere aliquando invenimus, precio, quod pro edulio
if moreover to-buy sometime we-find with-the-price which for food
uni nostrum apponendo distrahitur, probum aliquem totam
for-one of-us to-be-set-before is-spent an-upright someone the-whole
epdomadam cibare poteramus. — Enimvero, Thietricus ait,
week to-feed we-could indeed Thietrich says
dum ego aliquando hic studui, plures dies aliquando abierunt,
while I sometime here studied many days sometimes passed
quod piscem de pelago illo non vidisse me memini. Sed
that a-fish from lake that not to-have-seen myself I-remember but
et major pars fratrum tunc carnibus non utebatur, quorum
also the-greater part of-the-brothers then meats not used whose
quidem parsimonia nimia videbatur. Erant autem alii, qui
indeed thrift too-much seemed there-were moreover others who
solis volatilibus, quod unius cum piscibus creaturæ sint,
only fowls since of-one with fish creation they-be
licite uterentur. Pauci autem in locis intra domesticos parietes
lawfully used few moreover in places within domestic walls
ab abbate permissis quadrupedum quoque usi sunt carnibus.
by the-abbot permitted of-quadrupeds also used have the-meats

Meliorem autem ego, ut oppinor, nunquam monachum
a-better moreover I as I-think never monk
videbo, quam eorum aliquis erat, qui interdum carnes edebat.
shall-see than of-them someone was who sometimes meats ate
Inclinantur tandem abbates ad episcopos, ut secretis pro
are-bowed at-last the-abbots to the-bishops that secret for
legatione sua uterentur consiliis. Quibus morose collatis,
embassy their they-might-use counsels which slowly brought-together
Henricus surgens abbati nostro ait et fratribus: Tantæ
Henry rising to-abbot our says and to-the-brothers of-so-great
prudenciæ, domini nostri, vos novimus, ut legationis nostræ
prudence lords our you we-know that of-embassy our
jam effectum in manu arbitrii vestri ponere velimus.
already the-effect into the-hand of-the-choice your to-place we-wish
Nos enim, ut condiximus, ad horam vobis locum dabimus.
we for as we-agreed for an-hour to-you place shall-give
Consulite in medium, petimus, ut, qualicumque arte adhuc
consult in the-middle we-ask that by-whatever art still
quidem poteritis, bona, quæ facitis, regulæ sancti
indeed you-will-be-able the-good-things which you-do to-the-rule of-Saint
Benedicti conformetis. Et quia ejus rei legati venimus,
Benedict you-may-conform and because of-that thing envoys we-have-come
ut regularis vitæ vobis monitores simus, quidnam hic
that of-regular life to-you admonishers we-may-be what here
boni statuerimus, dominis referre habeamus, et quamvis
of-good we-shall-have-established to-the-lords to-report we-may-have and although
omnes, qui venimus, bonum vobis testimonium coram eis
all who have-come good to-you testimony before them
dare vere habeamus, etiam si meliora quidem, quæ a
to-give truly we-may-have even if better indeed which from
patribus accepistis, vobis propter consuetudinem sint visa, si
the-fathers you-received to-you on-account-of custom be seemed if

ad regulæ viliora, ut ita dicam, mutaveritis, infamiam
to of-the-rule cheaper-things that so I-may-say you-shall-have-changed the-ill-report
tamen evadetis. Tandem illis pari condicto domo
however you-will-escape at-last with-them by-equal agreement from-the-house
egressis, conferunt consilia abbas fratresque. Placuit omnibus,
gone-out bring-together counsels the-abbot and-brothers it-pleased all
quicquid quisque privati haberet, in communes officinas
whatever each private might-have into the-common workshops
in fide deferret, carnibus omnes, præter quibus regula
in faith he-should-bring from-meats all except those-to-whom the-rule
indulget, abstinendo mensas, etiamsi paupertatis sint, simul
grants by-abstaining the-tables even-if of-poverty they-be together
habeant. Reliqua vero ordinis, quem audierant, mutare,
they-should-have the-remaining but of-the-order which they-had-heard to-change
in quibus Kebo et ceteri abbates suadeant, paratissimi,
in which Gebo and the-other abbots might-urge most-ready
usque dum reposita hæc, si defecerint, literis
all-the-way until stored these-things if they-should-have-failed by-letters
abbas regibus intimaverit. Vocantur in consistorium
the-abbot to-the-kings should-have-made-known are-called into the-consistory
abbates auditisque unanimitatibus Deo gratias agunt. In
the-abbots and-with-heard the-unanimities to-God thanks give in
consuetudine vero, qua degebamus, pauca mutantes,
the-custom but in-which we-lived a-few-things changing
tempus se, quoniam dies mali essent, redimere ajebant.
the-time themselves since the-days evil were to-redeem they-said

Capitula 107–110

THE BROTHERS CONSENT

Abbot Burchard asks the envoys to help with the kings, and Ekkehard the palatine answers for the brothers that they will lay their goods at their abbot's feet and change their ways as advised. The envoys pledge forty-five pounds; the brothers sing Ekkehard's sequence Summis conatibus, *which the envoys praise as Notker's until a brother names its author, and Gebo fears that when the goods are gone they will have neither rule. The abbots are enrolled as brothers and dine with the community; Milo drops a spoon to test the servers, and Gebo tricks him, but no brother laughs.*

Properant illi foras alacri animo ad exspectantes. Enimvero,
hasten they outside with-eager mind to those-waiting indeed
Kebo ait a longe viris, spiritus sanctus tardare nescit.
Gebo says from afar to-the-men the-spirit holy to-delay knows-not
Viros virtutum in sancto hoc cœnobio esse prius audivimus;
men of-virtues in holy this monastery to-be before we-heard
nunc re ipsa experiri habemus. Venite jam ipsi, et
now in-the-thing itself to-experience we-have come now yourselves and
qui sint, pariter videte! Iterum considentibus abbas ait: Quod
who they-be equally see again sitting-together the-abbot says what
de meis ego fratribus, domini mei, promittere veraciter audeo,
about my I brothers lords my to-promise truly dare
unum hoc vobis dico. Quia quod regulæ summam scio,
one-thing this to-you I-say that what of-the-rule the-sum I-know
dicto paraciores nescio, ideoque per me peccari non
than-a-word readier I-know-not and-therefore through me to-be-sinned not
ignoro, si ea, quæ perficere nequeunt, eis injungo.
I-am-ignorant if those-things which to-accomplish they-cannot on-them I-enjoin
Quapropter a dominis regibus ni vestro interventu nobis
wherefore by the-lords kings unless with-your intervention to-us
subveniatur, sumptus ad turrim ewangelicam ædificandam
it-be-helped the-means for the-tower gospel to-be-built

suppetere non poterunt. Agite ergo! Quicquid meo jussu
to-suffice not will-be-able come therefore whatever by-my command
et vestro monitu facturi sint, in brevi audite! Et minori
and by-your warning about-to-do they-be in brief hear and to-the-younger
Ekkehardo illi palatino: Surge, fili, ait, et sicut dominis
Ekkehard that palatine rise son he-says and as to-lords
nostris regibus in præsentia legatorum tantorum et tu quoque
our kings in the-presence of-envoys so-great also you also
dicturus sis, consensum nostrum hic in facie eorum eloquere!
about-to-say be consent our here in the-face of-them speak-out
Dictoque ut erat semper paratissimus, surrexit Ekkehardus
and-with-it-said as he-was always most-ready rose Ekkehard
et ita exorsus est: In medium, patres et electi Dei, ut
and thus began has into the-middle fathers and chosen of-God as
monuistis, consulimus, et ecce qua die vel hora dominus
you-have-warned we-consult and lo on-what day or hour lord
noster et pater dixerit, memores nos sancti patris Benedicti
our and father shall-have-said mindful we of-the-holy father Benedict
privata nostra, quæ tamen ejus abbativo permisso habuimus,
private our-things which however by-his abbatial permission we-have-had
in medium et ad pedes ejus ponemus. Et cetera, quæ sancti
into the-middle and at the-feet his we-shall-place and the-rest which the-holy
abbates a nobis consulti in via et modo conversationis
abbots by us consulted in the-way and manner of-conduct
nostræ mutanda censebant, quia in nostro arbitrio rem
our to-be-changed judged because in our choice the-matter
posuistis, eos in participium consilii assumentes mutavimus.
you-have-placed them into partnership of-counsel taking we-have-changed
Sed quoniam in bono assuetis benefactum aliquod in
but since in good for-the-accustomed a-good-deed some into
æque bonum aut in parum melius mutare onerosum est
equally good or into a-little better to-change burdensome it-is

semper, nos quidem humiliari assoliti ut jumenta fieri
always we indeed to-be-humbled accustomed that beasts-of-burden to-become
apud Deum non recusamus et onere bis gravari.
before God not we-refuse and with-burden twice to-be-weighed-down
His et aliis utrimque profligatis, gratulantur legati
with-these and other-things on-both-sides dispatched rejoice the-envoys
surgentesque Deum laudando conventum dirimunt.
and-rising God by-praising the-assembly dissolve
Postea vero in auditorio convenientes, fratribus se ad
afterward but in the-auditorium gathering with-the-brothers themselves for
missas pro die festo parantibus, Henricus ait consortibus:
masses for the-day festive preparing Henry says to-(his)-colleagues
Fideles nos nuntios jam nunc, socii, exhibemus, si quisque
faithful us messengers already now comrades we-show if each
nostrum pro copia tantis viris in hac mala terra
of-us according-to means for-so-great men in this bad land
inopibus, ne in promissis deficiant, consulimus. Alacres omnes,
needy lest in the-promises they-fail we-provide eager all
prout ipse dictaverit, symbolum fatentur facturos. Et
as he-himself shall-have-dictated the-contribution confess about-to-make and
ille: Non meum est, inquit, de vestris cujusque sumptibus
he not mine it-is he-says about your of-each expenses
dictitare; pro copia, quam singuli habemus, in carta hic
to-dictate according-to the-means which each we-have on a-sheet here
sub nomine quisque suo conferre scribamus. Factum est,
under the-name each his-own to-contribute let-us-write done it-was
et usque ad quadraginta quinque libras symbolus venerat.
and all-the-way to forty five pounds the-contribution had-come
Interea sequentia: Summis conatibus, quam Ekkehardus
meanwhile the-sequence Summis conatibus which Ekkehard
palatinus dictaverat, ipso coram illis stante inchoatur et
the-palatine had-composed with-himself before them standing is-begun and

jocunde cantatur. Et Poppo jocose: Enimvero, ait, tot
pleasantly is-sung and Poppo jokingly indeed he-says so-many
hostes viri isti pro nichilo æstimant, neque eo minus
enemies men these for nothing value nor for-that less
alacres jocundantur, quod assumus. Et Ekkehardus: Cantent,
eager they-make-merry that we-are-present and Ekkehard let-them-sing
inquit, quam altissime velint; coquina adhuc cuique
he-says as highest they-may-wish the-kitchen still for-each
victum non habet. Quod Henricus audiens alte quidem
food not has which Henry hearing deeply indeed
ingemuit. Et Kebo: Unum est, domini mei, quod ego mecum
groaned and Gebo one-thing it-is lords my which I with-myself
cogitans multum vereor, sed et omnibus vobis vereri est,
thinking much fear but also for-all of-you to-be-feared it-is
ne, postquam privata, quæ quisque sua collaturus est,
lest after the-private-things which each his about-to-contribute is
fuerint consumpta, nec de proprio nec de communi
shall-have-been consumed neither from own nor from common
habent, regulam tunc nec unam assequantur nec alteram. Et
they-have a-rule then neither the-one they-may-attain nor the-other and
Henricus: Dominis nostris id ipsum, ait, dicere habebimus;
Henry to-lords our that very he-says to-say we-shall-have
nos vero, quod legatio nostra talem effectum habet,
we but that embassy our such effect has
solummodo gaudemus. Enimvero egomet, antequam veneram,
only rejoice indeed I-myself before I-had-come
aliter evenire putaveram; neque in sapientia tanti rumoris
otherwise to-turn-out had-thought nor in wisdom of-so-great rumor
et in virtute operum viros facile unquam a tam laudabili,
and in virtue of-works men easily ever from so praiseworthy
qua degebant, vita avelli posse crediderim.
by-which they-lived a-life to-be-torn-away to-be-able I-would-have-believed

Abscesserat ab illis jam Ekkehardus, et ecce quidam
had-withdrawn from them already Ekkehard and lo a-certain-one
fratrum ecclesia egressus sequentiarium manu ferebat.
of-the-brothers from-the-church gone-out the-sequentiary in-hand carried
Quem illi assumentes in sequentia diei Notkerum Balbulum
which they taking in the-sequence of-the-day Notker the-Stammerer
laudant. At ille: Non domini, ait, hæc est Notkeri, sed ejus,
praise but he not lords he-says this is of-Notker but of-him
qui juxta vos sedit, magistri nostri palatini Ekkehardi. Et
who beside you sat of-master our the-palatine Ekkehard and
Chuonradus: Insaniat, inquit, Ruodmannus cum ypocrisi sua
Conrad let-rave he-says Ruodmann with hypocrisy his
in locum hunc, quantum velit, monachos tamen hodie
against place this as-much-as he-may-wish monks however today
sanctus Gallus habet, quorum similes ipse inter suos
Saint Gall has of-whom the-like he-himself among his-own
nunquam simulabit. Et Poppo: Enimvero, ait, huic ipsi, cujus
never will-feign and Poppo indeed he-says to-this very whose
hæc verba sunt, parem nusquam videmus. Et Palzo: Dicere,
these words are an-equal nowhere we-see and Balzo to-say
inquit, habueras, si magistri mei, avunculi ejus, verba
he-says you-would-have-had if of-master my of-the-uncle his the-words
inspexeras, sed et aliorum plurimorum, ex eis verba et opera
you-had-inspected but also of-others very-many of them the-words and works
noveras. Dico enim, id sancto Gallo prærogative datum, ut in
you-had-known I-say for this to-Saint Gall by-prerogative given that in
ornatu verborum præcipuum sui hoc tempore teneant locum.
adornment of-words the-chief of-its at-this time they-hold place
Egressi interea fratres, ut erant palliis parati, stare usque
gone-out meanwhile the-brothers as they-were in-palls prepared to-stand until
abbas veniat, monentur. Et Poppo interea: Sanctus Gallus, ait,
the-abbot comes are-warned and Poppo meanwhile Saint Gall he-says

tam sonora guttura sua, ne rauceant, dulci hodie vino rigare
so sonorous throats his lest they-grow-hoarse with-sweet today wine to-water
velit et saturet! — Usque huc legationem illam scriptam in
may-wish and may-sate up-to here embassy that written into
verba alia transferens, cartis per impluvium perfusis, quæ
words other translating with-sheets through the-impluvium drenched what-things
secuta sunt, conicere non poteram; quæ autem post hæc
followed have to-guess not I-could what-things but after these-things
dicturus sum, patrum, qui intererant, relatibus didici.
about-to-tell I-am of-the-fathers who were-present from-the-reports I-learned
Interea accitus abbas affuit et consedit, et Henricus parva
meanwhile summoned the-abbot was-present and sat-down and Henry small
solacia se collaturos et die condicta daturos
solaces themselves about-to-bring-together and on-the-day agreed about-to-give
fratribus pollicetur; dein regibus se pro inopia eorum
to-the-brothers promises then to-the-kings themselves for the-want their
suasuros omnes concordant; et cum se orationi eorum
about-to-urge all agree and when themselves to-the-prayer their
committerent, abbas intulit: Immo ut fratres conscripti, ait,
they-committed the-abbot added nay that brothers enrolled he-says
sitis volo, quia alia vobis dona dare non habemus. Lætis
you-be I-wish since other to-you gifts to-give not we-have glad
ob hoc omnibus, itur in æcclesiam. Recepti manibus
for this all there-is-going into the-church received into-the-hands
abbatis singuli in libro vitæ scribuntur. Abbates rogati cum
of-the-abbot each in the-book of-life are-written the-abbots asked with
fratribus eo die mensæ aderant. De communi et privatis
the-brothers on-that day at-table were-present from the-common and the-private
collectæ fiunt et habundam caritatem faciunt. Cum autem
collections are-made and abundant charity they-make when moreover
disciplinam loci et morum tenorem singuli sollicite
the-discipline of-the-place and of-manners the-tenor each carefully

perviderent nihilque se quidam illorum, nisi quod regulæ
observed and-nothing themselves some of-them except what of-the-rule
sit, ibi videre silentio sibi dicerent, Milo coclearium
be there to-see in-silence to-themselves they-said Milo a-spoon
sibi afferri signo petiit. Quod cum ministrantium unus
to-himself to-be-brought by-sign asked which when of-the-servers one
manutergio afferret, arte ille sua quasi recipiens decidere
in-a-towel brought by-art he his as-if receiving to-fall
sivit. Minister autem continuo non sine rubore in veniam
let the-server but at-once not without blush into pardon
corruit. Surgere autem signo jussus, ut mos loci erat,
fell to-rise moreover by-sign bidden as the-custom of-the-place was
domo inclinatus hinc et hinc, nisi a priore signo vel
to-the-house bowed on-this-side and on-that unless by the-prior with-sign or
nutu revocaretur, per exitum, qui claustrum ducit, exivit,
nod he-should-be-recalled through the-exit which to-the-cloister leads went-out
per fores, quæ a coquina sunt, mox reversurus. At Kebo,
by the-doors which from the-kitchen are soon about-to-return but Gebo
hilaritatem machinari artifex: Vide, Milo, ait, miser, quid
merriment to-contrive an-artist see Milo he-says wretch what
feceris! Frater ille, quem fuco tuo deceperas, exivit;
you-have-done brother that whom with-trick your you-had-deceived has-gone-out
nisi ipse eum revocaveris, non est reversurus. Ille autem
unless you-yourself him shall-have-recalled not is about-to-return he moreover
pectus incutiens uni et alteri signo dato, ut revocaretur,
(his)-breast striking to-one and another a-sign given that he-might-be-recalled
et nemine, quia Kebo astantibus innuerat, attendente,
and with-no-one because Gebo to-the-bystanders had-nodded attending
surgere ipse dum parat, veste eum Kebo detrahit,
to-rise himself while he-prepares by-the-garment him Gebo draws-back
et a coquina regressum digito fratrem monstravit. Tali
and from the-kitchen returned with-finger the-brother showed with-such

hilaritate cum ipsi inter se velud hospites licentius
merriment when they-themselves among themselves as-if guests more-freely
agerent, nemo quidem loci fratrum motus est in risum.
acted no-one indeed of-the-place of-the-brothers moved was to laughter

Capitula 111–115

THE ENVOYS DEPART AND RUODMANN REBUKED

Gebo and the abbots beg the brothers' pardon for testing such discipline, and the envoys enter the cloister as enrolled brothers, tour the library, treasury, and scriptorium, and drink with the brothers until vespers. Henry and Gebo are charged with the report; Bishop Conrad promises three feasts a year, and Henry and Thietrich yearly gifts of wine and salt. Passing Ruodmann at Constance, Ekkehard ignores his greeting; Ruodmann sends after him the proverb that lies have short legs, and Ekkehard answers that it was never truer than now. Ruodmann's brother Otker warns him that his feud with Saint Gall is known at court; Ruodmann protests that he wished only that all monks live by the rule.

Surgitur a mensa; itur solitis benedictionum
there-is-rising from table there-is-going with-the-wonted of-blessings
ymnis in ecclesiam. Et ecce Kebo cum ceteris in veniam
hymns into the-church and lo Gebo with the-others into pardon
corruit coram fratribus ecclesia egressis. Nos, inquit,
fell before the-brothers from-the-church gone-out we he-says
fratres et domini, docere vos venimus, et ecce disciplina
brothers and lords to-teach you have-come and lo by-discipline
vestra fracti stupescimus, cum, nobis effuse solutis in
your broken we-are-astonished since with-us effusely loosened into
risum, ne unum vestrum dare videremus assensum. Talem
laughter not one of-you to-give we-saw assent such
disciplinam hujus loci semper audivimus prædicari, et quam
discipline of-this place always we-heard to-be-proclaimed and which

crebro audivimus, nunc oculis inspeximus. Indulgeri tandem
often we-heard now with-eyes we-have-seen to-be-pardoned at-last
rogamus, quod tantos viros vos impares aggressi sumus et
we-ask that so-great men you unequal attacked we-have and
doctissimos indocti temptavimus. Vere laudis vobis testimonio
the-most-learned unlearned we-have-tested truly of-praise to-you for-testimony
futuri, quocumque venerimus. Surgentibus a venia pariter
about-to-be wherever we-shall-have-come with-those-rising from pardon together
omnes fratres occurrunt in amplexus et oscula, et quoniam
all the-brothers run into embraces and kisses and since
incompetens hora esset, abbati decanum dirigunt, ut eis
an-unfitting hour it-was to-the-abbot the-dean they-direct that to-them
cum hospitibus incompetentia competere permitteret. Venit
with the-guests unfittingness to-be-fitting he-might-permit came
itaque lætus ipse, ut semper erat dulcissima caritatis anima,
and-so glad he-himself as always he-was sweetest of-charity soul
abbas, et meridiem usque nonam in sanctæ hilaritatis gaudio
the-abbot and from-noon until none in of-holy merriment joy
perduxerant. Sonatur ad nonam. Qua peracta, mittit abbas
they-had-drawn-out it-is-rung for none which completed sends the-abbot
Kebonem, qui episcopos, ut fratres conscripti claustrum
Gebo who the-bishops that as-brothers enrolled the-cloister
intrare jam utique suum non dedignarentur, rogaret. Veniunt
to-enter now surely their-own not they-should-disdain should-ask come
omnes et societati fraternæ participandum fore gaudio gaudent.
all and in-fellowship fraternal to-be-shared to-be with-joy they-rejoice
Itur in armarium, sed et in angustum sancti
there-is-going into the-book-chest but also into the-narrow of-Saint
Galli thesaurarium. Præ omnibus autem scriptorum digiti
Gall treasury before all moreover of-the-scribes the-fingers

efferuntur, gemmarum autem et auri, quorum satis habebant,
are-extolled of-gems moreover and of-gold of-which enough they-had
non adeo. Versum Ambrosii solio ascriptum:
not so-much the-verse of-Ambrose to-the-throne inscribed

Nectaris ambrosii redolentia carpito mella
Of-nectar ambrosial fragrant pluck honeys

memoriter repetebant. Veniunt in pirale et in eo
by-memory they-repeated they-come into the-warming-room and in it
lavatorium nec non et proximum pirali scriptorium,
the-washroom and also and next to-the-warming-room the-scriptorium
et has tres regularissimas præ omnibus, quas unquam viderint,
and these three most-regular before all which ever they-had-seen
asserebant esse officinas, et absque dubio, qui tales dudum
they-asserted to-be workshops and without doubt who such long-since
incolerent, regulares esse monachos nulli negandum esset.
inhabited regular to-be monks by-no-one to-be-denied it-was
Invitat tandem abbas omnes pariter ad nonales fratrum,
invites at-last the-abbot all together to the-none-time of-the-brothers
quibus conscripti essent, biberes. Ibi tanta hilaritate usque
by-which enrolled they-were drinks there with-so-great merriment until
ad vesperum jam pene sonatum commanent, ut senum,
to vespers already almost rung they-stay that of-the-old-men
qui adhuc hodie talia memorant, recordationem voluptas
who still today such-things recall the-remembrance pleasure
sit audire. Ibant pariter ad laudes vespertinas quisque suas,
it-is to-hear they-went together to lauds of-evening each his-own
abbate cum fratribus omni dulcedine valefactis, condicto
with-the-abbot with the-brothers with-all sweetness bidden-farewell agreed
quidem, ut cras mattutini conveniant et missionis suæ
indeed that tomorrow in-the-morning they-should-gather and of-mission their

responsa regibus reddenda communi disponerent consilio
the-answers to-the-kings to-be-rendered with-common they-should-arrange counsel
et relatu roborarent concordi et caritativo. Veniunt diluculo
and with-report should-confirm harmonious and charitable they-come at-dawn
in fratrum consessum, et Henrico dictante legationis suæ
into of-the-brothers the-session and with-Henry dictating of-embassy their
brevem et uniformem ordinant reddicionem, ut, quoniam
a-brief and uniform they-arrange report that since
non simul ad aulam sunt redituri, Henricus, cui caput
not together to the-court they-are about-to-return Henry to-whom the-head
causæ a regibus datum est, Kebone comite unum os
of-the-case by the-kings given was with-Gebo as-companion one mouth
omnium et lingua foret. Neque ego, Henricus ait, si quid
of-all and tongue should-be nor I Henry says if anything
de meo adicere potero, confratribus nostris derogare habeo.
of mine to-add I-shall-be-able from-fellow-brothers our to-detract I-have
Assurgunt omnes acclini in gratias; pergunt tandem in
rise all bowing in thanks they-proceed at-last into
ecclesiam ad dandas abeuntibus prosperæ viæ preces
the-church for to-be-given to-the-departing of-prosperous journey prayers
abbas cum fratribus et recipiendas a tot episcopis
the-abbot with the-brothers and to-be-received from so-many bishops
benedictiones, data prius confessione et a stolatis
blessings with-given first confession and from the-stoled
remissione. Redeuntibus autem in claustrum ad oscula
remission returning moreover into the-cloister for the-kisses
confratrum Chuonradus noster inter ceteros: Quoniam ego,
of-the-fellow-brothers Conrad our among the-others since I
filii mei, inquit, proximior vobis loco sum, quam ceteri isti
sons my he-says nearer to-you in-place am than the-other these
fratres conscripti, pro memoria ipsorum et mea tribus diebus
brothers enrolled for memory of-them and mine on-three days

in annis, quibus vixero, caritates me vobis in refectorio
in years which I-shall-have-lived charities myself for-you in the-refectory
facturum promitto. Postea etiam hilariter hoc fecit, et ut,
about-to-make I-promise afterward also cheerfully this he-did and as
qui intererant, testantur, quoties ei vacabat, ipse quidem
who were-present attest as-often-as to-him it-was-free he-himself indeed
aderat, abbati regio modo proponebat, mensas obambulabat,
was-present to-the-abbot in-royal manner set-out tables walked-about
serio et joco abbatis assensu colloquia miscebat. Sed
in-earnest and in-jest of-the-abbot with-assent talks mingled but
et rauca sua naturali voce jocundus lectorem aliquando
also with-hoarse his natural voice pleasant the-reader sometime
increpitans: Nunquam etiam conticescis? ait: Tu autem, sicque
rebuking never even are-you-silent he-says Tu autem and-so
cum vitro puræ potionis in medium veniens abbatem primo,
with a-glass of-pure drink into the-middle coming the-abbot first
tum ceteros in sancta caritate bibere rogans, ipsum primosque
then the-others in holy charity to-drink asking him and-the-first
mensarum osculatus omnibus per eos oscula misit. Talis
of-the-tables having-kissed to-all through them kisses sent such
erat sancti Chuonradi in nos caritas. — Henricus vero
was of-holy Conrad toward us the-charity Henry but
et Thietericus quosdam cum Ekkehardo decano patrum
and Thietrich certain with Ekkehard the-dean of-the-fathers
sumentes in partem, prior, quotannis viveret, decem
taking into a-part the-former yearly he-should-live ten
vasa vinaria, alter totidem salis spira condixit die dato
vessels for-wine the-other as-many of-salt a-coil agreed on-a-day given
confratribus mittere. Quod et incunctanter singulis, quibus
to-the-fellow-brothers to-send which also without-delay in-each in-which
vixerunt, fecerunt annis. Sicque per oscula mutua valedictione
they-lived they-did years and-so through kisses mutual with-farewell

data utrimque sibi fausta precati ad prandia
given on-both-sides for-each-other auspicious-things having-prayed to luncheons
discedunt, noctem proximam Constantiæ simul acturi.
they-depart the-night next at-Constance together about-to-spend
Ibat autem et Ekkehardus ipse quidem ad reges unicordes
went moreover also Ekkehard himself indeed to the-kings of-one-heart
suos, et de his et de aliis mandata abbatis ad
his and about these-things and about others the-commands of-the-abbot to
illos laturus, sed et quantum in se sit, causam cum
them about-to-carry but also as-much-as in himself it-be the-cause with
aulicis prosperaturus. Præterit autem Ruodmannum die
the-courtiers about-to-prosper passes moreover Ruodmann on-the-day
altera Constantiæ pro hospitibus agentem, et cum ei
next at-Constance for the-guests acting and when to-him
ille Benedicite! arte sua diceret, quasi ad navem festinans,
he Benedicite with-art his said as-if to the-ship hastening
transeuntem non attendebat. At ille constitit et quendam
the-passer-by not attended but he stopped and a-certain-one
post eum ad navim misit, qui diceret: Verum proverbium est:
after him to the-ship sent who should-say true the-proverb is
Mendacia curta semper habent crura. Et Ekkehardus: Verum
lies short always have legs and Ekkehard true
illud, ait, esse, nunquam lucidius quam heri et hodie,
that he-says to-be never more-clearly than yesterday and today
in nobis apparuit. Sed ne mirum, si me tantillum convitiis
in us appeared but no wonder if me so-small with-insults
prosequitur dominus tuus, cum mille in regno monachi
pursues lord your since a-thousand in the-kingdom monks
sint emeriti, qui Deo et hominibus conquerantur pro
there-be veterans who to-God and to-men complain for
convitiis ejus. Quapropter et hæc ego cum aliis mille
the-insults his wherefore also these-things I with others a-thousand

perpetior et quiesco. Sed et quidam ministrorum hominis
endure and rest but also a-certain-one of-the-servants of-the-man
bene idoneus, cui causa domini reges interdum erant
well fit to-whom for-the-sake of-(his)-lord the-kings sometimes were
affabiles: Enimvero, ait, etsi dominus meus tacuerit,
affable indeed he-says even-if lord my shall-have-been-silent
ego nequaquam omittam, quin talia conquerar regibus.
I by-no-means shall-omit but-that such-things I-should-complain to-the-kings
Rediit nuntius Ruodmanno cuncta, quæ audierat, renuntians.
returned the-messenger to-Ruodmann all-things which he-had-heard reporting
Ille modo non modice stupidus, nequaquam in eum verba
he just-now not moderately stunned by-no-means against him words
hæc vertisse care jurans asseruit, sed magis in eos,
these to-have-turned dearly swearing asserted but more against those
qui ipsum et fratres nostros infamassent, falsidicos. Hoc
who him and brothers our had-defamed false-speakers this
dixit sub optentu, quasi ipse quidem talium nullus esset.
he-said under pretense as-if he-himself indeed of-such none were
Et Otkerus, quem supra diximus, frater ejus et miles:
and Otker whom above we-mentioned brother his and soldier
Miror te, ait, nunquam hominis pigere, qui astu suo
I-wonder-at you he-says never of-the-man to-weary who by-cunning his
semper tuas exsuperavit acutias. Latere autem te arbitror
always your surpassed sharpnesses to-lie-hid-from moreover you I-think
rumorem, quo apud omnes insigniris, secundam quidem
the-rumor by-which among all you-are-marked the-second indeed
jam te invasionem loco illi sancto, unam clam fecisse
already you an-invasion on-place that holy one secretly to-have-made
per te solum, alteram struxisse per tot episcoporum et
through you alone the-other to-have-built through so-many of-bishops and
abbatum collegia. Hoc in aula tunc musitatum est; sed et
abbots colleges this at court then muttered was but also

proximis diebus a militibus ipsius abbatis mihi conquestum
in-recent days by the-soldiers of-that abbot to-me complained
est. Ideoque ipso isto homine, cui nunc nuntium
it-was and-therefore with-that very man to-whom now messenger
tuum misisti, agente, tu solus a legatione illa exceptus es.
your you-sent acting you alone from embassy that excepted were
Vereor autem, ne, quia intimus quidem consiliis est apud
I-fear moreover lest because intimate indeed in-the-counsels he-is with
principes, animo, quo nunc est, infortunii tui aliquid
the-princes with-the-mind which now is of-misfortune your something
conflet. Et ille: Non nego, ait, frater, sed et veraciter
he-may-forge and he not I-deny he-says brother but also truly
assero, etiam caput meum abscidendum incunctanter eo
I-assert even head my to-be-cut-off without-delay on-that
pacto me tradere, ut omnes in regno Ottonum monachi
condition myself to-hand-over that all in the-kingdom of-the-Ottos monks
vivant secundum regulam sancti Benedicti. Sed et super
may-live according-to the-rule of-Saint Benedict but also about
ipsos fratres, qui pene sine abbate sunt, a dominis invitatus
the-very brothers who almost without an-abbot are by the-lords invited
consiliis, quæ sensi, fide dixi, qua debui. Ut autem
to-the-counsels what-things I-felt in-faith I-said in-which I-ought that moreover
tot hospitibus invaderentur, crede mihi, neque consilio
by-so-many guests they-should-be-invaded believe me neither in-counsel
interfui, nec unquam placuit mihi, ubi comperi. Sed et
I-took-part nor ever it-pleased me when I-learned but also
hodie lætatus sum et heri, ubi prospera de eis audivi.
today rejoiced I-have and yesterday when prosperous-things about them I-heard
— Nollem, ait ille, frater et domine mi, te pro aliis,
I-would-not-wish says he brother and lord my you for others
quam tibi creditis, adeo sollicitari, ut querelas tibi
than for-you entrusted so-much to-be-made-anxious that complaints for-yourself

ullas a pari potestate præditis compares, sed quantum illi
any from equal with-power endowed you-should-procure but as-much-as they
pro tuis, tantum te quoque curare pro suis, et salva sic
for your-own so-much you also to-care for theirs and safe thus
caritate et pace hinc inde fueris. Nunc autem
with-charity and peace on-this-side and-that you-would-have-been now moreover
te cum tantis viris, qui ad honorem omnia et precibus
you with so-great men who to honor all-things both by-prayers
perducunt et artibus, tam severe discordare admodum doleo,
bring and by-arts so severely to-disagree very I-grieve
et maxime cum illo, quem dixi non parvi momenti, viro.
and most with him whom I-mentioned not of-small weight a-man

Capitula 116–118

THE REPORT AT MAINZ AND WORMS

Ekkehard rides with the envoys and will not be reconciled with Ruodmann. At Mainz Henry and Gebo report the monks' discipline and their want; Ekkehard asks that the envoys revisit them rather than a master of the rule be sent, and the elder Otto swears he would sooner break his crown than leave them without help. At Worms, when enemies urge a regular abbot, Hadwig's priest Huozo answers them, and Henry declares the monks need only the means to live by the rule.

Cum autem Ekkehardus Duellium ipsa die ascenderet et
when moreover Ekkehard to-Hohentwiel on-that-very day climbed and
Wazemanno ibi abbati, nobis et sibi amicissimo, omnem
to-Wazemann there abbot to-us and to-himself most-friendly the-whole
seriem rei nostræ, ut ductrici in proximo a Norico, ubi
series of-matter our that to-the-duchess in the-near from Noricum where
pascha egit, redeunti insinuaret et per singula diceret, in
Easter she-kept returning he-might-insinuate and through each-thing might-tell at

Rotwila legatis Ruodmanno et Otkero comitatis jungitur.
Rottweil with-the-envoys by-Ruodmann and Otker accompanied he-is-joined
Ubi parum cum eis moratus in Thietingen villam nostram, ne
where little with them having-stayed at Thietingen estate our lest
quicquam Ruodmanni rerum tangeret, vespertinus divertit,
anything of-Ruodmann of-the-things he-might-touch at-evening turned-aside
quamvis tamen ipse ei per fratrem necessaria habunde
although however he-himself to-him through (his)-brother necessities abundantly
promitteret. Ruodmanno autem legatorum quosdam rogante,
promised with-Ruodmann moreover of-the-envoys certain asking
ut de verbis ad navem male intellectis eum in crastinum
that about the-words at the-ship badly understood him on the-morrow
corrigerent occurrentem, comitatu ille usque Spiram
they-might-correct the-one-meeting from-the-company he all-the-way to-Speyer
abstinuit, ibique eis se, Ruodmanno cis Rhenum
abstained and-there to-them himself with-Ruodmann on-this-side-of-the Rhine
egresso, conjunxit. Kebo autem id rogatus Ruodmannum
gone joined Gebo moreover this asked Ruodmann
apud hominem purgare de verbis ipsis aggreditur. Cui
with the-man to-clear about the-words themselves undertakes to-whom
ille, nihil aliud nisi publicos impulsus et eversiones ejus
he nothing other than public assaults and overthrows his
in se et fratres suos, respondit, reservandos. Et ille:
against himself and brothers his answered to-be-reserved and he
Enimvero, ait, hesterni diei orisque omnium nostri
indeed he-says of-yesterday of-the-day and-of-the-mouth of-all of-us
semper habet, dum homo est, reminisci. Audiunt tandem,
always he-has while a-man he-is to-remember hear at-last
reges rogationes et ascensionem Moguntiæ acturos.
the-kings the-Rogations and the-Ascension at-Mainz about-to-keep

Illuc conveniunt præscripti illi, sed et ceterorum aliqui,
thither gather the-aforesaid those but also of-the-others some
vimque omnem legationis suæ, Ekkehardo astante, quam
and-the-force all of-embassy their with-Ekkehard standing-by as
optime poterant, in brevi per ordinem absolverant, penuriaque
best they-could in brief in order had-completed and-with-the-want
loci conquesta, maxime in vino et ceteris regulæ
of-the-place complained-of most in wine and other of-the-rule
sumptibus: Nisi solatio, inquiunt, juventur, neque sub regula,
expenses unless by-solace they-say they-be-helped neither under the-rule
neque sine regula, cum paupertatulas, quas habent in
nor without the-rule when the-little-poverties which they-have into
medium collatas, consumpserint, subsistere non poterunt.
the-middle brought they-shall-have-consumed to-subsist not they-will-be-able
— Neque hæc ipsa, Kebo ait, diu durabunt, quæ
nor these-things very Gebo says long will-last which
contulerant, quia omne habere omnium illorum sollicite
they-had-contributed because all having of-all of-them carefully
scrutati aput neminem ullius boni copiam præter caritatis
having-searched with no-one of-any good abundance except of-charity
et humilitatis invenimus. Obedicionem autem illorum, ut
and of-humility we-found the-obedience moreover of-them that
vere asseram, Dei virorum laudare mihi non est magnopere,
truly I-may-assert of-God of-men to-praise for-me not it-is very-much
cum et patres nostri episcopi dicto paratiores nunquam
since also fathers our the-bishops than-a-word readier never
majorem vidisse testati sint. Et Otto filius ad patrem:
greater to-have-seen attested have and Otto the-son to (his)-father
Enimvero, pater, jocundum est, quod audivimus, teque
indeed father pleasant it-is what we-have-heard and-you
decet talium compati penuriis, maxime vero, ut famæ
it-befits of-such to-pity the-wants most but that of-the-fame

eorum invidi et proditores videantur confusi. Et pater:
their the-envious and betrayers may-be-seen confounded and the-father
Si tamen tandem aliquem unum habere consenserint in
if however at-last someone one to-have they-shall-have-consented as
auxilio, qui regulæ peritus aliquantum cum eis conversetur
help who in-the-rule skilled some-while with them may-dwell
temporis. Cum autem Kebo ad hæc, quiddam ut diceret,
of-time when moreover Gebo to these-things something that he-might-say
surgere cœpisset, Henricus illum nutu compescuit, et
to-rise had-begun Henry him with-a-nod restrained and
ad se accito in aurem: Noli, inquit, quicquam contra
to himself summoned into the-ear do-not he-says anything against
loqui, quia, quantum eos nunc experti sumus, nemo
to-speak because as-much-as them now tested we-have no
monachus hodie est in regno, qui in ratione bene
monk today is in the-kingdom who in the-reason well
vivendi inter eos veniens eos præcedere possit, et forsitan,
of-living among them coming them to-precede could and perhaps
quisquis ille erit, aut tantæ auctoritatis Dei servis
whoever he will-be either of-so-great authority of-God to-the-servants
manus est daturus, aut tandem quoquo modo loco
hands is about-to-give or at-last in-some way from-the-place
cessurus. — At Ekkehardus: Liceat et nobis, inquit,
about-to-yield but Ekkehard let-it-be-allowed also to-us he-says
o rex, vice abbatis nostri, a quo et ad hoc ipsum
O king in-place of-abbot our by whom also for this very
missi sumus, quiddam loqui. Bene et optime intulit
sent we-have-been something to-speak well and very-well brought-in
quidem filius tuus, penuriis nostris te decere compati, ne
indeed son your the-wants our you to-befit to-pity lest
postquam reculæ nostræ, quas in medium contulimus,
after little-things our which into the-middle we-brought

fuerint consumptæ, absque omni regula tandem famelicis
shall-have-been consumed without any rule at-last for-hungry-ones
tuis sit vivere. Quod autem majestas tua, gloriose mi,
your it-be to-live what moreover majesty your glorious-one my
subjunxerat, periciorem regulæ nobis aliquem auxilio dari,
had-added more-skilled in-the-rule for-us someone as-help to-be-given
a legatis vestris, abbatibus regulæ peritissimis, nunc,
from envoys your abbots in-the-rule most-skilled now
ut ita dicam, iniciati petimus, pater et fili, ab ipsorum
that so I-may-say initiated we-ask father and son by them
aliquo jussu vestro revisi et, si in aliquo ab edictis
some-one by-command your to-be-revisited and if in anything from the-edicts
eorum exorbitavimus, explorari, quoniam grave quidem est,
their we-have-strayed to-be-explored since grievous indeed it-is
si ausim dicere, in tam brevi articulo tertia vice
if I-may-dare to-say in so brief a-moment for-the-third time
pauperes vestros ingredi, et ab eo, quod a tam multis
poor-ones your to-enter-upon and from that which by so many
claris viris injunctum est, per virorum nephitorum
illustrious men enjoined has-been through of-men of-neophytes
aliquem abduci. Et Henricus: Clavum quidem tu,
some-one to-be-drawn-away and Henry the-nail indeed you
inquit, legationi nostræ fixisti. Cui sic peroranti plures
he-says in-embassy our have-fixed to-whom thus pleading many
assenserant.
assented
Et pater rem in crastinum distulit, hoc inter cetera
and the-father the-matter into the-morrow deferred this among other-things
quasi de intimo cordis protestatus, prius se coronam suam
as-if from the-inmost of-heart having-protested sooner himself crown his
confracturum, quam monachos sancti Galli absque solatiis,
about-to-break than the-monks of-Saint Gall without solaces

quibus regulam exsequi possint, dimissurum. In crastinum,
by-which the-rule to-carry-out they-could about-to-dismiss on the-morrow
Ottone magno per noctem solito aliquo dolore tacto,
with-Otto the-great through the-night by-wonted some pain touched
cum in publicum procedere non posset, Henricus et Kebo
when into public to-come-forth not he-could Henry and Gebo
domos ire dimittuntur, Wormatiæ in octava pentecostes
homes to-go are-dismissed at-Worms on the-octave of-Pentecost
jussi adesse. Ekkehardus vero interea, ut solebat, aulæ
bidden to-be-present Ekkehard but meanwhile as he-was-wont at-the-court
immoratus et rem sancti Galli, quaqua poterat, agens
lingering and the-affair of-Saint Gall wherever he-could pursuing
non modice consolatus est. Hadawiga quidem regibus, patruo
not moderately consoled was with-Hadwig indeed to-the-kings to-uncle
et patrueli, literas pro regiminis rebus aliis dirigente, sed
and to-cousin a-letter for of-rule matters other directing but
et pro nobis, quod res tantæ se nescia agerentur,
also for us because matters so-great herself unaware were-done
velud irascente et, ne tandem quid de nobis severius
as-if being-angry and lest at-last anything about us more-severely
decerneretur, rogante, jubetur ipse literarum portitor Huozo
should-be-decreed asking is-bidden the-very of-the-letter bearer Huozo
presbyter, magni quidem apud dominam vir momenti,
a-priest of-great indeed with the-lady a-man weight
diem exspectare et pro ipsa decretis interesse. Conveniunt
the-day to-await and for her at-the-decrees to-be-present gather
die dato Wormatiam non solum Henrich et Gebo,
on-the-day given to-Worms not only Henry and Gebo
sed et ceteri legatorum aliqui. Magis autem pro nobis
but also the-other of-the-envoys some more moreover for us
sollicitus erat ipsius episcopus loci. Cum autem colloquio
anxious was of-that the-bishop place when moreover with-colloquy

inito varie hinc inde res traherentur, malivolis
entered variously on-this-side and-that the-matters were-drawn with-the-malevolent
nobis aliquem abbatem regularem præponi suadentibus,
to-us some abbot regular to-be-set-over urging
regulariores abbatem et monachos hodie in regno non
more-regular an-abbot and monks today in the-kingdom not
esse, si reliqua facultas sit, Huozo respondit. Cui cum
to-be if the-remaining means be Huozo answered with-whom when
legati ceteri consentirent, Henricus surgens: Nostris, inquit,
the-envoys other agreed Henry rising to-our he-says
domini reges, qui legatione vestra, qua maxime potuimus
lords kings who with-embassy your with-what most we-could
fide, functi sumus, credere habetis responsis. Quoniam
faith performed have to-believe you-have answers since
quidem alii, qui hic sua, prout libet, interserunt, quid
indeed others who here their-own as it-pleases insert what
nos apud sanctum Gallum invenerimus, quidque reliquerimus,
we at Saint Gall may-have-found and-what we-may-have-left
nesciunt. Quæ autem nos vobis nuper, quam verissime
know-not what moreover we to-you lately as most-truly
noveramus, narravimus, iterum, si vultis, ut et ipsi
we-had-known told again if you-wish that also they-themselves
audiant, repetimus. Viros nos virtutum magnarum patrum
may-hear we-repeat men we of-virtues great of-the-fathers
viam sanctissimam gradientes ibi invenimus, a qua eos in
the-way most-holy treading there found from which them into
regulæ viam, quoniam quidem eadem pene erat, convertimus.
of-the-rule the-way since indeed the-same almost it-was we-turned
In ea quidem nullius doctrinæ nunc egentes degunt; sed
in it indeed of-no teaching now needing they-live but
sumptus, quibus eam perficiant, infecundæ illius terræ
the-means by-which it they-may-accomplish of-unfruitful that land

penuria desunt. Quapropter neminis alio præter sumptuum,
by-the-want are-lacking wherefore of-no-one other except of-the-means
qui desunt, egent solatio. Abbatem autem eis imponi,
which are-lacking they-need solace an-abbot moreover over-them to-be-imposed
cum optimum habeant, vanissimum duco. Enimvero abbatem
when the-best they-have most-vain I-reckon indeed abbot
et monachos nemo nostrum aliter credit, quam Dei
and monks no-one of-us otherwise believes than of-God
esse servos. Atque ideo vos, domini, et nos rei quidem
to-be servants and therefore you lords and we guilty indeed
erimus, si non eos aut illam viam tenere sinamus, aut hanc
shall-be if not them either that way to-keep we-allow or this
idonee exequi sinamus. Illorum igitur ex parte cum nullus
fitly to-follow we-allow of-them therefore on the-part since no
modus relictus sit, si aliquis jam fuerit, nostræ partis
means left be if any now there-shall-have-been of-our part
erit.
it-will-be

Capitula 119–122

GEBO'S VISIT AND BURCHARD'S DEATH

The kings give sixty pounds, and Gebo stays at Saint Gall until the Assumption, teaching the rule gently and jesting about lame abbots; he urges the kings to give the monks a fruitful estate. Hadwig promises Sasbach if a daily mass is sung and Ekkehard keeps the place, but, hearing that some brothers hesitate, refuses forever. The brothers live in common on gifts, and a hungry monk's joke about a divided shoe is stored up by Ruodmann. Abbot Burchard builds a chapel where Gall's hazel stood and means to be enclosed there, but Bishop Conrad forbids it; he has Notker elected, outlives him, foretells Immo's abbacy, and dies, the dean Ekkehard having died the year before.

Tandem post multa consiliorum colloquia, Adalheida etiam
at-last after many of-counsels talks with-Adelaide also
per Ekkehardum adesse rogata, dantur Keboni abbati et
through Ekkehard to-be-present asked are-given to-Gebo the-abbot and
sibi de scriniis regum sexaginta argenti librarum rata
to-himself from the-chests of-the-kings sixty of-silver of-pounds fixed
pondera abbati nostro et fratribus solatio in sancti Johannis
weights to-abbot our and to-the-brothers for-solace on of-Saint John
die ferenda; jusso etiam Kebone in loco ipso usque
the-day to-be-carried with-bidden also Gebo in the-place itself until
dormicionem Mariæ hospitari atque Benedicti viam discretione,
the-falling-asleep of-Mary to-lodge and of-Benedict the-way by-the-discretion
qua nosset, coram Galli pullis ingredi moreque suo
with-which he-knew before of-Gall the-chicks to-enter and-in-manner his
eos docere vivere. Venit ille tandem carus ad carissimos, et
them to-teach to-live came he at-last dear to the-dearest and
quicquid instituit, omnes unanimes ad exequendum invenit,
whatever he-established all of-one-mind for carrying-out he-found
abbate ei cum Ekkehardo seniore decano quidem ad
with-the-abbot to-him with Ekkehard the-elder dean indeed for

omnia, et de oblatis et de loci impensis, copias
all-things both from the-offerings and from of-the-place the-expenses supplies
suggerentibus, Ekkehardo etiam juniore, quem multum ille
suggesting with-Ekkehard also the-younger whom much he
præ oculis habuit, favente et cum eo, donec recessit,
before (his)-eyes had favoring and with him until he-withdrew
nocte dieque versante. Opere autem precium erat, si
by-night and-by-day dwelling of-the-work moreover worth it-were if
vacaret, multa, quæ eum jocunde fecisse et eleganter
there-were-leisure many-things which him pleasantly to-have-done and elegantly
audivimus locutumque esse, sermoni inserere. Ut in die
we-have-heard and-spoken to-have to-the-discourse to-insert as on the-day
sanctæ Mariæ, post quem jam dolore omnium discessurus
of-Saint Mary after which now with-the-grief of-all about-to-depart
erat, cruces foras sequendo cum antiphonæ nocturnales cum
he-was the-crosses outside in-following when antiphons nocturnal with
capitibus psalmorum in via canerentur: Nonne regulæ
heads of-psalms on the-way were-sung surely of-the-rule
nostræ, sed et canonum est, ait, semel hodie mattutinos
our but also of-the-canons it-is he-says once today the-matins
agere? Enimvero, si istos Kebo futuros scisset, non strato
to-perform indeed if these Gebo about-to-be had-known not from-the-bed
surrexisset. Quam autem omnes mentiti sunt, qui in hoc
he-would-have-risen how moreover all lied have who in this
loco regulam non esse dixerunt, cum in tanto vacationis die
place a-rule not to-be said since on so-great of-leisure a-day
non simplex, sed duplex solita sit persolvi. Cum autem
not simple but double accustomed it-be to-be-paid when moreover
abbas claudus quidem esset, sed et decanus pede nutasset:
the-abbot lame indeed was but also the-dean in-foot had-tottered
Melius, ait, claudicare reges quam regna, et: O utinam
better he-says to-limp the-kings than the-kingdoms and O would-that

tales egomet claudos Lorisham haberem; enimvero præ regibus,
such I-myself lame-men at-Lorsch I-had indeed before kings
inquit, diligerem. Et cum statuta Hartmuoti in victualibus
he-says I-would-love and when the-statutes of-Hartmut in victuals
ei optima visa sint, caritates in jejuniis præ ceteris extulit
to-him best seen be the-charities in fasts before the-rest he-extolled
et amore nostro easdem suis provisurum promisit.
and out-of-love for-us the-same for-his-own about-to-provide promised
Rediit tandem lacrimis prosecutus ad reges et inter optima,
returned at-last with-tears attended to the-kings and among the-best
quæ eis de edoctis a se regularibus hilariter dixit, nisi
which to-them about the-taught by him regulars cheerfully he-said unless
illis locum aliquem vinarium et alias frugiferum de suo
to-them a-place some for-wine and otherwise fruitful from their-own
dederint, deficientibus datis illis solatiis, quæ incœperant,
they-should-give with-failing given to-them solaces what they-had-begun
perficere non posse asseruit. Dein regibus cum principibus
to-complete not to-be-able he-asserted then with-the-kings with the-princes
crebro quidem collatis, cum operas trivissent consiliis, post
often indeed brought-together when efforts they-had-worn in-counsels after
aliquot dies, Henrico episcopo monente, Sahspach Hadewigæ
some days with-Henry the-bishop advising Sasbach of-Hadwig
beneficii villam, si ab ea rogatu regum avelli possit,
of-benefice the-estate if from her at-the-request of-the-kings to-be-torn-away it-could
sancto Gallo tradere conspirant. Quod illa, cum multociens
to-Saint Gall to-hand-over they-conspire which she when many-times
tum per reges, tum per ipsos nuntios peteretur, sicut
both through the-kings and through themselves envoys was-asked as
varium et mutabile semper est femina, nunc concedere
various and changeable always is a-woman now to-grant
se spem dedit, nunc facturam sancte abjuravit. Postremo
herself hope gave now about-to-do holily abjured at-last

quidem abbate nostro in ipso monasterio et fratribus
indeed with-abbot our in that-very monastery and with-the-brothers
illi supplicantibus, facturam tandem pollicetur, si ei missa
to-her supplicating about-to-do at-last she-promises if to-her a-mass
cottidiana in loco pro viva et defuncta in perpetuum
daily in the-place for living and dead in perpetuity
promittatur agenda, sed et Ekkehardo ejus loci, usque
should-be-promised to-be-performed but also to-Ekkehard of-that place all-the-way
dum vivat, committatur cura. De quo cum aliquos ex
until he-lives should-be-committed the-care about which when some of
fratribus nostris invidos homini hesitare audisset, irata
brothers our envious of-the-man to-hesitate she-had-heard angry
exiliit reque infecta conventum diremit, seque post
she-leapt-out and-with-the-thing undone the-assembly broke-up and-herself after
hanc horam nunquam cuiquam pro hac re aurem juravit
this hour never to-anyone for this thing an-ear swore
adhibere; sicque quorundam invida incautela Gallus villam
to-apply and-so of-certain-ones by-envious incaution Gall estate
illam, cum jam in manibus habere posset, amisit, Ekkehardo
that when already in hands to-have he-could lost with-Ekkehard
tandem carissime jurante, nunquam se causa sui in hac
at-last most-dearly swearing never himself for-the-sake of-himself in this
re illi verbum fecisse. Fratres autem, quamvis hac spe
thing to-her a-word to-have-made the-brothers moreover although in-this hope
frustrati, instituta tamen Kebonis sollicite tenebant, sicque
frustrated the-institutions however of-Gebo carefully held and-so
communiter vivebant donariis regum, simbolis quoque,
in-common lived on-the-gifts of-the-kings on-the-contributions also
quæ diximus, legatorum, quamvis anni penuriæ fuerint, ut
which we-mentioned of-the-envoys although years of-want they-were that
neminis invidorum in se hora patefacerent.
to-no-one of-the-envious against themselves the-mouths they-should-lay-open

Chuonradus autem episcopus, crebro eos visitans, ut diximus,
Conrad moreover the-bishop often them visiting as we-said
annis aliquot jam elapsis cum diuturna eos penuria vidisset
with-years some now elapsed when by-long them want he-had-seen
afflictos, senibus et invalidis pietate sibi solita consuluit et
afflicted for-the-old and infirm with-piety to-himself wonted provided and
caminatas claustri abbatem aperire rogavit, Constantiaque
the-heated-rooms of-the-cloister the-abbot to-open asked and-from-Constance
et Arbona, in quantum copia erat, solatia privata talibus
and from-Arbon in as-much-as supply was solaces private for-such
transmisit. Validiores vero hæc considerantes amicis suis
sent-over the-stronger but these-things considering to-friends their
foris locum, qui sibi ab eis solatia petant, permisso
outside a-place who for-themselves from them solaces might-seek with-permission
abbatis mittunt; allata autem mensæ communi imponunt. —
of-the-abbot send brought moreover on-the-table common they-place
Factum est autem, ut quidam pauperum parum quid, quod
done it-was moreover that a-certain-one of-the-poor a-little something which
ab amicis datum est, solus comederet, intrantesque cum eum
by friends given was alone ate and-those-entering when him
ob hoc increparent, ille quidem avide comedens: Si calceus,
for this rebuked he indeed greedily eating if a-shoe
inquit, dividitur, nemo calciatur. Quod cum risum astantibus
he-says is-divided no-one is-shod which when laughter in-the-bystanders
moveret, decanus tamen, ut audivit, ingemuit, nihilque
moved the-dean however as he-heard groaned and-nothing
fame improbius et sacrius esse respondit. Cumque
than-hunger more-shameless and more-accursed to-be answered and-when
palam factum sit multis eulogium hoc monachi esurientis,
openly made it-was to-many saying this of-the-monk hungering

Ruodmannus id in pharetra sua reposuit, et ut occasione data
Ruodmann it in quiver his laid-up and that with-occasion given
eo in fratres uteretur jaculo, ut postea fecit, reservavit.
with-it against the-brothers he-might-use dart as afterward he-did reserved
Purchardus igitur abbas senio jam gravescens corilum illam
Burchard therefore the-abbot by-old-age already growing-heavy hazel that
antiquam, sub qua Gallus quondam vepribus corruens: Hæc
ancient under which Gall once into-the-briers falling this
requies mea cecinit, consulto episcopo succidit, capellaque
rest my sang with-consulted the-bishop cut-down and-with-a-chapel
ædificata aram in loco arboris statuit; fenestellam quoque ad
built an-altar in the-place of-the-tree set a-little-window also to
meridiem ei humilem imposuit, ad quam septo deforis
the-south in-it low placed at which with-an-enclosure outside
aptato semet includere et finem vitæ, abbatia relicta, devovit
fitted himself to-enclose and the-end of-life with-the-abbey left vowed
exspectare. Parata capella et in honore sanctæ crucis, sed
to-await prepared the-chapel and in honor of-the-holy cross but
et sancti Galli per Chuonradum nostrum dedicata, vir ille
also of-Saint Gall through Conrad our dedicated man that
sanctus septo jam illi tabulata per artifices præparans,
holy for-the-enclosure already to-it planks through craftsmen preparing
Notkerum pro se, Ekkehardo favente, Notkeri medici ex
Notker for himself with-Ekkehard favoring of-Notker the-physician from
sorore nepotem, eligi rogavit et regibus eum pro se
(his)-sister the-nephew to-be-elected asked and to-the-kings him for himself
inthronizandum direxit. Ipse autem, episcopo Chuonrado,
to-be-enthroned directed he-himself moreover with-the-bishop Conrad
ne tantæ teneritudinis senex includeretur, obstante,
lest of-so-great tenderness an-old-man should-be-enclosed opposing
regis jussu loca abbatibus a Karolo decreta, multa
of-the-king by-the-command the-places to-the-abbots by Charles decreed much

reluctatus, Ekkehardo pro se curante, retinuit et caminatam
having-resisted with-Ekkehard for him caring retained and the-heated-room
antecessorum abbatum quietis gratia tandem invitus introiit.
of-the-preceding abbots of-rest for-the-sake at-last unwilling entered
Nisi enim quod penuriam timuerat, nil per se habere
unless for that want he-had-feared nothing by himself to-have
volebat. Supervixit autem suffecto tandem suo et Ymmonem
he-wished survived moreover substituted at-last his and Immo
quoque fore edixit abbatem. Episcopus autem, semper
also to-be-about-to-be proclaimed abbot the-bishop moreover always
intimus ejus, defungi eum parantem oleo sancto adveniens
intimate his to-die him preparing with-oil holy arriving
unxit; defunctum vero multorum lacrimis prosecutum, maxime
anointed dead but of-many with-tears attended most
pauperum, ante hostium capellæ, quam ipse: Hæc requies
of-the-poor before the-door of-the-chapel which he-himself this rest
mea vocabat, solemniter sepelivit, Ekkehardo decano, qui,
my called solemnly buried with-Ekkehard the-dean who
ut diximus, cor suum erat, ante annum quidem modo,
as we-said heart his was before a-year indeed in-the-manner
quo jam dixisse meminimus, assumpto.
in-which already to-have-said we-remember taken-up

Capitula 123–125

NOTKER THE PHYSICIAN AND GERALD

Notker Peppercorn paints the church after the fire, composes antiphons and hymns, and asks the dean Ekkehard for a word to fit a meter. As a physician he sees through Duke Henry's trick of sending a chamber-woman's urine as his own, foretelling a birth, and he foretells Bishop Kaminold's smallpox and cures it without a mark. Gerald, master of the schools from his subdiaconate, is made the people's priest by an old privilege, which the chronicler says the envious bishops and their archpriests now trample; old and worn, he confesses to the brothers, lies down on hay, greets someone unseen, and dies smiling, buried near Notker the Stammerer.

De Notkero vero, doctore, pictore et medico, cum materiam
about Notker but the-teacher painter and physician although matter
grandis voluminis habeamus, succincte quidem ad alia
of-a-great volume we-have briefly indeed to other-things
festinando dicemus. Picturas quidem post arsuram plures
by-hastening we-shall-speak pictures indeed after the-burning many
Gallo fecerat, ut videre est in januis et laqueari ecclesiæ
for-Gall he-had-made as to-see it-is on the-doors and the-ceiling of-the-church
et libris quibusdam. Sed hæc quid sunt ad mille alia,
and in-books certain but these-things what are to a-thousand others
quæ dictans et medens insigniverat? Fecit enim Otmaro
which composing and healing he-had-made-notable he-made for for-Othmar
decoras illas antiphonas et ymnum: Rector æterni metuende
beautiful those antiphons and the-hymn Rector æterni metuende
secli et quedam susceptacula regum et ymnum de una
secli and certain receptions of-kings and the-hymn about one
virgine non martyre, id est Ymnum beatæ virgini; in
virgin not martyr that is The-hymn to-the-blessed virgin in
quo cum de quodam uno verbo, quod metro congrueret,
which when about a-certain one word which to-the-meter might-fit

diutius hesitaret, Ekkehardo decano, ut id de suo adderet,
for-longer he-hesitated to-Ekkehard the-dean that it from his-own he-might-add
inclinatus, ille autem continuo: Ovis, inquiens, ad capram
bowing he moreover at-once the-sheep saying to the-goat
lanam petitum venit, sed ut labilem poneret, emonet.
wool to-seek comes but that labilem he-should-place advises
Hæc pro exemplo humilitatis et caritatis patrum præterire
these-things for an-example of-humility and of-charity of-the-fathers to-pass-over
non potui. Medendo autem mira et stupenda frequenter
not I-could by-healing moreover wonderful and astonishing often
fecerat opera, quoniam et in afforismis medicinalibus,
he-had-made works since both in aphorisms medicinal
speciebus quoque et antidotis et prognosticis Ypocraticis
in-species also and antidotes and in-prognostics Hippocratic
singulariter erat instructus, ut in urina Henrici ducis versute
singularly he-was instructed as in the-urine of-Henry the-duke craftily
se decipere temptantis apparuit. Qui cum ei urinam
himself to-deceive trying appeared who when to-him the-urine
mulierculæ cujusdam cameralis pro sua inspiciendam
of-a-little-woman certain of-the-chamber for his-own to-be-inspected
mitteret: Miraculum, ait, nunc et portentum Deus facturus
he-sent a-miracle he-says now and a-portent God about-to-make
est, quod nunquam est auditum, ut vir utero
is which never has-been heard that a-man from-the-womb
pareret; nam dux iste circa trigesimum ab hodie diem
should-give-birth for the-duke this about the-thirtieth from today day
filium ex utero suo editum ad ubera suspendet. Erubuit
a-son from womb his brought-forth to the-breasts will-hang blushed
tandem depræhensus ille viroque Dei, ne se medicare
at-last caught he and-to-the-man of-God lest himself to-treat
renueret — nam ad hoc adductus erat—, munera misit,
he-should-refuse for for this brought he-was gifts sent

feminamque illam virginem putatam medicus Sanctigallensis
and-the-woman that a-virgin thought the-physician of-Saint-Gall
supplicem sibi reduxit in gratiam; nam ut prognosticus
suppliant to-himself brought-back into favor for as prognosticator
ille prædixerat, ipsa partum dederat. Sed et episcopo
that had-foretold she-herself birth had-given but also to-bishop
nostro Kaminoldo cum fluorem narium diuturnum adductus
our Kaminold when a-flow of-the-nostrils long-lasting brought
citissime sedaret, odorato cruore, variolam morbum die
most-quickly he-stopped with-smelled blood smallpox the-disease on-day
ei tercia prædixit futurum. Sed pustulas ille die dicta
to-him third he-foretold about-to-be but the-pustules he on-the-day named
sibi erumpentes cum eum restringere peteret: Enimvero,
on-himself breaking-out when him to-restrain he-asked indeed
ait, facere potero; sed nolo, quia necis tuæ reus karrinas
he-says to-do I-shall-be-able but I-will-not because of-death your guilty quarantines
tot ferre non potero, quia, si restrinxero, morti te
so-many to-bear not I-shall-be-able because if I-shall-have-restrained to-death you
trado. Pustulasque tandem eruptas ita in brevi sanaverat,
I-hand-over and-the-pustules at-last broken-out so in brief he-had-healed
ut nec saltim de una fuerit signabilis. Hæc pauca de
that not even from one there-was marked these few-things of
plurimis, quæ scriptor, pictor, medicus egit, quoniam iterum
very-many which the-writer painter physician did since again
nobis narrandus occurret, hic libasse sufficiat.
by-us to-be-told he-will-come-up here to-have-touched-on let-it-suffice
De Keraldo autem, non minoris materiæ viro, quoniam
about Gerald moreover not of-less matter a-man since
plura non vacat, item quedam, ut, in quantis
more-things not there-is-leisure likewise certain-things that on how-great
columnis locus Galli crebro steterit, pateat, interseram.
columns the-place of-Gall often stood it-may-be-plain I-shall-insert

Erat a subdiaconatus sui principio scolarum semper ille
he-was from of-subdiaconate his the-beginning of-the-schools always he
magister. Presbyter vero factus, prædicator altissime apertus,
the-master a-priest but made a-preacher most-loftily open
etiam episcopis aliquando præsentibus et jubendo cedentibus
even with-bishops sometimes present and in-bidding yielding
populo declamator, et ut apostolus tales vocat, propheta
to-the-people a-declaimer and as the-apostle such calls a-prophet
erat mellitissimus. Unde, ut antiquitus loci nostri mos
he-was most-honeyed whence as anciently of-place our the-custom
statutus erat, publicus populo nostro etiam presbyter positus
established was public for-people our also priest set
est, ut in ecclesia sancti Otmari omnibus, qui inter
he-was that in the-church of-Saint Othmar for-all who between
Coldaham et Sinttriaunum fluvios degunt, sinodica queque
the-Goldach and the-Sitter rivers live synodal-things all
preter disjunctiones conjugum pro episcopo faceret. Cujus
except the-separations of-spouses for the-bishop he-should-do of-which
rei privilegia cum a Johanne papa cum Salomone
thing the-privileges since from John the-pope with Salomon
episcopo nec non Karolo astipulante habeamus, invidi
the-bishop and also with-Charles assenting we-have envious
monachis nunc temporis episcopi vix nobis et nostris
toward-the-monks now of-time bishops scarcely to-us and to-our-people
halitum relinquentes, ut Salustii verbis utar, nil
breath leaving that of-Sallust the-words I-may-use nothing
nobis reliqui facere moliuntur, ministrosque odii et
for-us of-remaining to-do strive and-ministers of-hatred and
invidiæ injustæque potentiæ Holophernicos asciscunt sibi
of-envy and-of-unjust power Holofernean take to-themselves
archipresbyteros, qui animas hominum carissime appretiatas
archpriests who the-souls of-men most-dearly priced

vendant, feminas nudatas aquis immergi impudicis oculis
may-sell women stripped in-the-waters to-be-immersed with-shameless eyes
curiosi perspiciant aut grandi se pretio redimere cogant.
curious may-look-at or with-great themselves price to-redeem may-compel
Hos tales quomodo faucibus strangulati vix evaserimus,
these such how from-the-jaws strangled scarcely we-have-escaped
Purchardum secundum dicturi, plenius scribere habebimus.
Burchard the-second about-to-tell more-fully to-write we-shall-have
At Kerholdus, ut ad capacissimum sancti spiritus dolium
but Gerald that to the-most-capacious of-the-holy spirit cask
revertamur, in his et aliis mille virtutibus animo et corpore
we-may-return in these and other a-thousand virtues in-mind and in-body
diu attritus longoque senio fessus, sed non defessus, cum
long worn and-by-long old-age tired but not exhausted when
jam plebis suæ commissæ fides in eum esset certissima,
already of-the-people his entrusted the-faith in him was most-certain
si quem corpore dolentem benedicens tangeret, allevigaret,
if anyone in-body suffering blessing he-touched he-would-relieve
confessione eis quadam die data et remissione petita,
with-confession to-them on-a-certain day given and pardon sought
mox se in lectum colligere velle et in Christo emori
soon himself into bed to-gather to-wish and in Christ to-die
flens pronunciabat, et missionem ab ipsis sollicite postulans
weeping announced and dismissal from them anxiously asking
in die Domini semet utrimque videndos spem se
on the-day of-the-Lord themselves on-both-sides to-be-seen hope himself
certam habere spondebat. Exutus vero alba et revestitus
certain to-have promised stripped but of-the-alb and reclothed
clamoreque familiæ usque cancellos Galli prosecutus
and-by-the-cry of-the-household as-far-as the-chancel-rails of-Gall attended
domum infirmorum per se, nemine fultus, multisque quid
the-house of-the-sick by himself by-no-one supported and-with-many what

facere vellet mirantibus, introiit. Ibi ergo parumper
to-do he-might-wish wondering entered there therefore for-a-little
residens substerni sibi fœnum terra nuda rogabat,
sitting to-be-spread-under for-himself hay on-the-ground bare asked
superque cylicium; in quo se quasi nihil mali passus
and-upon the-haircloth on which himself as-if nothing of-evil having-suffered
reponens fratres omnes vocari rogabat. Quos cum adesse
laying the-brothers all to-be-called asked whom when to-be-present
videret, salutatis omnibus surrexit, et stans et erumpens
he-saw with-greeted all he-rose and standing and bursting
in lacrimas: Video, ait, domini et fratres mei, vocationem
into tears I-see he-says lords and brothers my calling
meam, quam semper reus ego timebam, adesse; ideoque,
my which always guilty I feared to-be-present and-therefore
quia in pium Deum nostrum confidens spero, confessione
since in pious God our trusting I-hope with-confession
coram vobis data securus abibo. Tandemque assensu
before you given secure I-shall-depart and-at-last with-the-assent
omnium confessus, indulgentiam recepit, osculatisque per
of-all having-confessed pardon received and-with-kissed through
singula omnibus, a patribus, ubi doleret, requisitus,
each all by the-fathers where he-might-ache asked
respondit: In pectore et præcordiis. Et: Utinam, inquit,
answered in the-breast and the-heart and would-that he-says
Notkerus meus adesset — erat enim ille tunc pro remediis
Notker my were-present he-was for he then for remedies
in aula regia—, et residens requiescere se velle ait. At
at the-court royal and sitting to-rest himself to-wish says but
fratrum singuli quietem illi æternam precantes præter
of-the-brothers each rest for-him eternal praying except
custodes illi datos et quos ille rogabat psalmicanos,
the-guards to-him given and whom he asked psalm-singers

domo cesserant. Ipse autem quasi nihil adhuc quidem
from-the-house withdrew he-himself moreover as-if nothing still indeed
passus: Sancte Johannes evangelista, ait, dilecte Domini,
having-suffered holy John evangelist says beloved of-the-Lord
recipe me! et capicium capiti inponens brachialeque
receive me and the-hood on-(his)-head placing and-the-sleeve
rocci subter caput revolvens super illud nobile stratum
of-(his)-frock under (his)-head rolling upon that noble bed
se recollegit, et paulisper, ut sperabant, dormiens subito:
himself gathered and for-a-little as they-hoped sleeping suddenly
Mi Domine, bene venias! ait. At illi disloqui eum,
my Lord well may-you-come he-says but they to-be-wandering him
ut ægroti solent, putantes, unus tandem ex illis: Videamus,
as the-sick are-wont thinking one at-last of them let-us-see
quid agat, ait; enimvero, quisquis fuerit, aliquem salutavit.
what he-may-do says indeed whoever he-was someone he-has-greeted
Accedentes vero quantocius ad illum oculis transversis
approaching but as-quickly-as-possible to him with-eyes turned
labiisque albidulis vident præmortuum, signumque cursim
and-lips whitish they-see dead-already and-the-signal hastily
pulsantes fratres advocant. Quibus quam concite circa se
beating the-brothers they-summon with-whom as quickly around him
astantibus per semet ipsum manus pedesque extendens
standing through him himself the-hands and-feet stretching-out
omnes apertis oculis arrisit, tandemque quasi excusso risu
all with-open eyes he-smiled and-at-last as-if with-shaken-out laughter
chachinnulans exspiravit. Tali exitu homine virtutum
chuckling he-expired with-such an-end with-the-man of-virtues
finito, erant qui dicerent: Johannes eum, cujus, dum
finished there-were who said John him whose while
viveret, assertor erat assiduus in virginitate et in omni
he-lived an-advocate he-was assiduous in virginity and in all

integritate, atque ideo absque dolore, sicut ille, assumptus
integrity and therefore without pain as he taken-up
est, quia ipsi se obiens commisit et se visitantem in
has because to-him himself dying he-committed and him visiting in
obitu salutavit. Sepultusque est non longe a Notkero
death greeted and-buried he-was not far from Notker
Balbulo, magistro quondam suo sibique amicissimo.
the-Stammerer master formerly his and-to-him most-friendly

Capitula 126–129

WALTO, CHUNIBERT, AND NOTKER'S ELECTION

The dean Walto builds the brothers' privy and routs the Saracens raiding from the Alps, whose captives starve themselves. Chunibert, scribe and painter, abbot of Altaich, returns to be dean and provost and dies when his horse throws him, chanting cum exultatione. *Notker, elected, goes with nine white-haired fathers to the Ottos at Speyer, where Sandrat is slandering them. Ekkehard wins the young Otto, who doubts his father will take so girlish an abbot; Queen Adelaide learns of Sandrat's whispers, and young Otto tells his father that the envoys have come openly with Burchard's letter.*

De Waltone decano nec non et Chuniberto, Altaha abbate,
about Walto the-dean and also and Chunibert of-Altaich abbot
grandia siquidem, quamvis non his similia, si vacaret,
great-things indeed although not to-these like if there-were-leisure
dicere poteramus. Quorum prior, quod ejus officii quidem
to-tell we-could of-whom the-former what of-his office indeed
erat, memorabilem se posteris in secessus nostri structura
was memorable himself to-posterity in of-the-privy our the-building
difficillima fecerat. Non solum autem in hoc, sed et in aliis
most-difficult had-made not only moreover in this but also in others

multis magnitudinem suam ostendit operibus. Nam Saracenos,
many greatness his he-showed works for the-Saracens
quorum natura est in montibus multum valere, cum e parte
whose nature is in mountains much to-be-strong when from the-part
australi nos et nostros adeo infestarent suis temporibus, ut
southern us and our-people so-much infested in-his times that
alpes nostras et montes optinentes etiam fratribus crucem
the-Alps our and mountains holding even on-the-brothers the-cross
circa urbem sequentibus tela proximo jacerent militumque
around the-town following darts from-nearest they-threw and-of-the-soldiers
abbatis manu, ubi laterent, investigari non possent, ipse
of-the-abbot by-the-band where they-lay-hid to-be-tracked not could he-himself
quadam nocte cum familiæ audacioribus sibi, ubi laterent,
on-a-certain night with of-the-household the-bolder to-him where they-lay-hid
proditos, invasit dormientes nactos lanceis et falcibus,
betrayed attacked sleeping found with-lances and sickles
securibus quoque, quibusdam trucidatis, quibusdam quoque
axes also with-some slaughtered with-some also
captis, ceteros fuga lapsos insequi inane duxit, cum capris
captured the-others by-flight escaped to-pursue vain thought since than-goats
fugatiores montes percurrerint; quos autem ceperat,
more-fleeing the-mountains they-ran-through whom moreover he-had-captured
vinctos in monasterium ante se egerat. Qui tamen ipsi
bound into the-monastery before himself had-driven who however they-themselves
manducare nec bibere volentes omnes perierant. Hæc
to-eat nor to-drink wishing all perished these-things
de tragedia ejus temporis et de Waltonis magnitudine
about the-tragedy of-that time and about of-Walto the-greatness
tetigisse sufficiat; nam si miseriam omnem, quam nostrates
to-have-touched let-it-suffice for if the-misery all which our-people
a Saracenis sunt passi, percurrerem, volumen efficerem.
from the-Saracens have suffered I-should-run-through a-volume I-would-make

At Chunibertus, si extrema illum infortunia sinerent, inter
but Chunibert if the-last him misfortunes had-allowed among
omnes esset spectaculo dignus. Ipse enim vir ille
all would-be of-spectacle worthy he-himself for man that
erat, cui generis nobilitatem plurima, quæ in illum
was for-whom of-birth the-nobility very-many which on him
Deus congesserat, dona quam maxime nobilitabant, scriptor
God had-heaped gifts as most ennobled a-writer
directissimus, doctor summe planus, pictor ita decorus, ut
most-straight a-teacher supremely plain a-painter so becoming as
in laquearis exterioris sancti Galli ecclesiæ circulo videre
on of-the-ceiling outer of-Saint Gall of-the-church the-circle to-see
est. Hic ab Henrico duce Salzpurgis doctrinis studere
it-is this-one by Henry the-duke at-Salzburg in-teachings to-study
ab Kraloo postulatus post annos aliquot abbatiam Altaha
from Craloh requested after years some the-abbey of-Altaich
promeruit. Ubi cum quot annos præsset, tædio,
earned where when for-how-many years he-presided by-weariness
quod sancti Galli claustro tam diu careret, corde tactus,
that of-Saint Gall the-cloister so long he-lacked in-heart touched
abbatiam reliquit claustrumque suum ægre exspectatus revisit.
the-abbey left and-cloister his hardly awaited revisited
Fit itaque in annum decanus noster, et quia quotannis
becomes and-so for a-year dean our and because yearly
more Romano officia apud nos mutari solent, propter
in-the-manner Roman the-offices among us to-be-changed are-wont on-account-of
tutelam cognatorum suorum, qui ibi abundabant, coactus, in
the-protection of-kinsmen his who there abounded compelled in
Priscouve constituitur præpositus. Ubi cum multa erronea
the-Breisgau is-appointed provost where when many erroneous-things
ad unguem corrigeret, monasterium aliquando cum reverti
to the-nail he-corrected the-monastery sometime when to-return

parasset, circa villam Wilaham cum Kerhardo post
he-had-prepared near the-estate Wila with Gerhard afterward
abbate, ut psalterii, quod reliquum erat, jam pransus
abbot that of-the-psalter what remaining was already having-lunched
absolveret, præivit. Ministri autem, morum ejus non
he-might-complete went-ahead the-servants moreover of-the-manners his not
ignari, sibimet a longe in equis curracibus luserant,
ignorant among-themselves from afar on horses running had-played
tandemque post illum accelerabant. Ambulator autem, cui
and-at-last after him hastened the-pacer moreover on-which
ipse insederat, alacritatem equorum post se sentiens caput
he-himself had-sat the-liveliness of-the-horses after itself feeling the-head
concutiens exultare cœpit, atque ille, cum eum urgueret,
shaking to-exult began and it when it he-urged
ne curreret, exiliens gravem senio et corpore virum
lest it-should-run leaping-out heavy with-old-age and in-body the-man
dejecerat. Erat autem in ore ejus versus ille, ut
had-thrown-down was moreover in the-mouth his verse that as
ajebant: Venientes autem venient cum exultatione, quod
they-said Venientes autem venient cum exultatione which
exultatione clamose, timore casus perculsus, ultimum dixit.
exultatione loudly with-fear of-the-fall struck last said
Corruens autem et quam cito resurgens, Gerhardus illum,
falling moreover and as quickly rising Gerhard him
cum iterum recideret, equo descendens retinuit et caput
when again he-fell-back from-the-horse dismounting held and the-head
ejus residens in sinum suum reclinavit. Sicque, viris
his sitting into bosom his reclined and-so with-the-men
pro aqua currentibus, spiritum ex alto resumens obiit. Hic
for water running the-spirit from on-high taking-back he-died this
finis Cuniberti, statura proceri et canitie venerandi et,
the-end of-Chunibert of-stature tall and with-white-hair venerable and

ut plurimis visum est, hominis sanctissimi. Corpus vero
as to-very-many seemed it-has of-a-man most-holy the-body but
ejus allatum monasterio plurimis lacrimis sepultum est in
his brought to-the-monastery with-very-many tears buried was in
cimiterio. — Necesse est autem, ut ordine præpostera sint,
the-cemetery necessary it-is moreover that in-order inverted be
quæ dicimus, quia quæ simul facta sunt, simul
the-things-which we-say because what-things together done were together
dici non possunt; propterea, unde digressi sumus, redeamus.
to-be-said not can therefore whence digressed we-have let-us-return
Notkerus electus cum litteris Purchardi Ottonibus Spiram,
Notker elected with the-letter of-Burchard to-the-Ottos to-Speyer
comitibus novem de patribus plerisque canitie venerandis
with-companions nine of the-fathers mostly with-white-hair venerable
ipse decimus, sed regibus non adeo, ut præcessor quondam
he-himself the-tenth but to-the-kings not so as predecessor formerly
ejus erat, acceptus. Affuit illis advenientibus cito Ekkehart,
his was acceptable was-present to-them arriving quickly Ekkehard
nichil rerum, priusquam aderant, præscius, multumque
of-nothing of-the-things before they-were-present foreknowing and-much
anxius, quoniam Sandrat, quem prius diximus, tunc aderat
anxious since Sandrat whom before we-mentioned then was-present
et obloquia quædam iterum in nos susurrari regibus
and slanders certain again against us to-be-whispered to-the-kings
sciverat, animo fluctuabat. Consilio tamen in brevi habito,
he-had-known in-mind he-wavered with-counsel however in brief held
litteras sumpsit ad se regibus hora apta præsentandas.
the-letter he-took to himself to-the-kings at-an-hour fit to-be-presented
At Otto junior casu cum Ottone duce amplexu mutuo
but Otto the-younger by-chance with Otto the-duke in-embrace mutual
non procul steterat, et Otto dux regi Rupertum
not far had-stood and Otto the-duke to-the-king Rupert

subdecanum, gravitatis monachum, videns: Nunquam, ait,
the-subdean of-gravity a-monk seeing never he-says
leporem ille curriculo capiet. At ipse id audiens inclinatus
a-hare he in-running will-catch but he-himself this hearing bowed
gratias egit. Et Otto rex: Ve tibi misero, ait, ipse
thanks gave and Otto the-king woe to-you wretch he-says he-himself
enim audivit. Et Ekkehardo approximanti Otto rex: Qui
for heard and to-Ekkehard approaching Otto the-king who
sunt, inquit, magister, patres illi? — Sanctigallenses, ille ait,
are he-says master fathers those of-Saint-Gall he says
domine mi, sunt, et hodie auxilio tuo juvandi. Cumque
lord my are and today by-help your to-be-helped and-when
pedes amborum ipsi peterent, Ekkehardus causam
the-feet of-both they-themselves sought Ekkehard the-cause
eorum in brevi perorat. Et rex: Deus, ait, in cujus manu
their in brief pleads and the-king God he-says in whose hand
corda sunt regum, faciat vobis leonem meum mitem et
the-hearts are of-kings may-make for-you lion my mild and
placabilem! — sic enim patrem vocabat—, et dimissis illis,
placable so for (his)-father he-called and with-dismissed them
magistro in aurem, quis illorum electus sit, dicit. Quem præ
to-the-master into the-ear which of-them elected be he-says whom before
se ferebant, ipse est. Et ille: Illum delicatum juvenem? ait.
them they-bore he it-is and he that delicate youth he-says
Enimvero, ut pater meus ad hoc consentiat, ut ipse eum
indeed that father my to this should-consent as you-yourself him
nosti, non puto. Talibus viris canitie venerandis sancto
you-know not I-think with-such men with-white-hair venerable for-Saint
Gallo habundantibus, juvenem puellæ similem nobis quidem
Gall abounding a-youth to-a-girl like to-us indeed
mittere! Convenite adhuc, ait, et te, qui homines nosti,
to-send gather again he-says and with-you who men know

consiliante graviorem eligite; aliter enim vos, ut petitis,
counseling a-weightier elect otherwise for you as you-ask
leoni meo sistere non audeo. — Privilegium, Ekkehardus ait,
to-lion my to-present not I-dare the-privilege Ekkehard says
patribus a Karolo datum et per vos solidatum nos paucos
to-the-fathers by Charles given and through you made-solid us few
quemquam eligere non patitur. Præterea de litteris abbatis
anyone to-elect not allows besides about the-letter of-abbot
nostri, fratris tui, quid fiet? Nam Nokeri medici, tibi et
our brother your what will-be-done for of-Notker the-physician to-you and
patri tuo semper bene meriti et dilecti, ex sorore nepos
to-father your always well deserving and beloved from (his)-sister nephew
et ab Ekkehardo, avunculo meo, mecum nutritus et doctus,
and by Ekkehard uncle my with-me nourished and taught
virtutibus patriis semper assueverat, et nisi virtutum
to-virtues ancestral always had-been-accustomed and unless of-virtues
virum nossent, nunquam eum frater tuus et avunculus meus
a-man they-knew never him brother your and uncle my
cum ceteris, ut ipse homines nosti, dominum eligerent.
with the-others as you-yourself men know as-lord would-elect
Audito rex rationis tantæ responso, maxime autem de
with-heard the-king of-reasoning so-great the-answer most moreover about
Nokero, mitescere tandem cœpit; litteras tamen neque
Notker to-grow-mild at-last began the-letter however nor
ipsos postea patri sisti, priusquam ipse
them-themselves afterward to-(his)-father to-be-presented before he-himself
illum præstrueret et animo ejus explorato ad alloquia
him should-prepare and with-the-mind his explored for the-addresses
eos leonis sui præpararet, placere sibi ajebat. Vocatis tandem
them of-lion his should-prepare to-please him he-said with-called at-last
ipsis, bonæ spei esse monuit et nocte precibus invigilare,
them of-good hope to-be he-warned and by-night in-prayers to-keep-vigil

ut, quoniam invidos haberent, Deus eos juvaret. Monet
that since envious-men they-had God them might-help he-warns
deinde Ekkehardum, mensa cenæ levata cum litteris sibi
then Ekkehard with-the-table of-supper raised with the-letter to-him
commode non deesse. Qua levata, patris et matris
conveniently not to-be-lacking with-which raised of-the-father and of-the-mother
secretum postulat alloquium. Matre autem de mensa sua
a-secret asks talk with-the-mother moreover from table her
veniente, ad hostium occurrens, ut sancto Gallo faveret,
coming at the-door meeting that to-Saint Gall she-should-favor
Ekkehardus in aurem rogat; audiverat enim a dicentibus,
Ekkehard into the-ear asks he-had-heard for from those-telling
Sandratum adventum monachorum sancti Galli magno Ottoni
Sandrat the-arrival of-the-monks of-Saint Gall to-the-great Otto
nec non et omnem causam eorum clam et sinistrorsum
and also and all cause their secretly and in-sinister-fashion
dixisse et, sui memorem fore, pedibus petitis rogasse.
to-have-told and of-himself mindful to-be with-feet sought to-have-asked
Quod Ottoni etiam suo silenter, patre assidente, paucis
which to-Otto also her silently with-the-father sitting-by in-few-words
nudat. Silentio tandem, omnibus aliis cœnaculo
she-lays-bare with-silence at-last with-all others from-the-dining-room
eliminatis, facto Otto filius ait: Sunt hic, domine mi, nuntii
put-out made Otto the-son says there-are here lord my envoys
filii tui quondam abbatis Purchardi, Dei jussu diu infirmi.
of-son your formerly abbot Burchard of-God by-command long sick
Quid autem postulent, experiri habebis. — Scio, ait pater,
what moreover they-may-ask to-learn you-will-have I-know says the-father
eos matutinos quidem affuisse; sed quare se a
them in-the-morning indeed to-have-been-present but why themselves from
meo conspectu celaverint, nescio. Sunt meorum quidam, qui
my sight they-concealed I-know-not there-are of-mine some who

eos non simpliciter venisse asserant; quoniam qui ambulat
them not simply to-have-come assert since who walks
simpliciter, ambulat confidenter. Et ille: Malo suo, pater,
simply walks confidently and he to-evil their father
ait, valeant odibiles illi, qui te acutiis suis a bono
he-says may-fare hateful those who you with-sharpnesses their from the-good
avertere moliuntur. Et regina: Vide, ait, domine semper
to-turn-away strive and the-queen see she-says lord always
amande, ne talibus, quales filius tuus notat, inconsulte et
to-be-loved lest to-such of-what-sort son your marks rashly and
nimium assenseris. Nam et prius Dei servos illos imperialiter
too-much you-assent for also before of-God servants those imperially
quidem impetitos, sicut ab ipsis quibusdam, quos misimus,
indeed assailed as from them certain whom we-sent
audivi, sine causa molestavimus. Et Otto: Ecce, pater, ut
I-heard without cause we-troubled and Otto lo father as
ipse illos nosti, assunt ex eis viri venerandi a filio
you-yourself them you-know are-present of them men venerable by son
tuo pœne præmortuo missi, quos cum me quidem, ut eos
your almost dead-already sent who when me indeed that them
tibi sisterem, præpeterent, paucis cum eis locutus in
to-you I-should-present asked-first in-few-words with them having-spoken into
crastinum ipse viros distuli; et ideo mentiti sunt, qui tibi
the-morrow I-myself the-men put-off and therefore lied have who to-you
dixerant, duplici illos animo quicquam machinari. Nam et
had-said with-double them mind anything to-contrive for also
litteras, quas tibi missas manu habebant, ego recepi, et ecce
the-letter which to-you sent in-hand they-had I received and lo
ipsas; quas cum audiveris, si clandestini assunt, videbis.
itself which when you-shall-have-heard whether secret they-are you-will-see

Capitula 130–132

NOTKER BEFORE THE EMPEROR

Otto the elder has the letter read: the dying Burchard asks that Notker, trained by the best of men, succeed him while he lives. Ekkehard pleads for him, and Otto agrees to see the envoys at dawn. Ekkehard, who has taken all this down in shorthand, encourages the fathers; at lauds Otto jests with him about the lion's open eyes, and Bishop Balzo answers with the Song of Songs. Waning, Chunibert, and the subdean Rupert speak for the house, Otto mocks the choice of so young a man among white heads, and Rupert answers that among so many Marys no Martha could be found.

Et a patre sigillum recludere jussus, ipsi illud — nam sancti
and by (his)-father the-seal to-unlock bidden to-him it for of-Saint
Galli semifacies erat — in manum dabat; quod ille sollicite
Gall a-half-face it-was into the-hand gave which he carefully
intuitus: Filii mei, pauperis Domini, imaginem, ait, esse
having-looked-at of-son my of-the-poor-man of-the-Lord the-image he-says to-be
putavi. Sed tu quidem, quid litteræ velint, insinua! Hæc verba:
I-thought but you indeed what the-letter may-wish insinuate these words
Summæ post Deum majestatis dominis meis regnum æternum
of-highest after God majesty lords my a-kingdom eternal
Purchardus abbas semivivus. Annis meis et senio finem
Burchard abbot half-alive with-years my and old-age the-end
mihi vitæ in januis habentibus, ne pastor oves, pater filios
for-me of-life at the-doors having lest a-shepherd the-sheep a-father the-sons
improvisos relinquam, domini mei, privilegium gratiæ vestræ
unforeseen I-may-leave lords my the-privilege of-favor your
me sollicitavit. Misi itaque vobis, fidutiam vestri habens,
me has-urged I-have-sent and-so to-you confidence in-you having
dilectum meum mihi adhuc vivo sufficiendum, a viris virtutum
beloved my to-me still living to-be-substituted by men of-virtues

optimis moribus assuefactum, sancto Gallo, ut confido, vobisque
to-best manners accustomed to-Saint Gall as I-trust and-to-you
placiturum. Misi autem vobis et testes meos ter
about-to-please I-have-sent moreover to-you also witnesses my three-times
tres idoneos, qui eum coram vobis, ferula mea reddita et
three fit who him before you with-staff my returned and
indulgentia mihi petita, singuli eligant. Valeat regnum vestrum
pardon for-me sought each may-elect may-fare kingdom your
et imperium in Domino dominorum. Amen. Perlecta
and empire in the-Lord of-lords amen with-read-through
epistola, Otto eam patri et matri fidus interpres Saxonice
the-letter Otto it to-(his)-father and mother faithful interpreter into-Saxon
reponens insinuavit, et ut petita facerent, amore
putting insinuated and that the-things-asked they-should-do out-of-love
ejus, quem posthac visuri non sint, sollicite rogavit. Et
of-him whom hereafter about-to-see not they-are carefully asked and
Ekkehardus: Meminere vos, domini, Nokeri medici, ejus, qui
Ekkehard remember you lords of-Notker the-physician of-him who
eligendus est, avunculi; sed et Ekkehardi vestri, qui eum, nisi
to-be-elected is the-uncle but also of-Ekkehard your who him unless
idoneus esset, vobis dirigi nunquam consentiret. Tandem
fit be-were to-you to-be-directed never would-consent at-last
post verba multa Otto pater: Cras, ait, diluculo appareant
after words many Otto the-father tomorrow he-says at-dawn let-them-appear
in conspectu meo, ut, illo cum ceteris viso, decernam, quid
in the-sight my that with-him with the-rest seen I-may-decide what
faciam. Et Otto filius: Homo, inquit, videt in facie, Deus in
I-shall-do and Otto the-son man he-says sees in the-face God in
corde; neque enim ille, ita ut magister meus, est aspectabilis,
the-heart nor for he so as master my is good-looking
neque, ut Sandratus vester se exhibet, despectibilis. Et
nor as Sandrat your himself shows contemptible and

ille: Utinam, fili mi, ait, omnes monachi nostri Sandrati
he would-that son my he-says all monks our of-Sandrat
animum gererent! At ille monitu Ekkehardi, ne patrem
the-mind bore but he at-the-warning of-Ekkehard lest (his)-father
commoveret, conticuit, sicque pater colloquium diremit.
he-should-disturb fell-silent and-so the-father the-talk broke-up
Ekkehardus autem, notularum peritissimus, pæne omnia
Ekkehard moreover of-shorthand-notes most-skilled almost all
hæc eisdem notavit in tabula verbis. Quibus Otto suus
these-things in-the-same noted on a-tablet words with-which Otto his
postea, ut ipse nobis retulit, multum delectatus est sibi
afterward as he-himself to-us reported much delighted was to-him
relectis, cum ipse præter notulas nichil in tabula viderit.
reread since he-himself except the-notes nothing on the-tablet saw
At Ekkehardus suos, ubi hospitabantur, continuo petiit,
but Ekkehard his-people where they-were-lodging at-once sought
optimæque spei fore Ottonis sui eos verbis monuit.
and-of-best hope to-be of-Otto his them by-the-words warned
Cumque ab eo, si sui aput reges mentio aliqua fuerit,
and-when from him whether of-them with the-kings mention any had-been
quærerent: Magna, ait, si mihi dicere liceat; sacramentum
they-asked great-things he-says if to-me to-tell it-were-allowed the-sacrament
enim regis celare honorificum est. Sed hoc tamen vobis
for of-the-king to-conceal honorable it-is but this however to-you
pandere audeo, quia sollicitum aput patrem filium habuistis
to-disclose I-dare that an-anxious with the-father the-son you-had
interpretem. Venturi enim estis in conspectum patris
interpreter about-to-come for are into the-sight of-the-father
diluculo ipsius edicto. Sed ejus horæ et articuli fortunam
at-dawn by-his edict but of-that hour and moment the-fortune
committere habemus Deo. Veniunt illi, precibus nocte muniti,
to-commit we-have to-God come they by-prayers at-night fortified

in aulam matutini, patre cum filio jam laudes, quarum
into the-court in-the-morning with-the-father with the-son already the-lauds of-which
Ekkehardus semper curam egerat, audientibus. At Palzone,
Ekkehard always care had-taken hearing but with-Balzo
loci episcopo, preces recitante, Ekkehardus hostium
of-the-place the-bishop the-prayers reciting Ekkehard the-door
pandet, ut videat, si assint, cumque eos conspiceret,
will-open that he-may-see if they-be-present and-when them he-beheld
restans paulisper Ottoni significavit. Pater autem eum
staying-behind for-a-little to-Otto signaled the-father moreover him
egredi volentem clamide retinuit, parumque subrisit. Et ille:
to-go-out wishing by-the-cloak held-back and-a-little smiled and he
Nunquam oculi perspicatiores, leo mi, erant, quam tui. —
never eyes sharper lion my were than yours
Enimvero ita et de leone legitur, Ekkehardus ait, quia oculis
indeed so also of the-lion it-is-read Ekkehard says that with-eyes
apertis dormit. Et Palzo: Unde sponsus ait ecclesiæ: Ego
open it-sleeps and Balzo whence the-bridegroom says of-the-church I
dormio et cor meum vigilat. Sed, domine pie, foris te
sleep and heart my wakes but lord pious outside you
exspectant, qui talia dormientes melius, quam vos vigilantes,
await who such-things sleeping better than you waking
sciant. — Unde tu illos, ait, nosti? — Quare illos, ait,
know whence you them he-says you-know why them he-says
non sciam, inter quos nutritus et, quæ optima scio, sum
not I-should-know among whom nourished and which best-things I-know I-was
doctus? Et ille: Scio, ait, quia pauper et mendicus quondam
taught and he I-know he-says that poor and a-beggar formerly
circuiens terram peram paupertatis tuæ mendicando farciebas.
going-around the-earth the-wallet of-poverty your by-begging you-stuffed
— Non nego, ait; sed quod illi dabant, in summis ponebam.
not I-deny he-says but what they gave in the-highest I-placed

Tandem ille terribilis egressus, cum Ottonem ducem cum
at-last that terrible-one gone-out when Otto the-duke with
eis offendisset assistentem, arridens ei: Bôn mân habere
them he-had-come-upon standing-by smiling at-him Bôn mân habere
Romanisce dixit. Dein et eos salvere ait. Ille etiam acclinis
in-Romance said then also them to-be-well he-says he also bowing
cum ipsis gratias egit. Waninc vero primus ordine, si loqui
with them thanks gave Waning but first in-order if to-speak
liceret, quæsiit. Fidenter, Otto filius ait. — Abbas noster,
it-were-allowed asked confidently Otto the-son says abbot our
domini, invalidus, multum in vobis, sed et in domina nostra
lords infirm much in you but also in lady our
confisus, nos ad pietatem vestram transmisit et gratiam,
trusting us to piety your has-sent-over and favor
regnum vobis optans sempiternum et imperium. Causam
a-kingdom for-you wishing everlasting and empire the-cause
autem adventus nostri, quoniam litteris ab eo mandatam
moreover of-the-arrival our since in-a-letter by him committed
attulimus, nos forsitan oportet, ut interim, dum legantur,
we-have-brought us perhaps it-befits that meanwhile while it-is-read
sileamus. — Litterarum, Otto pater ait, molimina audivi;
we-be-silent of-the-letter Otto the-father says the-efforts I-have-heard
sed eum, dum vivit, deponere nescio, si possit decere. Et
but him while he-lives to-depose I-know-not if it-could to-befit and
Cunibertus propius regibus accedens: At nos, domini, modum
Chunibert nearer to-the-kings approaching but we lords a-manner
forsitan optimum scimus, quo vos deceat efficere, quod
perhaps best know by-which you it-may-befit to-accomplish what
pater noster et nos ejus jussu postulamus. Sit ille dominus
father our and we at-his command ask let-be he lord
noster omni tempore, quo vivit. Quem subrogari sibi
our for-all the-time in-which he-lives whom to-be-substituted for-himself

vult, nihil capitale absque ejus nutu faciat, tantummodo,
he-wishes nothing capital without his nod let-him-do only
quod valde ille benivolentissimus formidat, ne nos moriens
what very he most-benevolent dreads lest us dying
orphanos relinquat. Est enim ille magnæ spei vir, quem
orphans he-leave is for he of-great hope a-man whom
destinat. — Illoque conticente, Otto pater: Quem tamen
he-destines and-with-him silent Otto the-father whom however
mihi nepos meus, inquit, miserit, monstrate! — At pariter illi
to-me nephew my he-says has-sent show but together they
Nokerum in ultimis, ut ordo ejus erat, stantem produxerant.
Notker in the-last as rank his was standing brought-forward
Et pater in aurem filio: Modo, ait, quoniam viros
and the-father into the-ear to-(his)-son now he-says since men
disertos inter illos video, quid dicere velint, probare volo.
eloquent among them I-see what to-say they-may-wish to-test I-wish
Et Ekkehardus audiens: Aliud, ait, domine mi, curato;
and Ekkehard hearing another-thing he-says lord my take-care
absque responso enim illos non invenies. — Et ille: Istene
without answer for them not you-will-find and he this-one
est, quem ætate vobis quasi filium eligere mihi proponitis?
is whom in-age to-you as-if a-son to-elect to-me you-propose
O maturitatem vestram et pæne omnibus vobis sparsam
O ripeness your and almost on-all of-you scattered
canitiem, abbatem vestrum inter tot canutos, qui sibi
white-hair abbot your among so-many white-haired-men who for-himself
possit subrogari, invenire non potuisse! — Et Rupertus,
could to-be-substituted to-find not to-have-been-able and Rupert
quem dixi, subdecanus: Errasti, domine mi rex, ait,
whom I-mentioned the-subdean you-have-erred lord my king he-says
et oppido erras. Inter tot utique Marias optimam partem
and very you-err among so-many surely Marys the-best part

dudum eligentes Martham nec unam quidem, quæ sollicita
long-since choosing a-Martha not one indeed who anxious
sit et circa frequens ministerium satagere velit, nepos
be and about much serving to-busy-herself might-wish nephew
tuus invenire potuit. Ideoque talibus relictis ad minorem
your to-find could and-therefore with-such-ones left to younger
ætatem descendit, et optimam, mihi crede, si eam digneris,
age he-came-down and the-best to-me believe if her you-deign
invenit. — Ad hæc pater: Ut video, tu ipse dignior illo.
he-found to these-things the-father as I-see you yourself worthier than-he

Capitula 133–135

NOTKER MADE ABBOT

Otto, unwilling, thinks of giving Saint Gall to a regular abbot, Sandrat; Ekkehard falls at his feet and invokes Charlemagne's privilege, and the Ottos and the queen join him. Otto kisses every monk but Notker, asks after the one who said a divided shoe shoes no one, and gives Notker the staff on condition that he act by Burchard's, Ekkehard's, and the physician Notker's counsel. Notker is received home and is cheerful, generous, and stern: he restores discipline, has Richer gather vineyards, banishes offenders to distant estates, and, to spare the brothers his rigor, often leaves the cloister so that they may be merry, warning them to keep laymen and servants away.

Interea pater ad calciandum in caminatam ivit. Illis
meanwhile the-father for being-shod into the-heated-room went with-them
autem, ut se exspectent, jussis, ambo Ottones regem
moreover that him they-should-await bidden both Ottos the-king
comitantes, regina accita, ne tales viros diu detineret,
accompanying with-the-queen summoned lest such men long he-should-detain
rogant. At ille, in dubio se esse, ait, quid faceret, neque
ask but he in doubt himself to-be says what he-should-do nor

illum adeo placere, quem attulerant; regulam autem, quoniam
him so-much to-please whom they-had-brought the-rule moreover since
in loco illo nunquam stabilire potuerit, regularem eis
in place that never to-establish he-had-been-able a-regular for-them
aliquem ponere velle, si suadeant, ait. Et continuo filius,
someone to-set to-wish if they-should-advise he-says and at-once the-son
Sandratum eum velle, et Ekkehardus senserant. Ekkehardus
Sandrat him to-wish and Ekkehard perceived Ekkehard
autem ad pedes procidens tacitus surrexit. Et pater: Quid
moreover at the-feet falling silent rose and the-father what
petis? ait. Enimvero etiam si tibimet abbatiam illam
do-you-seek he-says indeed even if to-yourself abbey that
dari vis, absque regulari aliquo comite ab Ottone non
to-be-given you-wish without regular some companion from Otto not
ibis. — Enimvero, ille ait, ea causa, summe domine,
you-will-go indeed he says for-that cause highest lord
pedes vestros hodie non petii, nec petam. Longe aliud est,
feet your today not I-sought nor I-shall-seek far other it-is
quod vestra quidam omnium trium vice, domini et domina,
what of-yours indeed of-all three in-place lords and lady
lacrimascere etiam potero, quod cogitavi et cogito. Ubi
to-weep even I-shall-be-able what I-have-thought and think where
est veritatis semper inconvulsa firmitas, etiam apud ethnicos
is of-truth always unshaken the-firmness even among the-heathen
regum? Dico enim privilegia a Karolo sancto Gallo usque
of-kings I-say for the-privileges by Charles to-Saint Gall until
vos data; vestrum autem famulis vestris præ omnibus semper
you given yours moreover to-servants your before all always
potissimum, in quo nepos vester abbas, Ekkehardus vester et
most-powerful in which nephew your the-abbot Ekkehard your and
Nokerus cum ceteris spiritus sancti viris adeo confisi sunt et
Notker with other of-the-holy spirit men so-much trusted have and

confidunt, ut neminem alium, præter quem vobis, certissimi
trust that no-one other except whom to-you most-certain
vestri, miserant, exspectent abbatem. Ottones tandem rex
of-you had-sent they-await as-abbot the-Ottos at-last the-king
et dux surgentes, regina quoque supplice, privilegii
and the-duke rising with-the-queen also supplicating of-the-privilege
memorem fore rogant. At ille silens secumque deliberans
mindful to-be ask but he silent and-with-himself deliberating
tandemque quasi invitus, acciri homines jubet. Quibus
and-at-last as-if unwilling to-be-summoned the-men bids with-whom
coram stantibus: Propter allatum, ait ille, vestrum tunica,
before standing on-account-of brought says he of-yours with-a-tunic
qualem Benedictus quidem numquam induit, decorum, non
such-as Benedict indeed never put-on becoming not
statim vos, viri Dei, osculatus sum; osculamini igitur. Cumque
at-once you men of-God kissed I-have kiss therefore and-when
eum præire innuerent, ille vitato eo ceteros osculatus est:
him to-go-before they-nodded he with-avoided him the-others kissed has
Hora osculi ejus adhuc, inquit, forte erit. Cumque plura
the-hour of-the-kiss his still he-says perhaps will-be and-when more-things
de statu monasterii cum eis disceptasset et de moribus
about the-state of-the-monastery with them he-had-discussed and about the-manners
eorum et vita quæsivit, si adesset, qui dixisse fertur:
their and life he-asked if he-were-present who to-have-said is-reported
Si calceus dividitur, nemo calceatur, risuque suis
if a-shoe is-divided no-one is-shod and-with-laughter in-his-men
moto: Ecce iterum Ruodmannum, Ekkehardus ait, sentimus.
moved lo again Ruodmann Ekkehard says we-perceive
Quo audito: Tu dixisti, rex ait. Tandemque ferula
with-which heard you have-said the-king says and-at-last with-the-staff
recepta, abbate coram se, ut moris est, electo, condicto
received with-the-abbot before him as of-custom it-is elected with-agreement

quidem tali eam Nokero dedit, ut vivo abbate suo, sicut
indeed such it to-Notker gave that with-living abbot his as
ipse vellet, illum curaret nichilque capitale absque
he-himself might-wish him he-should-care-for and-nothing capital without
ejus nutu et Ekkehardi Nokerique consilio ageret. Et
his nod and of-Ekkehard and-of-Notker counsel he-should-do and
continuo: Meus tandem eris, ait, manibusque receptum
at-once mine at-last you-will-be he-says and-into-hands received
osculatus est. Moxque ille, evangelio allato, fidem juravit,
kissed has and-soon he with-the-gospel-book brought fealty swore
dimissoque eo in ecclesiam ad Te Deum laudamus, milites
and-with-dismissed him into the-church for Te Deum laudamus the-soldiers
Galli, qui aderant, reverso coram se accitos jurare jussit.
of-Gall who were-present returned before him summoned to-swear he-bade
Tandemque surgens in partem illum cum patribus sumpsit,
and-at-last rising into a-part him with the-fathers took
salutemque nepoti mandans et gratiam, regulæque eos
and-greeting to-(his)-nephew sending and favor and-of-the-rule them
tenorem habere qui perspiciat eis in proximo missurum,
the-tenor to-have who should-inspect to-them in the-near about-to-send
quem, quo gratantissime possent, edixit, ut receptum
whom as most-gratefully they-could be-proclaimed that received
tractarent, et re vera scirent, si sibi boni quid
they-should-treat and in-thing truly they-should-know if to-him good any
talis ille redicturus foret, in nullo se ærario suo parcere
such he about-to-report would-be in nothing himself treasury his to-spare
velle, quin eis, in quibuscumque possit, accommodaverit.
to-wish but-that to-them in whatever-things he-could he-would-accommodate
Tandemque eis missione data, si quid ab ykonomis
and-at-last to-them with-dismissal given if anything from stewards
suis victualium exigere velint, abunde dari jussit.
his of-victuals to-demand they-should-wish abundantly to-be-given he-bade

Veniens domum Nokerus, gratanter ab omnibus susceptus
coming home Notker gratefully by all received
Purchardique manu in sedem potentiæ locatus, conloquium
and-of-Burchard by-the-hand into the-seat of-power placed a-talk
in capituli domo facere basilicam egreditur, ibique in
in of-the-chapter the-house to-make the-basilica goes-out and-there in
sancti Benedicti vicem ab omnibus electus, qualem se
of-Saint Benedict place by all elected what-sort himself
mox et semper, quoad vixit, exhibuerit, partim vix
soon and always as-long-as he-lived he-showed partly scarcely
narrare, partim vix credere est. Hilaritas enim ejus,
to-tell partly scarcely to-believe it-is the-cheerfulness for his
quæ ei quondam ingenita modo quasi naturalis inerat
which to-him formerly inborn just-now as-if natural was-in
et, ut nunc temporis est, delitiis ascribatur, partim dicenda
and as now of-time it-is to-delights may-be-ascribed partly to-be-told
non est, propter quod invidi detrahere, desueti autem
not it-is on-account-of which the-envious to-detract unaccustomed moreover
cum gemitu clamare nunc poterunt: O tempora, o mores!
with groaning to-cry now will-be-able O times O manners
Enimvero cum ubertas, quæ ultimos Purchardi annos
indeed when the-plenty which the-last of-Burchard years
nobilitabat, officinas omnes monasterii, Richero Ekkehardi
ennobled the-workshops all of-the-monastery with-Richer of-Ekkehard
monitis colligente, suppleverit, largifluo in omni hilaritate
by-the-warnings gathering had-supplied for-the-lavish in all cheerfulness
viro, etiam suos Deus adeo frugibus onoraverat annos, ut
man also his God so-much with-fruits had-loaded years that

regiminis sui meritis id quivis jure asscribere possit; ut
of-rule his to-the-merits this anyone by-right to-ascribe could that
cum Tullio meliori quidem ipse concinnare potuerit metro:
with Tully better indeed he-himself to-compose could meter

O fortunatam Galli me consule cellam.
O fortunate of-Gall with-me consul cell

Paucis utique ille post adventum suum diebus elapsis,
with-a-few surely he after arrival his days elapsed
decessore suo cum allectis sanioris consilii monente,
with-predecessor his with those-chosen of-saner counsel advising
Kebonis doctrinam paulisper quidem sopitam sollicite excitavit
of-Gebo the-teaching for-a-little indeed lulled carefully roused
disciplinamque semper loco Galli inolitam recuperavit.
and-the-discipline always in-the-place of-Gall ingrained recovered
In necessariis autem, ubertate annua abundante, fratres suos
in necessities moreover with-plenty yearly abounding brothers his
omnimodis procuravit. Vineas enim, postquam ab Hadewiga
in-every-way he-provided-for vineyards for after by Hadwig
frustrati sunt, Richerus, homo sancto Gallo conquisitivus,
frustrated they-were Richer a-man for-Saint Gall acquisitive
decani sui monitis tum pretio, tum concambio tantas collegit,
of-dean his by-the-warnings now by-price now by-exchange so-many gathered
ut ubertate redundante, communi fratrum tum abbatis
that with-plenty overflowing with-the-common of-the-brothers now of-the-abbot
penu repletis, vasa vinaria non pauca in curte abbatis, deforis
pantry filled vessels for-wine not few in the-court of-the-abbot outside
quoque sub divo locarentur sub custodibus pluresque, qui
also under the-open-sky were-placed under guards and-many who
alicujus momenti in loco erant, rubeum vinum, quamvis alias
of-some weight in the-place were red wine although otherwise

bonum, præ delitiis repudiarent. Sed abbas, Cralohi de fratre
good for delights rejected but the-abbot of-Craloh from the-brother
quidem, Notkeri autem de sorore cum nepos esset, ingenita
indeed of-Notker moreover from the-sister since nephew he-was with-inborn
sibi ab utrisque severitate, partim quia sub Purchardo
to-him from both severity partly because under Burchard
vacillante liberius vixerant, partim ut fama hæc regum aures
tottering more-freely they-had-lived partly that rumor this of-the-kings the-ears
adtingeret, fratres artius in claustro, qui ejusmodi erant,
might-touch the-brothers more-tightly in the-cloister who of-that-kind were
stringere curabat, taliumque ille culpas palam sæculo factas
to-bind took-care and-of-such he the-faults openly to-the-world made
foris claustrum interdum puniverat; sed et plerumque in curtes
outside the-cloister sometimes had-punished but also mostly into courts
longius sitas pane sordidiore aquaque alendos exiliaverat.
farther situated with-bread coarser and-with-water to-be-fed had-exiled
Neque sic quidem linguas detrahentium restrinxerat, cum et
nor so indeed the-tongues of-the-detractors he-had-restrained since also
suimet patrui filium multa scientia inflatum Furintouvam,
of-his-own uncle the-son with-much knowledge puffed-up to-Furtwangen
alterum autem Nechirburc diu religaverit. Pro quibus eum
another moreover at-Neckarburg long he-confined for which-things him
et aliis quidem similibus per nuntios et litteras cum
also for-other indeed like-things through messengers and letters when
reges regratiassent, non tamen aput eos secure tutus esse
the-kings had-thanked not however with them securely safe to-be
longo tempore poterat; quod in loco suo post apparebit.
for-long time could which in place its afterward will-appear
Talis ille cum in claustro fuisset, laicis quidem et
such he when in the-cloister he-had-been to-laymen indeed and
militibus et famulis longe alius erat. Milites quidem, quando
soldiers and servants far other was the-soldiers indeed when

sibi absque fratribus esse vacabat, intus et foris mensæ
to-him without the-brothers to-be it-was-free within and outside of-table
suæ propositores et pincernas ebdomadarios habere solebat
his setters-out and cupbearers weekly to-have he-was-wont
disciplinanterque sibi ab eis ministrari solebat. Filios
and-in-disciplined-fashion to-himself by them to-be-served he-was-wont the-sons
autem aliquorum, qui patrum beneficia habituri erant, ad
moreover of-some who of-the-fathers the-benefices about-to-have were to
se sumptos severe educaverat, qui coram eo interdum nudi
himself taken severely had-brought-up who before him sometimes naked
tabulis luserant, sed et pro avibus captoriis et ceteris, quibus
at-tables played but also for birds hawking and other-things with-which
libertatis indoles exerceri decet. Si deliquissent, a magistris
of-liberty the-nature to-be-exercised befits if they-had-offended by the-masters
exacti vapulabant; quibus tamen, missionis pro ætate
exacted they-were-beaten to-whom however of-dismissal according-to age
temporibus, armaturas ille et munera dabat. His similibusque,
at-the-times arms he and gifts gave by-these and-like-things
quæ se frugi hominem vulgassent, operibus adeo se
which himself a-thrifty man had-published works so-much himself
ille commendabat, ut ubique de eo fama volaret, sed et
he commended that everywhere about him the-rumor flew but also
coram ipsis quoque regibus non aliter, nisi boni abbatis
before themselves also the-kings not otherwise except of-good abbot
prænomine, memoraretur. Hartmuoti vero constitutiones cum
by-the-forename he-was-recalled of-Hartmut but the-constitutions since
omnimodis servari sollicitus esset, loco plerumque
in-every-way to-be-kept anxious he-was from-the-place mostly
cedebat, ut effusius fratres eo absente lætificarentur,
he-withdrew that more-effusively the-brothers with-him absent might-be-gladdened
dicens decano et symistis suis: Si eorum causa, quorum
saying to-the-dean and fellow-initiates his if of-them for-the-sake of-whom

his temporibus in monachos sunt ora patula,
in-these times against monks are the-mouths open
inflexibilem rigorem semper tenuerimus, aut archum regulæ
inflexible rigor always we-shall-have-held either the-bow of-the-rule
frangemus, aut chordam ejus, mihi, ait, credite, rumpemus.
we-shall-break or the-string its to-me he-says believe we-shall-snap
Ideoque quia id palam pati non audeo, clausis super se
and-therefore because it openly to-allow not I-dare with-shut upon them
ostiis, ut aliquando remissius fratres mei agant, consulto
doors that sometimes more-relaxedly brothers my may-act by-design
carissimis loco cedere, ait, volo. Videte tamen, ait, obsecro
to-the-dearest the-place to-yield he-says I-wish see however he-says I-beseech
vos, domini, in quibus reclinor, ne effuse effluant et ne laici
you lords on whom I-recline lest effusively they-overflow and lest laymen
hilaritati illorum omnino intersint, maxime autem servi,
in-the-merriment of-them at-all take-part most moreover servants
quorum nec jusjurandis credere sæpius, ait, didicimus.
whose not-even oaths to-believe more-often he-says we-have-learned

Capitula 136–138

SANDRAT ARRIVES

Laymen and nobles once walked in the cloister and sat in the refectory in monks' frocks, and Bernhard drank the subdean's wine. Notker finishes the town walls and towers, feeds the household spelt for oats, and builds a granary and a menagerie. Ruodmann accuses him again, and Sandrat comes secretly with Otto's letter on the vigil of Saint Gall, hiding among the laymen in church; the abbot has him led to the choir, defers the letter until after the feast, and lodges him in the high heated room. The provost Richer, mocking his threats to leave, sets a guard on him.

Claustrum autem sancti Galli, quoniam locum hunc
the-cloister moreover of-Saint Gall since place this
incidimus, ab antiqua patrum memoria tantæ venerationi
we-have-come-upon from ancient of-the-fathers memory in-so-great veneration
semper est habitum, ut nemini vel potentissimorum
always has-been held that to-no-one even of-the-most-powerful
sæculi canonicorum seu laicorum introitus vel etiam
of-the-world of-canons or of-laymen entrance or even
introspectus ejus licuerit. Unde et dicere habeo, quod ab
looking-in its was-allowed whence also to-say I-have what by
religiosis hujus temporis mihi quidem discredi scio. Vidi
the-religious of-this time to-me indeed to-be-disbelieved I-know I-saw
egomet ante tempora, quæ a Gallis patimur, monachorum
I-myself before the-times which from the-Gauls we-suffer of-the-monks
scismatis, comites aliosque potentes, loci quoque milites,
of-schism counts and-other powerful-men of-the-place also soldiers
pro delectatione festis diebus crucem nobiscum per
for delight on-feast days the-cross with-us through
claustrum sequendi, juvenes et senes, quosdam ad cingulum
the-cloister of-following young and old some to the-belt
barbatos, monachicis indutos roccis, nobiscum, quaqua ivimus,
bearded in-monastic clothed frocks with-us wherever we-went

ingredi. In refectorio quoque octo de illis, qui tamen emeriti
to-enter in the-refectory also eight of them who however veterans
videbantur, circa abbatem et decanos ad mensam monachico
seemed around the-abbot and the-deans at table in-monastic
consedisse habitu, in die paschæ vidi. Sed et ut risum
to-have-sat habit on the-day of-Easter I-saw but also that laughter
de commessatorum ipsorum uno moveam, Bernhardus
about of-the-feasters themselves one I-may-move Bernhard
quidam, domi supra mensam silere non solitus, hic
a-certain at-home over table to-be-silent not accustomed this-one
cum circa subdecanum Ruopertum mensuram puræ potionis
when near the-subdean Rupert the-measure of-pure drink
suæ coram se habentem consedisset, ut domi solitus
his before himself having he-had-sat as at-home accustomed
erat, statim bibere volens, eam manu sumpsit et impiger
he-was at-once to-drink wishing it with-hand took and briskly
hausit. At ille sciens eum jocundum silenter in aurem
drained but he knowing him jovial silently into the-ear
homini: Regulariter nostrum est, ait. Et ille inmemor, quo
to-the-man by-the-rule ours it-is says and he unmindful with-what
præstructus erat, silentii: Si nostrum est, bibamus illud!
forewarned he-had-been of-silence if ours it-is let-us-drink it
palam omnibus dixit, continuoque sibi poculo oblato: Ecce
openly to-all said and-at-once to-him with-the-cup offered lo
et istud nostrum est; bibamus igitur et ipsum. Raucosus
also this ours is let-us-drink therefore also it hoarse
enim ludibundæ vocis erat et morum, manu fortis quidem.
for of-playful voice he-was and of-manners in-hand strong indeed
— At Nokerus, annorum suorum ubertate quidem oppido
but Notker of-years his with-the-plenty indeed very
habundus, plurima, quæ nemo antecessorum ejus umquam
abounding very-many-things which no-one of-the-predecessors his ever

ausus sit, adgressus est et fecit. Muros enim ille super
dared has undertaken has and done the-walls for he above
vallos ab Annone patruo cœptos cum interpositis turribus
the-ramparts by Anno (his)-uncle begun with interposed towers
et portis perfecit. Ad has impensas ille plura profundens,
and gates completed for these expenses he more pouring-out
universæ familiæ præbendariis, id est centum septuaginta
to-the-whole household to-the-prebendaries that is to-a-hundred seventy
viris, cum nunquam ante se nisi avena pascerentur, pura
men since never before him except with-oats they-were-fed pure
de spelta dederat grana, et quod amplius erat, spicarium
of spelt had-given grains and what more was a-granary
ille novum, quia sic homo erat, solis feris et beluis
he new because so a-man he-was for-alone wild-beasts and monsters
avibusque domesticis et domesticatis juxta fratrum condi
and-birds domestic and tamed beside of-the-brothers to-be-built
fecit, quod et ipse jam fieri jussit magnificum. Talibus
made which also he-himself already to-be-made bade magnificent such
bonis innatanti non tamen deerant interdum adversa
goods for-one-swimming-in not however were-lacking sometimes adversities
inter prospera. Nam absque beneficiis multis, pro quibus
among prosperities for besides benefices many for which
artabatur a regibus, ut ea quasi dives opum et homo
he-was-pressed by the-kings that them as-if rich in-wealth and a-man
largissimus vocatus præstaret, quibus nollet, Ruodman eum
most-lavish called he-should-grant to-whom he-would-not Ruodmann him
iterum more solito aput aulicos accusat, et Ekkehardo
again in-manner wonted before the-courtiers accuses and to-Ekkehard
nescio, spiritum ejus fetere fecerat nichil minus sperantis.
I-know-not the-spirit his to-stink had-made nothing less hoping

Et ecce Ottonis, celato Ottone filio et Ekkehardo,
and lo of-Otto with-concealed from-Otto the-son and Ekkehard
consilio, Sandratus litteras ferens in ipsa sancti Galli vigilia
by-the-counsel Sandrat a-letter bearing on the-very of-Saint Gall vigil
vespertina incepta templum deforis inter laicos est ingressus,
evening begun the-temple from-outside among laymen has entered
latere se posse, dum omnia perspiceret, quasi nemini
to-lie-hid himself to-be-able while all-things he-surveyed as-if to-no-one
notus, credidit. Volebat enim, ut postea fassus est, diebus
known believed he-wished for as afterward confessed he-has on-days
illis sanctis, hospitio sibimet, qua posset, petito, de mercato
those holy with-a-lodging for-himself where he-could sought from the-market
se curare, ut exploratis, quæ posset, omnibus astus suos
himself to-care-for that with-explored which he-could all-things cunning his
tandem acturus erumperet in medium liberius. Decanus
at-last about-to-act he-might-burst into the-middle more-freely the-dean
autem de Muorbac juxta abbatem astans: Ecce Sandrat, ait,
moreover of Murbach beside the-abbot standing lo Sandrat he-says
inter illos, si umquam eum vidi, domine mi, vitabundus
among them if ever him I-saw lord my avoiding-notice
graditur. Despectibilis ille enim, quem prospicis, ipse est.
walks contemptible that for whom you-see he-himself is
Et abbas: Video illum; sed si ipse est, mihi quidem
and the-abbot I-see him but if he-himself it-is to-me indeed
despectibilis non est—, accitoque quodam fratrum digito
contemptible not he-is and-summoned a-certain of-the-brothers with-the-finger
monstratum in chorum duci et locari jubet. Quem ille
pointed-out into the-choir to-be-led and to-be-placed he-bids whom he
non sine rubore, vellet nollet, secutus, deprehensum se
not without blush willing unwilling having-followed caught himself
celare non potuit; oculi enim omnium intenti erant in illum.
to-conceal not could the-eyes for of-all intent were on him

Abbas autem post laudes egressus in auditorio eum salutat,
the-abbot moreover after lauds gone-out in the-auditorium him greets
mirarique inter cetera ait, quod tam palam promissus ita
and-to-wonder among other-things he-says that so openly promised so
supervenerit occultus. Responsi ille dubius epistolam porrigit
he-had-come-upon hidden of-answer he doubtful the-letter holds-out
et: Hæc pro me loquatur, ait, quam tibi magnus Otto
and this for me let-it-speak he-says which to-you the-great Otto
quidem direxit. Acceptis ille litteris et osculo veneratis:
indeed has-directed with-received he the-letter and with-a-kiss venerated
In turba hac festi nostri, ait, legere domini litteras tutum
in crowd this of-feast our he-says to-read of-the-lord the-letter safe
non puto, ad quas otium habere volo. Sed pro hospitii
not I-think for which leisure to-have I-wish but for of-lodging
tui commodis satagere portanarium volo, teque, quia forte
your the-comforts to-busy-himself the-doorkeeper I-wish and-you since perhaps
lassus es, dies aliquot, ut post expeditior sis,
tired you-are for-days some that afterward readier you-may-be
in domo quietis pausare et quomodolibet per te curam
in the-house of-rest to-repose and in-whatever-way by yourself care
tui gerere. Hospitibus vero et aliis in claustro et deforis
of-yourself to-take for-the-guests but and others in the-cloister and outside
me oportet providere. Quapropter et a refectorio, ait, ne
me it-behooves to-provide wherefore also from the-refectory he-says lest
oculos tuos ibi quid ledat, hos dies volo, ut abstineas.
the-eyes your there anything may-hurt these days I-wish that you-abstain
— Lecta epistola domini mei, quicquid libuerit, mihi,
with-read the-letter of-lord my whatever it-shall-have-pleased to-me
ait, velim, loquamini, tantum ut in principio introitus
he-says I-would-wish you-may-speak only that in the-beginning of-the-entrance
nostri nichil regulæ absonum inveniamur perpeti. His
our nothing to-the-rule dissonant we-may-be-found to-endure with-these-things

dictis discessum est, illeque in alta illa, quam Sindolf
said departed it-was and-he in high that which Sindolf
sancto Nokero quondam clausit, locatur caminata.
on-holy Notker once shut is-placed the-heated-room
Epistola, adventu regum et reginæ Italiam vere
the-letter with-the-arrival of-the-kings and of-the-queen Italy in-the-spring
proximo petentium intimato, Sandratum ad instituendam
next seeking made-known Sandrat for to-be-instituted
regulam missum gratanter jubet recipi et, quoad
the-rule sent gratefully bids to-be-received and until
ipsi in locum veniant, paterne tractari. At
they-themselves into the-place should-come in-fatherly-fashion to-be-treated but
abbas, accitis domino Purchardo decanoque cum patribus
the-abbot with-summoned lord Burchard and-the-dean with the-fathers
primo sancti Galli diei diluculo in colloquium, Sandratum
on-the-first of-Saint Gall day at-dawn into a-talk Sandrat
bene mansionatum hospitaliter tractari decernunt usque post
well lodged hospitably to-be-treated decide until after
festum, eoque transacto integrius utrimque, quid facto
the-feast and-with-it completed more-wholly on-both-sides what to-be-done
opus sit, tractari quidem posse. Quod ubi per decanum
need be to-be-treated indeed to-be-able which when through the-dean
Richerumque præpositum homini demandatum est, tanta
and-Richer the-provost to-the-man sent-word was with-so-great
asperitate accepit, ut, nisi quantocius sibi versari detur
harshness he-received that unless as-quickly-as-possible to-him to-move it-be-given
cum eis, quos docere venisset, mora omni postposita se
with them whom to-teach he-had-come with-delay all set-aside himself
minaretur abscedere. At Rikerus, decano, ne quicquam
he-threatened to-depart but Richer with-the-dean lest anything
contra loqueretur, in aurem monente, proterviam tamen
against he-should-speak into the-ear warning the-insolence however

verborum ejus ferre non valens: Si fidelis nuntius es,
of-the-words his to-bear not able if a-faithful messenger you-are
ait, responsum, pro quo missus es, exspectabis; sin autem
he-says the-answer for which sent you-are you-will-await if moreover
in commisso fidelis esse nolueris, infidelis, inquit, si
in the-commission faithful to-be you-shall-be-unwilling the-unfaithful he-says if
discedit, ut ait apostolus, discedat. Et decanus: Nequaquam,
he-departs as says the-apostle let-him-depart and the-dean by-no-means
ait; enimvero litteris nobis regiis missum abire non
he-says indeed with-a-letter to-us royal sent to-go-away not
patimur, sed et sub custodia, quoniam fugam minatur, volo,
we-allow but also under guard since flight he-threatens I-wish
servetur. Moxque præpositus ministris accitis ait: Omni
he-be-kept and-soon the-provost with-the-servants summoned says with-all
honore et impensorum, inquit, opulentia seniorem istum
honor and of-expenses he-says with-the-opulence elder this
domini regis nuntium curate! Ipsum autem, ne abbate
of-the-lord king the-envoy care-for him-himself moreover lest with-abbot
nostro inscio abeat, sollicite servate! Veniet dies tercius,
our unaware he-go-away carefully guard will-come the-day third
et hominibus suis missionem quidem dabimus.
and to-the-men his dismissal indeed we-shall-give

Capitula 139–142

SANDRAT'S REGIME

The abbot tells Sandrat the brothers will not be driven from the rule their bishops gave them, and the dean asks a week's truce before his mastery. Sandrat condemns their singing and their pork sauce and, a drinker himself, says their wine is too sparing. Struck by a young monk he has slapped, he sees the youth flogged at the abbot's order and then begs the abbot's pardon; drunk one night, he soils the bed of the absent Father Ruomo, and when he asks to be punished, Ruomo flogs him in earnest until the dean pulls him off.

Talibus ille utriusque verbis adeo est consternatus, ut
by-such he of-each by-the-words so-much was dismayed that
stupidus eis abeuntibus sedens diceret suis, neminem
stunned with-them going-away sitting he-said to-his-people no
cucullatum in regno se putasse fuisse, qui sibi
cowled-one in the-kingdom himself to-have-thought to-have-been who to-himself
contra votum suum tanta presumeret respondere. Tandem,
against wish his so-great-things would-presume to-answer at-last
ut multa, quæ audivi, præteream, tercia die in
that many-things which I-have-heard I-may-pass-over on-the-third day into
consessum adducto abbas consulto est locutus: Nobis, frater,
the-session brought the-abbot by-design has spoken to-us brother
quibus ad opus optimum, ut opto, ait, directus es,
to-whom for a-work best as I-hope he-says directed you-are
prudentiorem te episcopis et abbatibus opus est fore,
more-prudent you than-the-bishops and abbots need it-is to-be
qui nos mira caritatis discretione nuperrime in regulam
who us with-wonderful of-charity discretion most-lately in the-rule
sancti Benedicti stabilitos, ut volebant, reliquerant, a qua
of-Saint Benedict established as they-wished had-left from which
in aliquo nos cogere deviare, plerosque fratrum habeo,
in anything us to-compel to-stray very-many of-the-brothers I-have

qui inmissionem per angelum malum, peccatis nostris id
who a-sending-in through an-angel evil with-sins our it
exigentibus, planissime asserant. In quo uni tibi, quamvis
demanding most-plainly assert in which to-one you although
sanctissimo homini, repentino motu obsequi, non excussæ
most-holy man with-sudden motion to-comply not of-sifted
rationis, sed regalis esse scimus imperii. — Michi, ait ille,
reason but royal to-be we-know of-command to-me he-says he
miror, si de inmissione mea, si angelus malus sim, quisquam
I-wonder if about sending-in my if an-angel evil I-be anyone
adtribuat, cum sponte mea, credite mihi, non venerim, neque
should-attribute since of-will my believe me not I-have-come neither
ad vos, neque ad ullos, quorum tamen, Deo laus, multos
to you nor to any of-whom however to-God praise many
in regno correxeram, aput quos, quoniam ab imperio
in the-kingdom I-had-corrected among whom since by the-empire
missus sum, imperiose quidem egeram, neque deprecative
sent I-am imperiously indeed I-had-acted nor deprecatingly
quicquam, sicut et aput vos, ubi primo adveneram, facere,
anything as also among you where first I-had-arrived to-do
si permissus sim, volueram, et si adhuc hodie permittor,
if allowed I-be I-had-wished and if still today I-am-allowed
volo. — Et decanus abbati: Age igitur, domine mi,
I-wish and the-dean to-the-abbot come therefore lord my
cedamus angelo imperii et ordinem ei congruum dato,
let-us-yield to-the-angel of-the-empire and rank to-him fitting give
nobiscumque, ut, quomodo vivamus, videat, ubique versetur.
and-with-us that how we-live he-may-see everywhere let-him-dwell
Ebdomadæ tamen indutias ante magistratum ejus, inquit,
of-a-week however a-truce before the-magistracy his he-says
petere volumus, ut regulæ viam, qua gradimur, perspiciens,
to-seek we-wish that of-the-rule the-way by-which we-walk inspecting

si nos exorbitare regula lecta docuerit, reducentem
if us to-stray with-the-rule read shall-have-taught him-leading-back
secundum imperii jussum sequamur. Et quia regularis
according-to of-the-empire the-command we-may-follow and because a-regular
monachus absque abbate esse non poterit, qui sibimet abbas
monk without an-abbot to-be not will-be-able who to-himself abbot
decanusque sit, hic invenisse inter doctrinas suas regulares
and-dean be here to-have-found among teachings his regular
viros patienter ferat. — Coloniæ, ille ait, abbatem meum
men patiently let-him-bear at-Cologne he he-says abbot my
carissimum reliqui. — Ejus nobis, decanus ait, etiam si
dearest left of-him to-us the-dean says even if
litteras commendaticias dederis, ea tamen te ipsum
a-letter of-commendation you-shall-have-given those-things however you yourself
facere et pati renuere, quæ docueris, etiam regi
to-do and to-suffer to-refuse which you-shall-have-taught even to-the-king
ipsi magno nos tibi perpeti nolle rescriberemus.
himself great us from-you to-endure to-be-unwilling we-would-write-back
Talibus ille auditis secum fremens adeo, ut præ ira
with-such-things he heard with-himself raging so-much that for anger
etiam lacrimasceret, commotus est; sed abbas conventu
even he-wept moved he-was but the-abbot with-the-assembly
dirempto surgens bono animo esse illum per se monuit,
broken-up rising of-good mind to-be him by himself warned
neque semet ipsum quidem rationabilitati tanti viri
nor him himself indeed to-the-reasonableness of-so-great a-man
ausum, ait, reniti, cum talium in loco sint plurimi,
daring he-says to-resist since of-such in the-place there-be very-many
qui, ab episcopis et abbatibus nuperrime in regula Kebone
who by bishops and abbots most-lately in the-rule with-Gebo
commanente stabiliti, non possint in impetu ab ea revelli;
remaining established not could in a-rush from it to-be-torn-away

se autem regis, quas attulit, litteris contraire nolle,
himself moreover of-the-king which he-brought the-letter to-oppose to-be-unwilling
si sub longis moris et examine regulæ rationabilia suis
if under long delays and examination of-the-rule reasonable-things on-his-people
ingerat et a tantorum virorum doctrinis tamdiu inolitis
he-should-press and from of-so-great men the-teachings so-long ingrained
eos avertat. Jubet tandem ei ordinem dari post
them he-should-turn-away he-bids at-last to-him a-rank to-be-given after
decanos, et ebdomadam illam omnia nostra perspiciendo
the-deans and for-week that all-things our by-inspecting
quietius agere tandemque cum ratione, quæcumque non
more-quietly to-act and-at-last with reason whatever not
placuerint, regula teste mutare. Finitur ebdomada, et in
shall-have-pleased with-the-rule as-witness to-change is-finished the-week and in
capitulo considens plura sibi displicere ait, maxime
the-chapter sitting very-many-things to-him to-displease he-says most
autem in ecclesia exaltationes vocum gloriosas et nequaquam
moreover in the-church the-raisings of-voices glorious and by-no-means
monachicas, et alia, quæ post dicere vellet, plura,
monastic and other-things which afterward to-say he-would-wish more
præter quod dominicam in ea cottidie agi videret, feriam
except that Sunday in it daily to-be-kept he-saw the-weekday
autem sextam in refectorio. Porcini autem liquaminis nidorem
moreover sixth in the-refectory of-pork moreover of-the-sauce the-smell
nares suas omnino ferre non posse, carnesque se omnibus
nostrils his at-all to-bear not to-be-able and-meats himself to-all
et liquamen infirmis et sanis edicto regis interminare.
and the-sauce to-the-sick and to-the-healthy by-edict of-the-king to-forbid
Vinum autem, quoniam bibulus quidem erat, nimis nobis
wine moreover since a-tippler indeed he-was too to-us
parce dare ajebat, calicemque nostrum ad refocilandum potius,
sparingly to-give he-said and-the-cup our for refreshing rather

quam ad potandum sufficere. Cetera plura, quæ docuit et
than for drinking to-suffice other-things many which he-taught and
fecit, præter quædam insignia, quoniam omnia exitum malum
did except certain notable-things since all an-end bad
habent, ex quibus quidem volumen facere possem, omitto.
have of which indeed a-volume to-make I-could I-omit
Monet abbas decem tandem, nec non et omnes, quoniam
warns the-abbot ten at-last and also and all since
parum firmitatis in eo quidem viderat, ut ei, sicut se
little of-firmness in him indeed he-had-seen that him as themselves
diligerent, ad congrua et incongrua cuncta parerent,
they-should-love for fitting and unfitting-things all they-should-obey
prædicens eis, magistratus ejus rigorem non diu duraturum.
foretelling to-them of-the-magistracy his the-rigor not long about-to-last
Jubet autem in summo dexteræ refectorii mensæ omnia
he-bids moreover at the-top of-the-right of-the-refectory of-the-table all-things
ei, quæ ipse diceret, sine mensura proponi et, si ipse
to-him which he-himself should-say without measure to-be-set-out and if he-himself
desineret, bibere moneri; jam enim illum, potando quis
should-cease to-drink to-be-reminded already for him by-drinking who
esset, exploraverat. Decanus autem cum præposito singulis
he-was he-had-explored the-dean moreover with the-provost to-each
fratrum, ut idoneis illum moribus frangerent, frequenter
of-the-brothers that with-fit him manners they-should-break often
inculcabant. Erat autem ille fratribus semper post mensam
impressed was moreover he to-the-brothers always after table
in disciplinis propter potum quidem asperior. Accidit vero
in disciplines on-account-of drink indeed harsher it-happened but
quadam die, ut quidam juvenum, cui jam plures
on-a-certain day that a-certain of-the-young-men to-whom already many
dies ille infestior erat, cum in illum severius, ut in
days he more-hostile was when against him more-severely as against

omnes solebat, verbis inveheretur: Ecce iterum semimagister
all he-was-wont with-words he-was-inveighing lo again half-master
noster!, postquam mero incaluit, diceret. Ille
our after with-unmixed-wine he-has-grown-warm should-say he
verbum clam, ut putabat, a juvene dictum ab ore ejus
the-word secretly as he-thought by the-youth said from the-mouth his
ilico rapiens: Semimagister tuus, inquit, ego, si insanio,
on-the-spot snatching half-master your he-says I if I-rave
tibi ostendere, quantocius habebo! — insiliensque in
to-you to-show as-quickly-as-possible I-shall-have and-leaping on
hominem bene quidem natum, sed et admodum litteratum,
a-man well indeed born but also very learned
grandem ei manu in maxillam dedit. Ille vero multum
a-great to-him with-hand on the-jaw gave he but much
eo robustior, brachio dicto citius extento, pugno illum
than-him stronger with-arm than-said quicker stretched-out with-the-fist him
in tympus validissime percussit seminecemque in terram
on the-temple most-mightily struck and-half-dead to the-ground
cadere fecit, et nisi quod eum ceteri retinebant, majora
to-fall made and unless that him the-others held-back greater-things
ei adhuc facere volebat. Superveniunt cum decano continuo
to-him still to-do he-wished come-upon with the-dean at-once
fratres; abbate accito, signum pulsatur ad capitulum; ibi
the-brothers with-the-abbot summoned the-bell is-rung for the-chapter there
jussu abbatis juvenis ille adhuc furens ad columpnam
by-command of-the-abbot youth that still raging to the-column
piralis ligatus acerrime virgis cæditur, et inter
of-the-warming-room bound most-sharply with-rods is-beaten and amid
dolores, quoniam litteratus erat, mirum esse, ait, quod
the-pains since learned he-was wondrous to-be he-says that
Christus ad columpnam tegnis quondam passus est diaboli,
Christ at the-column by-the-tricks once suffered has of-the-devil

se alterius satanæ tegnis ad columpnam quidem pati;
himself of-another Satan by-the-tricks at the-column indeed to-suffer
neque enim minus mirum quandoque evenire, si Sandrato
nor for less wondrous sometime to-happen if to-Sandrat
per manus suas, quod equivoco ejus accidit, accidat. Talia
by hands his what to-namesake his befell should-befall such-things
eo inter verbera sibi præsagante, ipse adhuc de ictu
with-him amid the-blows to-him foreboding he-himself still from blow
illo stupidus residens valde expavit humique coram
that stunned sitting very greatly-feared and-on-the-ground before
abbate stratus, ut eum absolveret, petiit, quidque sibimet post
the-abbot prostrate that him he-should-absolve asked and-what for-himself after
hæc faciendum sit, pro regis amore se doceat.
these-things to-be-done might-be for of-the-king love himself he-should-teach
Et decanus: Nimis urgues, ait, dominum nostrum, ut
and the-dean too-much you-urge he-says lord our that
te, qui tot monachos, ut ais, docuisti nosque post
you who so-many monks as you-say have-taught and-us after
tot episcopos et abbates docere venisti, doctor tuus
so-many bishops and abbots to-teach have-come teacher your
esse præsumat. Et abbas: Quia regi domino fide,
to-be he-should-presume and the-abbot because to-the-king lord with-faith
o vir Dei, ait, juravi, quicquid nobiscum feceris,
O man of-God he-says I-swore whatever with-us you-shall-have-done
ego habeo pati usque ad id, quod nescio cujus regulæ
I have to-suffer all-the-way to that which I-know-not of-what rule
esse tu dicis, si fratres meos quasi stolide audax manu
to-be you say if brothers my as-if stupidly bold with-hand
cædendos insiliveris. Etenim in fide assero, uterque
to-be-beaten you-shall-have-leapt-on for in faith I-assert each
nostrum contra regulam etiam nunc operati sumus, tu
of-us against the-rule even now worked have you

filium meum absque juditio cædendo manibus, ego, ut
son my without judgment by-beating with-hands I that
tibi satisfacerem, verberibus. Cumque omnes eum ut litteris
to-you I-might-satisfy with-blows and-when all him that by-letter
gesta ejus Ottoni filio mittendas tradi juberet,
the-deeds his to-Otto the-son to-be-sent to-be-handed-over he-bade
surgens ille quasi ceteris exemplum dando roccum exuit et
rising he as-if to-the-rest an-example by-giving the-frock took-off and
coram se expandit superque illum se extendit, utque
before himself spread-out and-upon it himself stretched and-that
puniretur pro tali excessu, gemens oravit. Cumque plerique
he-be-punished for such excess groaning prayed and-when most
omnes, ut vapularet, optarent, abbas illum induere, quoniam
all that he-be-beaten wished the-abbot him to-put-on since
quidem nuntius regius honorandus sit, jussit. Dein illum
indeed an-envoy royal to-be-honored he-be bade then him
cum fratre læso per potestatem pacificans, quomodolibet
with the-brother wounded by authority reconciling in-whatever-way
tamen agere vellet, arte sua non prohibuit. At ille cum
however to-act he-might-wish by-art his not he-forbade but he since
eo minus vino non parceret transactisque ab hoc
on-that-account less with-wine not he-spared and-with-passed from this
articulo aliquot diebus in magistratu suo iterum insolesceret,
moment some days in the-magistracy his again he-grew-insolent
quadam nocte vino sepultus stertendo et sternutando
on-a-certain night with-wine buried by-snoring and by-sneezing
fratres inquietaverat. Servum vero suum Hattonem, qui
the-brothers had-disturbed servant but his Hatto who
olim post adventum suum loco discesserat, inclamans:
formerly after arrival his from-the-place had-departed calling-out
Serve nequam, ait, ubi es? Sicque insaniens tandem ad
servant worthless he-says where are-you and-so raving at-last for

urinam surrexit sine rocco et nudipes, Ruomonisque patris
urine rose without frock and barefoot and-of-Ruomo father
propter inquietudinem ejus tunc absentis scamnum lecti
on-account-of disturbance his then absent the-bench of-the-bed
perminxerat. Crastina vero a decano querela ebrietatis
had-urinated-over on-the-morrow but by the-dean with-complaint of-drunkenness
et turpitudinis capitulo incusatus iterum, ut et prius,
and of-foulness to-the-chapter accused again as also before
sponte sua roccum exuit et super expansum se extendens
of-will his the-frock took-off and over spread himself stretching
puniri postulavit. At Ruomo surgens, decano quidem
to-be-punished asked but Ruomo rising with-the-dean indeed
non jubente, flagello fratrum, quod comminus pendebat,
not bidding with-the-scourge of-the-brothers which close-by hung
modeste sumpto, maximos illi infregit decanoque illum
modestly taken very-great-ones on-him broke and-with-the-dean him
quidem, quidnam faceret, inclamante: Quod jussistis, ait,
indeed what he-was-doing crying-out what you-bade he-says
et quod ipse petiit, facio. Simulabat enim, se nutum
and what he-himself asked I-do he-feigned for himself the-nod
ejus putasse, interimque majores adhuc fortissime infregerat.
his to-have-thought and-meanwhile greater-ones still most-mightily he-had-broken
Illoque Ve! sibi, quod umquam in locum venerit,
and-with-him woe to-himself that ever into the-place he-came
vociferante, decano surgente vix ereptus est. Ruomo
crying with-the-dean rising scarcely rescued he-was Ruomo
autem tantæ auctoritatis meritis suis erat, ut a nemine
moreover of-so-great authority by-merits his was that by no-one
sit notatus, ab aliquibus etiam idonee fecisse sit dictus.
he-was censured by some even fittingly to-have-done he-was said

Capitula 143–147

SANDRAT UNDONE AND THE EMPEROR'S VISIT

Lodged in the heated room with a watchman, Sandrat bribes him for meat; the provost catches him feasting, and he flees by night to Rome. The abbot sends the Ottos an account of Sandrat; young Otto and Queen Adelaide read it with laughter, she reads it to the emperor, and Otto promises to come and make amends. At the Ascension the emperor arrives with Bruno of Cologne, drops his staff in church to test the monks' discipline, and embraces the old, blind physician Notker, while his son has the abbot open the library and carries off books, some of which he returns at Ekkehard's asking.

Jubet tandem abbas consulto omnium lectum illi sterni
bids at-last the-abbot by-the-counsel of-all a-bed for-him to-be-spread
in caminata, qua primo hospitatus est, vigilemque ei
in the-heated-room in-which first lodged he-was and-a-watchman to-him
industrium de familia dari. Ibi ille aliquando de
industrious from the-household to-be-given there he sometime from
completorio veniens, videns vigilem sibi carnes paratas
compline coming seeing the-watchman for-himself meats prepared
super mensulam habentem — nam illum nimis diligens, fidum
upon a-little-table having for him too-much loving faithful
esse confidebat — Anime mi, ait, de carnibus et mihi dato,
to-be he-trusted soul my he-says of the-meats also to-me give
et celatum habeto! Quod cum libens fecisset, de carnibus
and concealed keep which when gladly he-had-done on the-meats
saturato etiam vinum porrexit. At ille de sacculo, a nemine
to-him-sated also wine he-held-out but he from a-little-bag by no-one
umquam in loco viso, denarios proferens, unanimi suo
ever in the-place seen pennies bringing-out to-the-bosom-friend his
osculato, ut et aliis noctibus par faceret, dedit. Cumque
kissed that also on-other nights the-like he-might-do gave and-when

hoc ille jam crebro, clausis super se intus hostiis, fecisset,
this he already often with-shut upon them within doors had-done
quadam die Richero sciscitanti, quomodo se magister
on-a-certain day to-Richer asking how himself the-master
fratrum noctu haberet: Enimvero optime, ait, si ei carnes
of-the-brothers by-night was-faring indeed excellently he-says if to-him meats
jam dare haberem; nam quas habere potui, consumpsimus. —
now to-give I-had for which to-have I-could we-have-consumed
Bene, ille ait, mi sodes, narras; neque enim tibi per me
well he says my comrade you-tell nor for to-you through me
deerunt; sed quod tibi dico, ut de vita cures, facito. Januas
will-be-lacking but what to-you I-say that of life you-care see-to-it the-doors
nocte proxima serare te simulato, reseratasque sinito; et
on-night next to-bar yourself pretend and-unbarred let-them-be and
a ministris nostris, quæ habundent, carnibus sumptis, opipare
from servants our which abound with-meats taken sumptuously
eas vobis parato! Venit ille nocte proxima de completorio
them for-you prepare comes he on-night next from compline
et, ut solebat, mensam ei minister fidissimus apponens
and as he-was-wont the-table for-him the-servant most-faithful setting
carnibus onerabat, lætamque noctem habituros promittebat. Et
with-meats loaded and-a-glad night about-to-have promised and
ecce præpositus assumptis quibusdam de fratribus avide illis
lo the-provost with-taken certain of the-brothers eagerly on-them
supervenit comedentibus, et stans super illos: In bonis, inquit,
came-upon eating and standing over them in good he-says
operibus te, magister sancte, invenimus; enimvero, ait, ægrotis
works you master holy we-find indeed he-says to-sick
nostris, si tu velles, scultella hæc magis liceret, quam
our if you would-wish bowl this more would-be-allowed than
tibi! — et allevans illam, in faciem eam minatus percutere,
to-you and lifting it into the-face it threatened to-strike

non tamen fecit. Vigilem autem, quasi et ipsi iratus,
not however did the-watchman moreover as-if also with-him angry
servum nequissimum vocans, numquam in conspectum suum
servant most-worthless calling never into the-sight his
venire jussum domo expulit, soloque illo deceptore
to-come bidden from-the-house he-expelled and-with-alone him deceiver
quidem regum et regni relicto, abierunt, januis, ne
indeed of-the-kings and of-the-kingdom left they-went-away with-the-doors lest
ultra intus intraret, claustri post se sollicite clausis. At
further inside he-should-enter of-the-cloister after them carefully shut but
ille malum sibi aliquot maximum cras futurum timens,
he evil for-himself some very-great tomorrow about-to-be fearing
de nocte fugam iniit, latibulumque die illo inter frutecta
by night flight began and-a-hiding-place on-day that among the-thickets
montis proximi habuit. Sed et abbas cum neminem illum
of-the-hill nearest had but also the-abbot since no-one him
persequi vellet, securus tandem suimet factus, deambulatoribus
to-pursue wished safe at-last of-himself made to-walkers
peregrinis, qui Romam ibant, jungitur. Sed quid postea
pilgrim who to-Rome were-going is-joined but what afterward
fortunæ habuerit, quia dubie affirmatum est, odio
of-fortune he-had since doubtfully affirmed it-is from-hatred
nominis ejus libens ignoro. Et hæc est tragedia Sandrati
of-the-name his gladly I-know-not and this is the-tragedy of-Sandrat
ypocritæ jussu Ottonis magni in nos moliminum.
the-hypocrite at-the-command of-Otto the-great against us of-the-efforts
Misit tandem abbas litteras Ottonibus et reginæ in
sent at-last the-abbot a-letter to-the-Ottos and to-the-queen into
Saxoniam cum muneribus, scissitans tempus adventus eorum,
Saxony with gifts inquiring the-time of-the-arrival their
nec non et Ekkehardo quaternionem omnem seriem Sandrati
and also and to-Ekkehard a-quire the-whole series of-Sandrat

tenentem. Quam ille Ottoni filio cum in secretis legere
holding which he to-Otto the-son when in private to-read
daret, in tantos hyroniæ cachinnos solutus est, ut mater
he-gave into such of-irony guffaws dissolved he-was that mother
ejus superveniens, quid esset, quæreret. At ille scripturam
his coming-upon what it-was asked but he writing
illam ipsi dans legere eam rogavit — nam litteratissima erat
that to-her giving to-read it asked for most-lettered she-was
— quæ fortuna se celato missum a patre sanctum
what fortune with-himself concealed sent by (his)-father the-holy
Sandratum comitata sit, et secuta; quam cum et ipsa
Sandrat accompanied had and followed which when also she-herself
quidem studiose perlegeret risumque non contineret, filio
indeed zealously read-through and-laughter not held-in to-(her)-son
ait: Enimvero, fili, tam indecens michi videtur fuisse, patrem
says indeed son so unbecoming to-me seems to-have-been father
tuum talibus viris, quales et nos nuper de illis vidimus, tale
your on-such men such-as also we lately of them saw such
scelus inmisisse monstrumque hominis tantæ reverentiæ
a-crime to-have-sent-in and-a-monster of-a-man of-so-great reverence
viros post se trahere jussum fuisse. Eia, ait, auricularis
men after himself to-drag bidden to-have-been ah she-says the-whisperer
patris tui fuit ille hominum vilissimus et Deo odibilis.
of-father your was that of-men vilest and to-God hateful
Sed et ego fallebar in illo, macilentum videns et pallidum
but also I was-deceived in him lean seeing and pale
habituque neglectum, magnumque aliquid nos in eo exspectare
and-in-dress neglected and-great something us in him to-await
sperabam. Scio autem, tibi et Ekkehardo quicquam de
I-hoped I-know moreover for-you and Ekkehard anything about
hac re patri tuo loqui minus, ait, convenire; sed ego
this matter to-father your to-speak less she-says to-be-fitting but I

quidem, quando primum copia fuerit, scripturam istam
indeed when first opportunity shall-have-been writing that
fida interpres auribus ejus aperiam. Miles quidam, abbatis
faithful interpreter to-the-ears his I-shall-open a-soldier a-certain of-the-abbot
nuntius datus, regi tandem, regina astante, litteras dans
envoy given to-the-king at-last with-the-queen standing-by the-letter giving
munera offert, continuoque grate acceptis, quomodo Sandrat
the-gifts offers and-at-once gratefully received how Sandrat
se habeat, interroganti regina infert: Michi, ait, hoc,
himself fares to-him-asking the-queen puts-in to-me she-says this
domine mi, injunctum est, epistola lecta, tibi interpretari.
lord my enjoined is with-the-letter read to-you to-interpret
Quam cum ipsa legisset, finis ejus erat: Moveatque
which when she-herself had-read the-end its was and-may-move
majestatis tuæ pietatem indiscreta varietas molestiarum, quas
of-majesty your the-piety the-indiscreet variety of-the-troubles which
per sedecim ebdomadarum spatia cum fratribus meis
through sixteen of-weeks the-spaces with brothers my
perpessus sum. Et illa: Has, domine, in his cartis breviatas, si
endured I-have and she these lord in these papers abridged if
me amas, clementer, ait, audi! Cumque ei scripturam illam
me you-love mercifully she-says hear and-when to-him writing that
totam, quam citissime poterat, fidelis interpres absolveret:
whole as most-quickly as-she-could the-faithful interpreter finished
Tædet me, ait, mi dilecta, et piget, audisse vana
it-wearies me he-says my beloved and it-irks to-have-heard the-vanities
hominis totque indiscreta molimina; sed et miseret me,
of-the-man and-so-many indiscreet efforts but also pities me
ait, mei timore talium et tantæ humilitatis patientiæque
he-says of-myself for-fear of-such and of-so-great humility and-patience
Dei virorum. O, inquit, in conspectum daretur deceptor
of-God men O he-says into the-sight if-there-were-given deceiver

ille levissimus, quam cunctis ypocritis in exemplum esset
that most-fickle how to-all hypocrites for an-example he-would-be
futurus! — accitoque reginæ consilio Ekkehardo:
about-to-be and-with-summoned of-the-queen by-the-counsel to-Ekkehard
Scribe, ait, Nokero tuo cum suis, non meam tantum illis,
write he-says to-Notker your with his-people not my only to-them
sed et illorum michi, quia commoti sunt, gratiam, et si eos
but also of-them to-me since moved they-are favor and if them
contristavi inscius, propter invictam illorum mei causa
I-saddened unknowing on-account-of the-unconquered their for-my sake
patientiam eos, si vixero, sciens lætificabo; adventumque
patience them if I-shall-have-lived knowing I-shall-gladden and-the-arrival
nostrum in Majo, Deo donante, ad eos futurum et
our in May with-God granting to them about-to-be and
vulnera, quibus a perversis seductus eos læsi, sanaturum.
the-wounds with-which by perverse-men misled them I-hurt about-to-heal
Ingreditur interea Otto filius; pater illi scripturam
enters meanwhile Otto the-son (his)-father to-him writing
illam quasi rerum inscio dat legendam. Ille autem inter
that as-if of-the-things unknowing gives to-be-read he moreover amid
legendum, dum rideret: Miror te, pater ait, ridere, quod
reading while he-laughed I-wonder you father he-says to-laugh at-what
me libet flere. — Quod verax factus sis, ait, hoc,
me it-pleases to-weep that truthful made you-are he-says this
pater, gaudeo. Crebro vobis cum eum insinuarem, et vos
father I-rejoice often to-you when him I-hinted and you
tamen me inconsulto illuc hominem misistis, quisquis esset,
nevertheless me unconsulted thither the-man sent whoever he-was
celare non potuit; sed vel nunc quæratur, pater, ubi
to-conceal not could but at-least now let-it-be-sought father where
sit, ut, cum nos in locum, ait, venerimus, in conspectu
he-is that when we into the-place he-says shall-have-come in the-sight

discipulorum suorum, quos indigne tractaverat, ipse digne
of-the-disciples his whom unworthily he-had-treated he-himself worthily
tractetur. Et regina: Si patri tuo, fili, ait, prius ille ad
may-be-treated and the-queen if to-father your son she-says first he into
manus venerit, non meo consilio eum illuc reservabit.
the-hands shall-have-come not by-my counsel him thither he-will-reserve
Dimissus hilariter miles abbatis, boni nuntii gerulus, omnes
dismissed cheerfully the-soldier of-the-abbot of-good news the-bearer all
sancti Galli viros lætificans regum eis verbis edixerat,
of-Saint Gall the-men gladdening of-the-kings to-them in-the-words had-proclaimed
ut, quoniam ipsi jam experti sunt, quod bene quidem
that since they-themselves now tested have that well indeed
vellent, posthac viverent, quocumque modo vellent; neque
they-wished hereafter they-should-live in-whatever manner they-wished nor
enim jam ultra ullum eis ypocritam spondent inmissuros.
for now further any to-them hypocrite they-pledge about-to-send-in
Parantur in adventum illorum multimoda laudum recens
are-prepared for the-arrival their of-many-kinds of-lauds newly
dictatarum, ceterarum, ut solet, rerum copiosa impendia.
composed of-the-other as it-is-wont of-things copious outlays
Veniunt in locum in vigilia ascensionis, quæ fuit in die sanctæ
they-come into the-place on the-vigil of-the-Ascension which was on the-day of-Saint
Potentianæ virginis. Suscipiuntur honore, quo decuit. Otto
Potentiana virgin they-are-received with-honor with-which it-befitted Otto
magnus, a fratre Prunone Coloniæ archiepiscopo sinistra
the-great by (his)-brother Bruno of-Cologne archbishop on-the-left
ductus, dextra baculo fultus, filio autem matrem ducente,
led on-the-right by-a-staff propped with-the-son moreover the-mother leading
longe ipse præ aliis, quasi leo præ bestiis, fratre
far he-himself before others as-if a-lion before beasts with-(his)-brother
manu osculata discedente, solus in medio fratribus hinc
with-hand kissed departing alone in the-middle with-the-brothers hence

inde ad laudes in lateribus ecclesiæ directim statutis, quasi
thence for lauds in the-sides of-the-church in-ranks set as-if
statua constitit, oculisque grandibus in fratres hinc inde
a-statue stood and-with-eyes great on the-brothers hence thence
versatis, quam antea noverat, si adhuc sit, disciplinam
turned which before he-had-known whether still it-be the-discipline
probans, baculum sibi decidere sivit. Cuonone autem duce,
testing the-staff to-himself to-fall let with-Kuno moreover the-duke
genero ejus, accurrente baculumque sibi timorate restituente,
son-in-law his running-up and-the-staff to-him fearfully restoring
stare illum jubens ait: Ecce, ego disciplinam horum, quam
to-stand him bidding says lo I the-discipline of-these which
et tu forsitan audisti, temptans baculum mihi decidere sivi,
also you perhaps have-heard testing the-staff for-me to-fall let
neminisque illorum caput aut oculos ad hoc motos vidi. Dic
and-of-no-one of-them the-head or the-eyes at this moved I-saw tell
vero Adilheide meæ et filio versutiam, quam feci! Filius
but to-Adelaide my and to-(my)-son the-craftiness which I-did the-son
autem sæpe facete loqui solitus Cuononi referenti: Miramur,
moreover often wittily to-speak accustomed to-Kuno reporting we-wonder
ait, cum tam firmiter imperium teneat, quod baculus deciderit.
he-says since so firmly the-empire he-holds that the-staff fell
Enimvero quasi leo regna, quæ adhuc cepit, firmissime
indeed as-if a-lion the-kingdoms which so-far he-took most-firmly
tenuit, neque mihi, quamvis filio, partem vel unam dedit.
he-has-held nor to-me although son a-part even one has-given
Tandem post laudes finitas rex magnus neminem, nisi quem
at-last after the-lauds finished the-king great no-one except whom
abbas velit, secum claustrum ingredi edixit. Decano
the-abbot might-wish with-himself the-cloister to-enter proclaimed with-the-dean
et aliis primoribus ad oscula vocatis, Nokerus suus, ubi esset,
and other chief-men to kisses called Notker his where he-was

interrogat. Nam ille tunc senio cæcus in sedili quodam
asks for he then from-old-age blind on a-seat certain
sedens ei monstratus est. Jubet ergo filio, ut ipse sibi
sitting to-him pointed-out was he-bids therefore (his)-son that he-himself to-him
adduceret illum. Qui mox osculatum ad patrem manu duxerat
should-bring him who soon kissed to (his)-father by-hand had-led
illum; qui et ipse osculatus virum sub clamide astrictum
him who also himself having-kissed the-man under the-cloak drawn-tight
multum consolatus est illum, et manum ei dans duxit
much comforted has him and the-hand to-him giving led
secum in claustrum. O me, ille ait, felicissimum cæcum, qui
with-himself into the-cloister O me he says most-fortunate blind-man who
tantos, quantos nullus umquam meruit, hodie habeo ductores.
such-great as no-one ever deserved today I-have guides
In claustro autem residens juxta se locaverat illum. Ibi illum
in the-cloister moreover sitting beside himself had-placed him there him
episcopi et abbates laicique, quibus sæpe profuit, salutabant.
the-bishops and abbots and-laymen whom often he-benefited greeted
Abbate interea assumpto, Otto filius armarium sibi
with-the-abbot meanwhile taken Otto the-son the-book-chest for-himself
aperiri rogat. Quod ille renuere non ausus, condicto tamen
to-be-opened asks which he to-refuse not daring with-condition however
risibili, ne tantus prædo locum et fratres spoliaret, aperiri
laughable lest so-great a-robber the-place and the-brothers should-despoil to-be-opened
jubet. Ille autem libris optimis illectus, plures abstulit,
bids he moreover by-books best enticed many carried-off
quorum tamen aliquos Ekhardo rogante postea reddidit.
of-which however some with-Ekkehard asking afterward he-returned

---